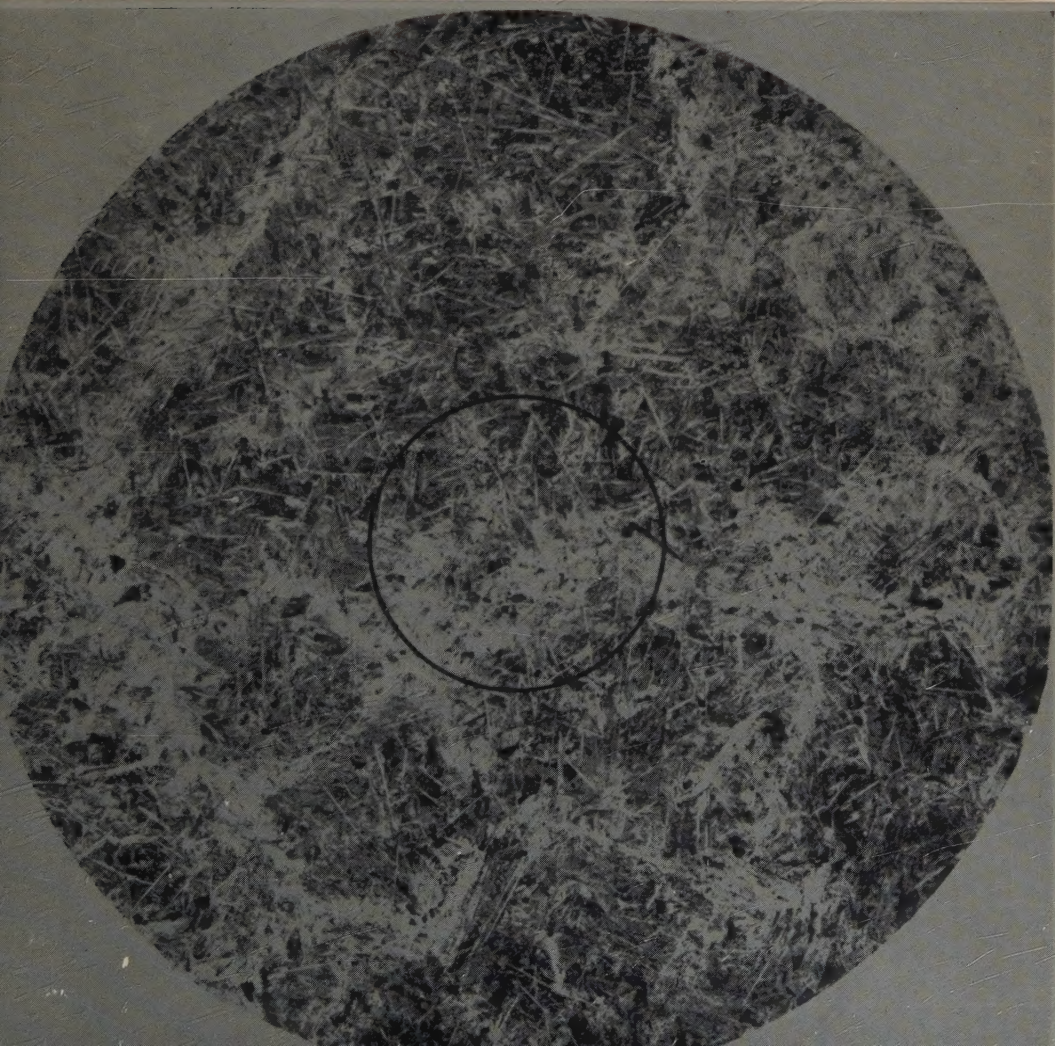


SCIENCE PAPERBACKS

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

**RICHARD HENRY GREAVES &
HAROLD WRIGHTON**





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

This book is concerned with the methods and results of the examination of metals and allows with the aid of the optical microscope. It presents a series of typical photomicrographs, suitably annotated, and accompanied by a concise account of the results of metallographic researches and other investigations, in so far as they afford an interpretation of the structures and associated properties of commercial materials.

SCIENCE PAPERBACKS
SP41

Science Paperbacks

SP1	Social Behaviour in Animals	<i>N. Tinbergen</i>
SP2	Elements of Structural Geology	<i>E. Sherbon Hills</i>
SP3	Atomic Structure and Chemical Bonding	<i>F. Seel</i>
SP4	Biological Laboratory Data	<i>L. J. Hale</i>
SP5	Semi-Conductors	<i>D. A. Wright</i>
SP6	Mendelism and Evolution	<i>E. B. Ford</i>
SP7	An Introduction to Electronic Analogue Computers	<i>M. G. Hartley</i>
SP8	Classical Mechanics	<i>J. W. Leech</i>
SP9	Animal Ecology	<i>C. Elton</i>
SP10	Design for a Brain	<i>W. Ross Ashby</i>
SP11	Vision in Vertebrates	<i>K. Tansley</i>
SP12	Barlow's Tables	
SP13	The Plastic Methods of Structural Analysis	<i>B. G. Neal</i>
SP14	The Mathematical Theory of Linear Systems	<i>B. M. Brown</i>
SP15	The Application of Matrix Theory to Electrical Engineering	
SP16	The Physics of Experimental Method	<i>W. E. Lewis and D. G. Pryce</i>
SP17	Ultra High Frequency Propagation	<i>H. J. J. Braddick</i>
SP18	Genetics for Medical Students	<i>H. R. Reed and C. M. Russell</i>
SP19	Experimental Biology	<i>E. B. Ford</i>
SP20	A Dictionary of Scientific Units	<i>R. H. Kay</i>
SP21	An Introduction to Fourier Analysis	<i>H. B. Jerrard and D. B. McNeill</i>
SP22	Insect Physiology	<i>R. D. Stuart</i>
SP23	Building Techniques Volume One	<i>V. B. Wigglesworth</i>
SP24	Building Techniques Volume Two	<i>H. King and D. Nield</i>
SP25	Spectroscopy Volume One	<i>H. King and D. Nield</i>
SP26	The Identification of Plastics and Rubbers	<i>S. Walker and H. Straw</i>
SP27	Elements of Pulse Circuits	<i>K. J. Saunders</i>
SP28	The Measurement of Temperature	<i>F. J. M. Farley</i>
SP29	An Introduction to the Laplace Transformation	<i>J. A. Hall</i>
SP30	The Theory and Design of Magnetic Amplifiers	<i>J. C. Jaeger</i>
SP31	Cytological Technique	<i>E. H. Frost-Smith</i>
SP32	An Introduction to Linear Programming and the Theory of Games	<i>J. R. Baker</i>
SP33	Ionization and Breakdown in Gases	<i>F. S. Vadjia</i>
SP34	Electric Circuit Problems with Solutions	<i>F. Llewellyn-Jones</i>
SP35	Stochaastic Processes	<i>F. A. Benson</i>
SP36	Wave Mechanics	<i>L. Takacs</i>
SP37	Ionization Avalanches and Breakdown	<i>H. T. Flint</i>
SP38	An Introduction to Tensor Calculus and Relativity	<i>F. Llewellyn-Jones</i>
SP39	Chromatographic Methods	<i>D. F. Lawden</i>
SP40	The Ecology of Animals	<i>R. Stock and C. B. F. Rice</i>
		<i>C. Elton</i>

Practical Microscopical Metallography

by

RICHARD HENRY GREAVES, D.Sc.

and

HAROLD WRIGHTON, B. Met.

SCIENCE PAPERBACKS

CHAPMAN & HALL LTD.

First published 1924
Fourth edition, revised and enlarged, 1957
First published in this series 1967
Printed by lithography in the Netherlands
by N.V. Grafische Industrie Haarlem

*The paperback edition is sold subject
to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade
or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out,
or otherwise circulated without the publisher's
prior consent in any form of binding
or cover other than that in which it is published
and without a similar condition including
this condition being imposed on the
subsequent purchaser.*

SCIENCE PAPERBACKS
*are published by Methuen & Co Ltd,
Chapman & Hall Ltd and E. & F. N. Spon,
all members of Associated Book Publishers Ltd,
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4*

PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION

THE preparation of a fourth edition of this book has afforded an opportunity for revision and enlargement. Various sections dealing with the structure and constitution of alloys have been rewritten and expanded. Some additions have been made to the chapter dealing with the microscope and method of microscopical examination, and also to the practical notes on particular materials. Reference has been made to the latest developments of objectives and methods of illumination used in optical microscopy; and among the additional illustrations are photomicrographs taken with the equipment described. In a chapter on "Special Techniques in Metallurgical Microscopy" the principles of examination by polarized light, by phase contrast and by light profile methods are briefly described and illustrated. In view of the growing importance of non-ferrous alloys, separate chapters, containing some new photomicrographs, are now devoted to alloys of aluminium, of magnesium and of nickel.

In its aim and character the book is essentially unchanged. It is concerned with the methods and results of the examination of metals and alloys by the aid of the optical microscope, and presents a series of typical photomicrographs, suitably annotated, and accompanied by a concise account of the results of metallographic researches and other investigations, in so far as they afford an interpretation of the structures and associated properties of commercial materials.

We have kept in mind the needs both of metallurgical students and of students of engineering who study metallography as a part of their engineering course. Metallurgists and engineers are on common ground in considering the strength and properties of engineering materials. In this book, therefore, the structures of metals and alloys of industrial importance are considered in detail in the light of their constitution, but with special reference to their mechanical properties and practical utility. Attention is directed to defects which may cause difficulties in manufacture or lead to failure in service. A full description is also given of the technique of microscopical examination and of photomicrography; and methods of overcoming practical difficulties which may be encountered are indicated. It is thus hoped that the book

PREFACE

may also be of value to independent workers, practising engineers and other users of metals who desire to avail themselves of this method of examination.

All the photomicrographs which appeared in earlier editions of this book were taken at University College, Cardiff, or at the Research Department, Woolwich. We wish again to record our thanks to the late Prof. A. A. Read at whose suggestion the book first took shape; to Dr. W. R. D. Jones for supplying photomicrographs to illustrate the structure of the copper-magnesium alloys; and to the Director of Artillery for permission to make use of a number of photomicrographs taken by our colleagues and ourselves in the course of our duties at Woolwich. For additional photomicrographs to illustrate the present edition we are indebted to several research organizations and to numerous friends to whom acknowledgement is made on page vii.

R. H. G.
H. W.

March, 1957.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

FOR the supply of illustrations of microscopes and accessory equipment, acknowledgement is gratefully made to Messrs. R. & J. Beck Ltd., Messrs. Cooke, Troughton and Simms Ltd., and Messrs. W. Watson & Sons Ltd.

Special thanks are due to Dr. J. A. Belk for providing the manuscript upon which the section on phase contrast is based.

We are also greatly indebted to the following, who have supplied photomicrographs and information relating to them:

The Aluminium Development Association and the Research Laboratories of the British Aluminium Company Ltd. (Pl. 68); the Copper Development Association (Pl. 55B and material for Pl. 17A); the British Non-Ferrous Metals Research Association and Mr. M. A. Houghton for discussion of technique and help in selecting the photomicrographs (Pl. 17A, 61, 75A, B, 78A, B, H); the Magnesium Elektron Company Ltd. and Dr. E. F. Emley (Pl. 69, 70); the Mond Nickel Company Ltd. and the late Mr. H. Evans and Dr. W. Steven (Pl. 32, 33, 52, 64, 65); Hard Metal Tools Ltd. and Dr. E. M. Trent (Pl. 40A, B); the General Electric Company's Research Laboratories and Mr. D. J. Jones (Pl. 40C, D); the Glacier Metals Company Ltd. and Mr. W. E. Duckworth (Pl. 55C, D, E); Messrs. Edgar Allen & Co. Ltd. and Dr. E. Gregory (Pl. 39D, E, F); also to Instr. Commdr. H. A. Hendrie, R.N. (ret'd.) (Pl. 18D, 71E); Messrs. B. W. Mott and E. C. Sykes (Pl. 76, 77); G. C. Smith (Pl. 78C, D, E, F, G); and K. J. B. Wolfe (Pl. 67E).

NOMENCLATURE OF ALLOYS

IN 1914, the Institute of Metals Committee on the Systematic Nomenclature of Alloys recommended that an alloy should be denoted by the names of its component metals placed in order of increasing percentage content by weight,* and this system was adhered to in earlier editions of this book. The Committee's decision was reversed in 1944,† and therefore in this revised edition alloys, other than those with well-established commercial names, are denoted by their constituent elements in order of decreasing proportion by weight.

* *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1914, vol. 11, p. 45.

† *Monthly Journal of the Institute of Metals*, January, 1944.

CONTENTS

CHAP.	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION	I
II. PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS FOR MICRO-EXAMINATION	5
III. THE MICROSCOPE AND METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION	21
IV. LOW-POWER PHOTOMICROGRAPHY AND MACROGRAPHY	52
V. THE STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS	64
VI. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF INGOT IRON AND WROUGHT IRON	82
VII. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS, AND THE EFFECT OF HOT- AND COLD-WORK	86
VIII. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS	98
IX. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS, AND THE EFFECT OF HEAT TREATMENT	109
X. NON-METALLIC INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL	127
XI. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF PIG IRON, CAST IRON AND MALLEABLE CAST IRON	142
XII. THE EFFECT OF IMPURITIES IN COPPER	151
XIII. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF COPPER WITH ZINC, TIN, SILICON, ALUMINIUM AND NICKEL	159
XIV. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF NICKEL WITH COPPER, IRON AND CHROMIUM	178
XV. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF ALUMINIUM	182
XVI. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF MAGNESIUM	192
XVII. THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN, LEAD, AND OF BEARING METALS	196
XVIII. SPECIAL TECHNIQUES IN METALLURGICAL MICROSCOPY	205
INDEX OF PHOTOMICROGRAPHS	215
SUBJECT INDEX	217

LIST OF PLATES

PLATE	BETWEEN PAGES
1. Polishing	16-17
2. Microscopes and illuminators	16-17
3. Illuminator; illuminating bench; works microscope	16-17
4. Photomicrographic equipment	16-17
5. Photomicrographic equipment	16-17
6. Vickers Projection Microscope	16-17
7. Inverted microscope; binocular microscope; 35-mm. film camera	40-41
8. Effect of tube-length correction	40-41
9. Comparison of 2-mm. and 3-mm. apochromats	40-41
10. Micrographs taken with 4-mm. apochromat and light from a mercury lamp	48-49
11. Micrographs taken with achromats	48-49
12. Micrographs taken with a N.A. 1.6 objective and with a $\frac{7}{8}$ -in ciné lens	48-49
13. Illuminating system for low magnifications	48-49
14. Comparison of 40-mm. objective and $\frac{7}{8}$ -in. ciné lens	64-65
15. Photography of macrostructures	64-65
16. Macrostructures of steel ingots	64-65
17. Microstructure of pure metals	64-65
18. Microstructure of solid solutions	80-81
19. Copper-magnesium alloys	80-81
20. Wrought iron; Neumann bands	80-81
21. Normalized and annealed carbon steels	80-81
22. Normalized and annealed carbon steels	80-81
23. Pearlite structures	80-81
24. Widmanstätten structure	80-81
25. Carbon steel castings	96-97
26. Cold-worked carbon steels	96-97
27. Carbon steel; effect of manganese	96-97
28. Austenite; martensite; troostite; sorbitic pearlite	96-97
29. Sorbitic pearlite and sorbite	96-97
30. Heat-treated carbon steels	96-97
31. Heat-treated carbon steels	96-97
32. Isothermal transformation of nickel-chromium steel at 320° C.	112-113
33. Isothermal transformation of nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel at various temperatures	112-113
34. Heat-treated nickel steel	112-113
35. Heat-treated alloy steels	112-113
36. Heat-treated manganese and manganese-molybdenum steels	112-113
37. Heat-treated forgings of carbon steel and alloy steels	112-113
38. Heat-treated alloy steel forgings	112-113

LIST OF PLATES

PLATE	BETWEEN PAGES
39. Alloy steel forgings; spring steel; tool steel	128-129
40. Powder metallurgy products; hard metals; heavy alloys	128-129
41. Stainless and heat-resisting steels	128-129
42. Austenitic stainless steel	128-129
43. Macrostructure of a steel ingot	128-129
44. Macrostructure of alloy steel forgings	128-129
45. Defects in steel; inclusions	128-129
46. Defects in steel; rokes	128-129
47. Defects in steel; ghosts	128-129
48. Defects in steel; piping; cracks	128-129
49. Defects in steel; cracks	128-129
50. Hair-line crack in steel; pig iron	144-145
51. Pig iron; cast iron	144-145
52. Cast iron; alloy cast iron	144-145
53. Malleable cast iron	144-145
54. Malleable cast iron; alloy cast iron	144-145
55. Copper; copper-lead	144-145
56. Copper; copper alloys	144-145
57. Cold-worked and annealed brass	160-161
58. Brasses	160-161
59. Bronzes	160-161
60. Aluminium bronzes	160-161
61. Condenser tube alloys	160-161
62. Macrostructures of brass	176-177
63. Macrostructures of copper alloys	176-177
64. Nickel alloys	176-177
65. High-permeability magnetic alloy strip	176-177
66. Aluminium alloys	176-177
67. Aluminium alloys	176-177
68. Aluminium alloys	176-177
69. Magnesium alloys	192-193
70. Magnesium alloys	192-193
71. Zinc alloys; lead alloys	192-193
72. Lead alloys; bearing metals	192-193
73. Zinc alloys; macrostructure of a lead alloy	192-193
74. Macrostructures of zinc and lead	192-193
75. Special techniques; polarized light; phase contrast	192-193
76. Special techniques; opaque stop illumination	192-193
77. Special techniques; phase contrast	192-193
78. Special techniques; phase contrast; use of reflecting objective; light profile; interference	192-193

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE TEXT

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Arrangement of motor and polishing block	7
2.	Electrolytic polishing; arrangement of circuit.	14
3.	Current/voltage curve for copper	14
4.	Device for levelling metal specimens mounted in plasticine	16
5.	Method of levelling by means of a brass ring.	16
6.	Block for mounting strip	17
7.	Clamp for holding strip for polishing	17
8.	Method of mounting for taper sectioning	19
9.	Diagrams illustrating vertical and oblique illumination	21
10.	Beck-Chapman opaque illuminator	22
11.	Vertical illuminators	23
12.	Diagram illustrating critical illumination	24
13.	Simple illuminating system for photomicrography	30
14.	Illuminating system for photomicrography	33
15.	Section of Vickers projection microscope	39
16.	Vertical illumination at high powers	53
17.	Vertical illumination at low powers	53
18.	Illuminating system for low magnifications	54
19.	Vertical illumination in photography of macrosections	61
20.	Face-centred cubic lattice	64
21.	Body-centred cubic lattice	64
22.	Close-packed hexagonal structure	64
23.	Constitutional diagram of the copper-nickel alloys	69
24.	Constitutional diagram of the lead-tin alloys	71
25.	Constitutional diagram of the magnesium-copper alloys	74
26.	Solubility of magnesium in copper	75
27.	Solubility of carbon in α -iron	78
28.	The δ -region of the iron-carbon diagram	79
29.	The γ -loop of the iron-chromium diagram	80
30.	Part of the iron-carbon constitutional diagram	87
31.	Diagram illustrating grain size	93
32.	Properties of heat-treated 0.45 per cent. carbon steel	106
33.	Time-temperature-transformation diagram for 1 per cent. nickel steel (En 12)	111
34.	Time-temperature-transformation diagram for 3 per cent. nickel-chromium steel (En 23)	112
35.	Relation between mechanical properties and direction of test-piece in forged steel	129
36.	The iron-carbon constitutional diagram	143
37.	Constitutional diagram of copper-cuprous oxide	151
38.	Constitutional diagram of copper-arsenic alloys	153
39.	Constitutional diagram of copper-zinc alloys	160
40.	Effect of composition on the mechanical properties of annealed brasses	161
41.	Effect of annealing on the mechanical properties of cold-rolled 70:30 brass	163

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
42.	Constitutional diagram of the copper-tin alloys	168
43.	Constitutional diagram of the copper-silicon alloys	170
44.	Constitutional diagram of the copper-aluminium alloys	171
45.	Solubility of copper in aluminium	183
46.	Solubility of magnesium silicide in aluminium	183
47.	Constitutional diagram of the aluminium-silicon alloys	184
48.	Constitutional diagram of the aluminium-zinc alloys	186
49.	Reflecting objective (Beck)	206
50.	Arrangement for phase contrast microscopy	209
51.	Diagram illustrating superposition of the annulus on the phase ring .	211
52.	Arrangement for two-beam interferometry	213

INTRODUCTION

THE term Metallography is not confined merely to the visual or microscopical examination of metals, but now comprises all methods employed in the study of the constitution and internal structure of metals and their alloys, and the influence of structure and constitution on the physical and mechanical properties.

Although there are scattered records of the microscopical examination of metals by several earlier investigators, the work of Sorby in the middle of the nineteenth century marked the first systematic attempt to discover by the aid of the microscope the distinguishing structural characteristics of different samples of iron and steel. Sorby in 1856 established the practice of microscopical examination of rock sections and founded the science of petrography: and by an extension of the same idea and modification of the technique he began, before 1864, to turn his attention to metallurgical products. In 1886 he announced the discovery of the "pearly constituent" as a characteristic feature of carbon steels. Microscopical examination of metals was taken up independently by Martens (1878) and Osmond (1880), Sorby's work was continued later by Arnold, while Stead, Roberts-Austen, Howe, Charpy, Heycock and Neville and others were among the pioneers of metallographical research.

At the suggestion of Howe the various constituents of steel were defined by mineralogical names to facilitate reference. Thus crystals of pure iron were called "ferrite," carbide of iron "cementite," and Sorby's "pearly constituent" became known as "pearlite." Later, personal names were pressed into service for constituents or characteristic structures, e.g. sorbite, austenite, martensite, etc. Fortunately these complexities of terminology have been avoided in the more recently developed metallography of the non-ferrous alloys.

The constituents of the microstructure of a metal or alloy are formed during solidification from the liquid or during transformations which subsequently take place in the solid metal. The appearance of the structure alone will not give full information regarding its origin or the relation of one constituent to another.

Hence the microscope was supplemented at an early date by other instruments of research, notably the pyrometer, and it was

mainly by the aid of these two that the foundation of the new science of metallography was laid. By means of the thermo-couple and the electrical resistance pyrometer, accurate temperature measurements at high temperatures became possible, and the freezing points and other thermal changes in metals or alloys were observed. The results of thermal and microscopical examination in conjunction with chemical analysis have been condensed into "equilibrium diagrams," the construction and interpretation of which will be referred to in more detail later. Of recent years, crystal analysis by X-rays has furnished a most effective method of investigating the constitution of alloys, by providing a knowledge of their internal structure and the changes it undergoes with change of composition, both at atmospheric and at high temperatures. Specific volume, magnetic properties, electrical resistance, thermo-electric properties and electromotive force have all been used to confirm and extend the results of thermal and microscopical examination. In addition to the essential value of chemical analysis in defining the ultimate composition of the material as a whole, separation of individual constituents has been accomplished by chemical methods in some cases.

Mechanical properties, such as hardness, tenacity and ductility, are continually being correlated with microstructure, while the numerous defects to which commercial metals and alloys are liable are almost invariably associated with abnormalities of structure. It is to illustrate this aspect of the subject that the following pages are mainly directed: the matter treated is narrowed down to that which may be included in the term "microscopical metallography," i.e. the examination of the structure of metals and alloys, by the aid of the microscope. Without the evidence of the subsidiary methods of examination referred to above, the micrography of metals would be little more than a collection and attempted classification of the structures characteristic of particular metals or alloys, but subject to enormous and inexplicable variations. In order to explain and systematize the data obtained by microscopical examination, it will therefore be necessary to introduce the results of other methods of metallographic investigation, though for detailed information regarding these, the reader is referred to books dealing more generally with the subject of Metallography.

Constitutional Diagrams

The temperatures at which changes in the constitution of alloys occur, under conditions as nearly approaching true equilibrium as

INTRODUCTION

can be attained, are determined experimentally and recorded in a simple graphical manner. The horizontal axis represents composition, the vertical axis temperature. The diagram will contain a curve passing through all the points which represent temperatures at which alloys of different compositions begin to freeze, or at which melting is complete. This is known as the liquidus. Below this will be a curve joining up all points which represent the temperature at which solidification is just complete on cooling, or at which melting just begins on heating. This is the solidus. The physically distinct portions of the alloy system which undergo these changes are known as phases. Thus, the homogeneous liquid solution of one metal in another is a phase, and if the metals are completely miscible in the liquid state, there is only one liquid phase. The solid which is formed on solidification is another phase, and if in the solid alloy different kinds of solid substance (which, however, must be chemically and physically homogeneous throughout) are microscopically visible alongside of one another, more than one phase is present, though possibly not more than one phase will remain when equilibrium is attained by annealing. If alloys undergo changes in the solid state, the temperatures at which they occur are recorded as points in the constitutional diagram: the same type of change occurring over a range of composition is revealed as a line joining up individual points.

When all such changes have been inserted, the diagram becomes a complete chart of the various conditions assumed at different temperatures by an alloy of any composition within the system dealt with. A simple check on the accuracy of the diagram is afforded by the physico-chemical principle known as the Phase rule. This tells nothing about the character or properties of the phases, but merely defines how many different phases may exist together in a system in true equilibrium under varying conditions of composition, temperature and (if a vapour is concerned) pressure. By true equilibrium is meant a state which shows a continuous change with change of conditions, e.g. temperature, but which is always the same no matter in what direction it is approached, e.g. by heating up or by cooling down. There are many alloys which appear to be, and are practically, in a perfectly stable state, since they have existed unchanged for a period of centuries, but yet they are not in turn equilibrium. If they are heated slightly and then slowly cooled, they do not regain their original condition, but undergo a change which is always in the nature of closer approach to true equilibrium.

The accurately determined constitutional diagram represents the condition of true equilibrium between the constituents at any given temperature: but it is important for those who, for practical purposes, wish to interpret microstructures in the light of the equilibrium diagrams, no less than for those engaged in their actual determination, to recognize how the microscopical method is employed in their construction. Its use depends on the assumption that an alloy can be brought into its condition of equilibrium at any given temperature and that its structure in this condition can be retained by quenching. The first assumption is generally correct, though it is now recognized that, except at high temperatures, equilibrium is very slowly attained by annealing. Thus whereas annealing for a few hours may be employed in practice, annealing for days or even months may have been necessary in the investigation of equilibrium conditions. The second assumption is by no means universally true, even for very rapid quenching carried out on small pieces; but the significance of the structure is usually not misleading to the trained investigator, since its appearance, in conjunction with information given by cooling curves, leaves no doubt that the change has occurred or has started to occur. In practice, however, complete retention by quenching of a condition stable at high temperatures is not often possible.

Commercial alloys are rarely in a condition of true equilibrium, but this does not detract from the practical value of the constitutional diagram. In fact, no diagram which is intended to become more and more accurate in detail with increasing knowledge could ever be framed to express conditions other than those of true equilibrium. A comparison of the structure of a commercial alloy with that required by the diagram will indicate the possibility of change, and the direction in which the change will tend to occur if a high-temperature treatment is applied to the alloy. The exact limits of composition beyond which deleterious constituents are bound to occur or within which their separation may be suppressed by heat treatment are shown by the diagram, and a rational basis for the choice of correct temperatures in heat treatment is provided.

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS FOR
MICRO-EXAMINATION**Sampling**

FOR convenience in manipulation it is advisable to keep the size of the specimens for microscopical examination within the limits of $\frac{1}{4}$ –1 in. square or diameter, whenever possible. Very small or very large specimens are more difficult to polish, the former because of a tendency to rounding of the edges, the latter on account of the difficulty of removing all scratches. The specimen is easier to hold if its thickness is less than the linear dimensions of the polished face: $\frac{3}{16}$ – $\frac{3}{8}$ in. are convenient thicknesses. For very thin specimens special methods of mounting have to be employed.

Specimens should be selected from various positions which will suggest themselves according to the character of the material and the object of the examination. Thus, from a rolled rod both transverse and longitudinal sections should be examined, from a casting the whole cross section should be explored to observe differences from inside to outside, and so on. In some cases it may be necessary to make a preliminary examination of very large pieces, but after this has been carried out at low magnifications, they should be cut up for more detailed examination. In investigating material which has failed in use, large numbers of sections are sometimes required. Examination in the neighbourhood of the fracture should be supplemented by a general examination of the material for the purpose of revealing any lack of uniformity of composition and treatment. Some further suggestions on the conduct of the examination of failures are given in Chapter X. It should be remembered that in some cases, after annealing, the material near the outer skin may be altered; thus steel may be decarburized, or a brass may lose some of its zinc.

The specimens should, when possible, be cut out by hack saw, the blade of which should be lubricated by applying soap solution at intervals with a brush. For large material, preliminary cutting by other means—lathe, shaping machine or band saw—is required. Violent mechanical action must be avoided as likely to

cause distortion of the material (see Pl. 1A), and no method which involves heating of the material (such as oxy-acetylene cutting) should be used. Even a slight rise of temperature is sufficient to cause an alteration of structure in hardened steels. Hard steel specimens may have to be cut or shaped by an abrasive wheel. As low a speed as possible should be used together with a copious flow of water. With a high speed of grinding, intense heat may be developed locally, causing alteration of structure with formation of a fine network of cracks produced by rapid heating and chilling.

Preparation of Specimens of Steel

A specimen of convenient size having been cut, a level surface should be produced by shaping or filing. From the beginning care should be taken to minimize the depth of the flow and distortion which occurs below the worked surface. Deep file marks or a heavy saw-cut may not only completely alter the structure of the underlying metal, but may conceal the existence of porosity and cracks.

After the surface has been levelled by rubbing it on a fine file or by grinding wet in a surface-grinding machine or on a slow-running grindstone, the corners and edges of the specimen, which are apt to tear paper and cloth at subsequent stages of polishing, should be rounded off.*

The specimen is then ground on successively finer grades of emery paper. Each sheet, when in use, is laid on plate glass about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thick and the specimen is held face downwards on it and given a steady to-and-fro motion towards and away from the operator, until an even system of parallel scratches is produced. At each transfer to a finer grade of paper, the specimen itself, the glass plate and the surrounding bench should be dusted to remove emery particles, and grinding continued in a direction at right angles to the previous series of scratches until these are entirely replaced by a new system of finer scratches at right angles to the first.

For the early stages of this process, emery cloths or the coarser papers of any make will probably prove to be quite suitable. The primary object is the removal of distorted and flowed metal. Whenever material is to be examined for defects, such as fine cracks, porosity or inclusions, grinding on each of the coarser emery papers should be continued well beyond the stage at which

* If for any purpose, such as the examination of cracks, decarburization, etc., an edge must be preserved, the specimen should be dealt with as described on p. 18.

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

the previous scratches become obliterated. Minute defects in the metal will not be exposed unless the distorted material underlying the original cut surface has all been removed.

For the further stages of grinding, the special French emery papers (e.g. Hubert's *Qualité supérieure*) will be required. A suitable selection would be the M, F and o, oo and ooo grades. It is essential that transfer from one paper to the next should not be made until all scratches are in the same direction (see Pl. 1B), and

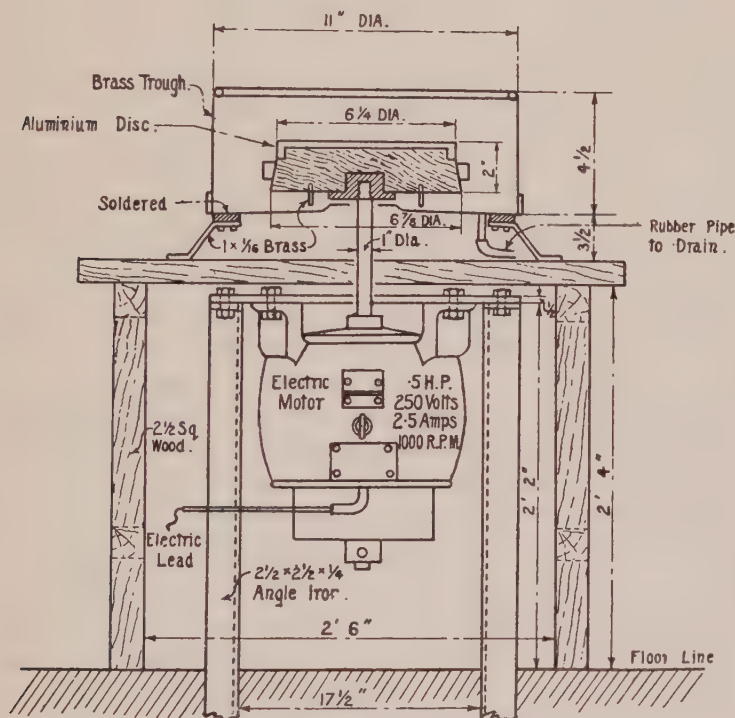


FIG. 1. Arrangement of Motor and Polishing Block (not to scale). An adjustable external resistance is used to obtain slower speeds down to 300 revs. per min.

that the pressure exerted should not be so great as to raise the temperature of the surface of the specimen appreciably. Prolonged grinding with these, as with the coarser papers, may sometimes be advisable. Inclusions present in steel are apt to be torn from their cavities by coarse emery particles. Graphite in cast iron is specially subject to damage in this way. Continued grinding on the finer papers may be necessary to reveal the enclosed material intact and unbroken.

After coming from the ooo emery paper, the specimen is ready for finishing. It is rinsed in water and then held against a rapidly

rotating disc covered with a suitable pad impregnated with a suspension of a polishing powder in water. A convenient arrangement is shown in Fig. 1. The motor should have sufficient power to run steadily under the pressure necessarily applied to the specimen, not only at high speed (up to about 1000 r.p.m.) but, particularly when soft metal specimens are being prepared, to run steadily under pressure at slow speeds (e.g. 400 r.p.m. or less).

Self-contained grinding and polishing machines are supplied by several makers. Such machines are most useful for polishing, but the desirability of using power-driven discs for the grinding stages is debatable though they may be useful for some commercial purposes. Any time that may be saved over that spent in hand grinding is at the risk of overheating or distortion of the surface of the specimen, or of trouble due to the spread of emery dust.

A suitable polishing powder for general use is alumina. This may exist in two forms according to the temperature at which it is produced. At 1200° C. gamma alumina, which normally exists as fine thin plates, reverts to the alpha form which tends to occur as granular particles. As a result of a thorough examination of the characteristics, including size and shape of the particles, of metallographic polishing powders for use with steel,* the conclusion reached was on the whole in favour of gamma alumina produced by heating ammonium alum at 1100° C. for at least one hour. Prolonged heating at this temperature offered no advantage. Calcination of alum at 1250° C. gives alpha alumina which is harder and is a more rapid polishing medium for hard steels, but which causes scratches unless its particle size is very small. Commercial alpha alumina, produced at a high temperature, is not suitable for polishing purposes.

Gamma alumina is available commercially, sometimes under trade names such as "Diamantine," but it may easily be prepared in any laboratory in the following manner: Pure ammonium alum is heated in a porcelain or silica dish over a Bunsen burner to decompose it and drive off the water of crystallization. It is then strongly heated in a muffle at 1000° C. for four or five hours, any crust formed being broken down at intervals. There should be a current of air in the muffle to remove acid fumes. The product, after cooling, crumbles to an impalpable powder, which is bottled and without any further treatment constitutes a satisfactory

* E. C. Rollason, E. Sharratt and R. R. Roberts: *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, July 1949, vol. 162, p. 265.

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

polishing medium. Contamination by foreign matter must be carefully guarded against.

An alternative method of preparing gamma alumina is by drying out and slowly heating a saturated solution of aluminium sulphate to 950°C ., holding at that temperature for twenty-four to forty-eight hours and cooling slowly in the furnace.* The use of aluminium sulphate obviates the formation of large clouds of ammonium sulphate fumes, but acid impurities are most easily avoided by using ammonium alum as the source of gamma alumina.

The grade of magnesium oxide sold as "heavy calcined magnesia" is a satisfactory powder for polishing the harder metals such as iron and steel when used, without further preparation, as a suspension in water. If the water supply contains much dissolved carbonate, distilled water should be used. In any case the wet oxide, exposed to air, will form hard and gritty particles of magnesium carbonate. When polishing is completed, or at the end of a day's work, the polishing cloth should be removed, washed free from powder, then rinsed in dilute hydrochloric acid and finally in water.

Although it is not strong and wears out quickly, the cloth known as selvyt makes an excellent pad, and when used wet (as it almost invariably is) is superior to wash-leather. Serge suiting cloth is a very satisfactory material for polishing iron and steel specimens; it enables a suitable finish to be obtained more quickly than with selvyt, but it is too hard for use with the softer metals. Cuttings may be obtained cheaply by arrangement with a firm of tailors. The cloth or selvyt is stretched on a disc, which may be of hard wood or wood covered with aluminium, and is held by means of a ring: it is flooded with water and, after the water has soaked in, the alumina is applied and gently rubbed round with the finger. The disc is rotated and fed with water while the specimen is held against the surface. To eliminate scratches and ensure an even polishing effect the specimen should be slowly moved in the reverse direction to the rotation of the disc.

A plentiful supply of water and of polishing medium should be used. It is indispensable to keep the specimen wet; if dry, alumina becomes embedded in the surface and is not removed by subsequent polishing. When inspection shows that the surface is free from scratches the specimen is well washed under the tap and carefully dried on a soft cloth. It may be examined with a small

* E. C. W. Perryman: *Metal Industry*, July 13, 1951, vol. 79, p. 23.

lens or put under the microscope to judge the success or otherwise of the polishing operation. One or two minutes on the polishing wheel should be sufficient for a specimen $\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ in. square. If only a few faint scratches are visible at a magnification of about 50 the specimen is suitable for all ordinary purposes of examination. If many scratches persist a return should be made to a fresh sheet of the final grade of emery paper.

Alternative Methods of Preparation

It is now common practice to mount specimens in bakelite or some other synthetic resin which, when set, provides a hard, firm mass which can be ground and polished without collapse or rupture, and which maintains close contact with the specimen at all points. Presses made for this purpose are available. The specimen, cleaned and free from grease, is surrounded by the mounting material in powder form and subjected to pressure at a temperature of 100° C. to 150° C. After the initial heating of the press, samples can be mounted in ten minutes or less.

Specimens too large for a press of this type, or those with structures which might be affected at temperatures above 100° C., may be mounted in fluid bakelite. A metal ring is fixed to a glass slip by an adhesive to form a mould, the specimen is placed inside and bakelite varnish N.P.A. poured over the specimen to fill the ring. The mould and its contents are then heated at 55° C. to 60° C. for a period up to forty-eight hours in a small thermostatically controlled oven. It is desirable not to use too high a temperature, though heating for thirty-six hours at 85° C. to 90° C. has been found to be satisfactory by some workers. It is usually unnecessary to extract the volatile solvent from this material by means of a vacuum pump, but in order to remove entrapped gas from rough scaled or corroded surfaces it is sometimes desirable to place the mould in a vacuum desiccator and add the bakelite varnish through a dropping funnel. The mounted specimen is then baked in the usual way.

Cold-setting synthetic cements are now available which, when mixed with the appropriate accelerator in a mould around the specimen, set firmly in a few minutes, generally with the development of some little heat, but not sufficient to affect metallic structures as a rule.

These different synthetic materials are generally inert to most of the etching solutions used. There are exceptions, however; for instance some of them are attacked by acetone but not by alcohol.

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

Any such attack produces smearing of the metal surface. It has generally been found safer to use alcohol for rinsing the specimens and to avoid the use of acetone.

Grinding of a specimen on a series of lead laps, or polishing discs faced with lead or 50 : 50 lead-tin alloy has been advocated,* each lap being impregnated with a suitable abrasive of decreasing particle size, but greater success has been found in the use of lead foil placed on a glass plate and charged with emery powder to which water is added as a lubricant. Advantages claimed are that relief effects are avoided and non-metallic inclusions are retained intact.

Alternative Methods of Polishing

There are or have been in use a large number of methods of carrying out the final stages in polishing sections for microscopical examination.

Rouge was frequently used, and is still sometimes employed as a polishing medium. As an abrasive it is inferior to alumina and magnesia. It takes longer to eliminate the scratches made by emery paper, and the quality of the surface suffers even when the rouge is used wet on kid-skin or wash-leather. The use of dry rouge for finishing cannot be too strongly condemned. The adherence of dry rouge to the surface during polishing is even more pronounced than that of alumina mentioned above, the surface of steel eventually becoming opalescent.

This fact illustrates a condition which accompanies polishing and is of very great importance in connection with the polishing of soft metals. The mechanical action of polishing produces on the surface of a metal a thin layer the structure of which is different from that of the interior. This altered layer shows the properties of a viscous liquid, for example, in its tendency to flow under the influence of the forces exerted in polishing. The flow of metal of the surface layer is most marked when dry burnishing powders are used, and least marked when wet abrasive powders are employed. The presence of a thin altered layer is not detrimental to micrographic examination, since it is removed by etching; but "buffing," or the production of a "forced polish," is fatal, because it does not permanently eliminate, but merely smoothes over and covers the scratches (Pl. 1c). The first action of the etching agent in dissolving away the surface layer will therefore be to reveal the original scratches in as great a number as ever (Pl. 1d).

* G. A. Ellinger and J. S. Acken: *Trans. Am. Soc. Metals*, 1939, vol. 27, p. 382.

For polishing specimens which contain two or more structural components which differ greatly in hardness, the use of diamond dust offers many advantages. The hardness of the diamond so greatly exceeds that of either component that uniform abrasion takes place and a flat surface, free from relief effects, is produced. After polishing in the usual way down to 000 emery, the specimen is transferred to a rotating pad of selvyt into the surface of which a small amount of No. 3 diamond dust (particle size 1–5 microns) has been rubbed with the finger, white spirit (light paraffin oil) being used as a lubricant. A tightly-fitting ebonite ring, fitted to the selvyt pad and projecting a little above its surface, is used to minimize loss of diamond during polishing. Alternatively, No. $\frac{1}{2}$ diamond dust (0–1 micron) may be used to follow 0000 emery. For abrasion-resisting steels and sintered carbides, the preliminary polishing is best done on carborundum papers instead of emery, and then successively with No. 15 (8–22 microns) and No. 3 diamond. To obtain a completely scratch-free surface it may be desirable to complete the polishing with wet gamma alumina on a rotating pad. The diamond abrasive is available as a paste as well as dust, and this form has an advantage, when applied to parchment backed by plate glass, for hand polishing.

Preparation of Specimens of Soft Metals

The liability to form an altered amorphous layer necessitates that very special precautions shall be taken with soft materials. In the case of copper or soft brass, polishing is carried out under slight pressure on a slow-running disc fed with alumina and water in the usual way. The final polishing is often carried out by means of metal polish (liquid or paste) on selvyt or on chamois leather. Fresh pieces of chamois leather should be frequently used, as they harden when the polish dries on them. It is essential, after polishing with many such media, to wash the specimen in warm caustic soda solution or some degreasing agent in order to remove all grease before etching.

In the case of aluminium and its alloys, the preliminary preparation differs only in the necessity for exercising greater care. Thus the emery papers used should be waxed or soaked in paraffin to prevent embedding of particles of emery on the surface. For final polishing, commercial magnesia powder on a soft woollen cloth has been found satisfactory if the precautions already described are observed in its use.

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

In preparing specimens of very soft metals the final polishing is done by hand with liquid metal polish on selvylt stretched on a board. This leaves a film of grease, which is removed by rubbing on selvylt wetted with benzene or acetone.

A method of preparation of microsections of lead and other soft metals, which has been developed in America and may become more widely used in the future, involves the use of a heavy and massive microtome. If the knife of this instrument is designed and ground correctly, specimens may be prepared by its use without distortion or dragging of the surface, and a very short final polish is all that is necessary before examination. Plane surfaces, suitable for examination, of metals and alloys with a low melting point can often be obtained by casting the metal on to a smooth or polished surface such as plate glass, mica or polished steel.

Electrolytic Polishing

To overcome the difficulties experienced in polishing soft metals by the ordinary methods, Jacquet has suggested the use of electrolytic polishing and has worked out conditions suitable for the polishing of copper and its alloys, aluminium and other metals.*

The general principle is the same for all metals. The specimen to be polished is made the anode in a suitable solution. If an increasing e.m.f. is applied the current rises to a maximum, then falls to a constant value in spite of the increasing potential, and finally rises again sharply. The level portion of the curve corresponds to the formation of a smooth bright surface.

A typical circuit for copper is shown in Fig. 2, and the form of the current/voltage curve in Fig. 3. A specimen of copper or copper alloy, finished on 000 emery and degreased, is made the anode in a phosphoric acid solution containing two parts of orthophosphoric acid and one part of distilled water at a current density of about 3 amp. per square decimetre for fifteen to thirty minutes. A higher current density can be employed for a shorter time. The potential is adjusted to 1.8–2.0 volts. If the voltage is too low, the surface of the metal will become discoloured, but this is corrected if the voltage is raised. If the voltage is too high, gas bubbles will form and cause an uneven surface to develop. The treatment must be sufficiently prolonged to remove the altered layer produced by previous cutting or grinding. After electrolytic

* Abstracts of Jacquet's early work appear in *The Metallurgist*, Aug 1936, p. 150; April 1938, p. 116, and June 1939, p. 39.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

polishing the specimen is washed and etched in the usual way or it may be etched electrolytically in the solutions used for polishing, but at a lower current density (about 1 amp. per square decimetre).

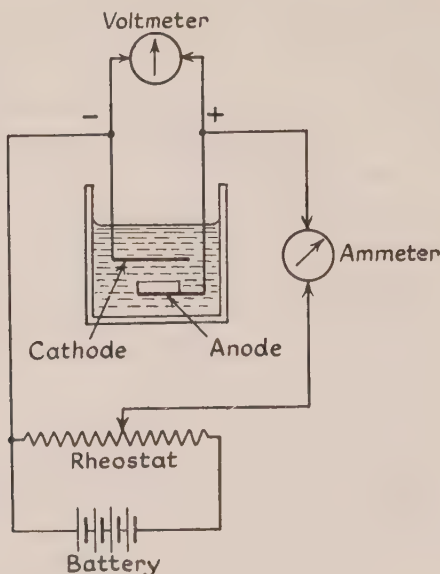


FIG. 2. Electrolytic Polishing; Arrangement of Circuit.

The process may be applied to specimens of all sizes, including sections for macro-examination. Its use has been extended to the polishing of a wide range of metals, and the appropriate tech-

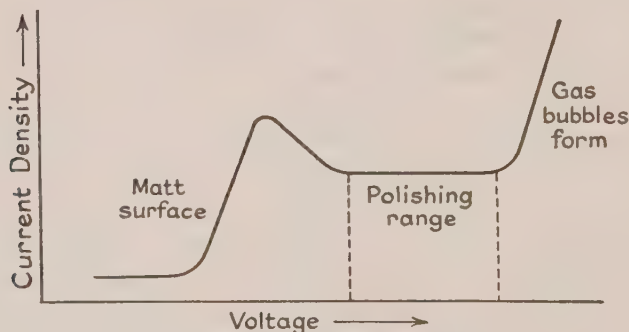


FIG. 3. Current/Voltage Curve for Copper.

niques are separately referred to. The attack of etching reagents on specimens polished electrolytically is more active, and non-metallic inclusions and flaws suffer less risk of damage than on surfaces produced by mechanical polishing. Electrolytic polishing is specially suitable for pure metals and for alloys consisting of

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

solid solutions. If the phases present differ markedly in electro-chemical properties, a structure in relief may be produced. The method is thus useful in detecting the presence of a minor constituent in the grain boundaries of a solid solution.

Development of the Structure

The polished specimen should first be examined unetched. Inclusions, flaws and other defects are more easily observable than in an etched specimen, and their distribution may be more apparent. Coloured constituents may be recognized and occasionally the harder constituents stand out in relief and their form is distinctly visible. Care should be taken to ensure that such observations are not misleading. Restricted aperture or eccentric lighting of the microscope, or bright diffused lighting in the room during low-power examination, may give rise to spurious image and colour effects.

Even in carefully prepared specimens, surface flow may have had the effect of covering very fine cracks or included particles, and if these are to be recognized with certainty the specimen should be etched to remove the altered layer and then lightly repolished by hand on selvyt moistened with liquid metal polish.

The usual method of revealing the structure of polished specimens is by etching. Etching reagents act by the gradual solution of the metal from the surface downward, the rate of solution being modified by local peculiarities of the metal. In a pure metal containing only one constituent, etching generally proceeds slowly, the grain boundaries are rather more quickly attacked than the interior of the grains, and a system of polyhedral grains is gradually revealed. In an alloy containing two or more constituents, if one constituent is electro-positive to the other, electro-chemical action will take place, in which case the rate of solution of one constituent may be negligible while another is rapidly corroded. In these circumstances etching takes place much more quickly. Work has been done correlating the speed of attack with the ionizing power and other properties of the solvent. By the use of a suitable solvent (e.g. amyl alcohol) very slow attack may be obtained. For practical purposes a reagent is required which produces the desired effect in not less than ten seconds or more than about two minutes. The uniformity of etching obtained with alcoholic solutions is usually greater than with aqueous solutions, and staining is less common.

It is impossible to lay down general rules for the time of etch-

ing. The degree of etching which gives the best results varies according to the magnification at which the specimen is to be examined. For high magnifications the etching should not be so prolonged as for low magnifications, since differences of level are produced which render focusing difficult.

Irregular etching is liable to occur when the metal shows any degree of passivity towards the reagent, or when a water solution is used if the slightest film of grease is present. It may best be overcome by rubbing the specimen for a few seconds on a pad soaked with the etching reagent, diluted if necessary, until it is seen that an attack has commenced; it may then be transferred to a dish containing the normal etching solution, and the attack will continue uniformly. No noticeable relief or polish attack is given by the short preliminary rubbing.

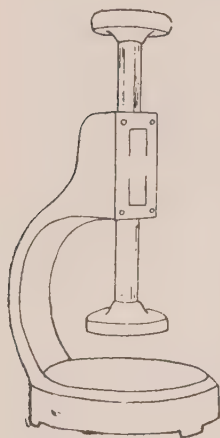


FIG. 4. Device for leveling Metal Specimens mounted in Plasticine.

The specimen after etching should be thoroughly washed in a stream of running water, and subsequently in alcohol or acetone. The sides of the specimen are then wiped, but the surface is allowed to dry untouched.

A current of warm air from a small electric hair-dryer is useful for drying specimens rapidly.

The specimen is embedded in plasticine attached to a glass slip, and the surface levelled by means of a device such as that shown in Fig. 4. In an equally satisfactory alternative method of

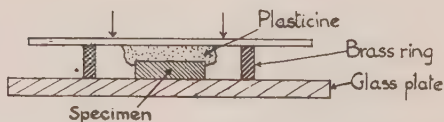


FIG. 5. Method of levelling Metal Specimens mounted in Plasticine, by means of a Brass Ring.

mounting, the specimen is placed face downwards on a glass surface, surrounded by an accurately parallel brass ring, and mounted on a glass slip in plasticine in the manner indicated in Fig. 5. If the slip is then placed on the microscope stage the specimen adhering to it presents a parallel surface and no further levelling is required.

Specimens prepared after being mounted in bakelite as de-

PLATES

I - 6

Plate I

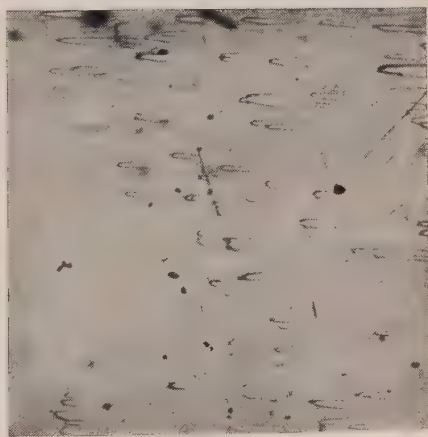
- A. Section taken below the bottom of a drilled hole in 0.4 per cent. carbon steel, showing distortion of the constituents (ferrite and pearlite) produced by the severe mechanical work applied in drilling.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 50.
- B. Appearance of a microsection after leaving 00 emery paper. All scratches are in the same direction.
Unetched. × 100.
- C. Section imperfectly prepared, showing dragging of the surface and forced polish.
Unetched. × 100.
- D. The same section as in C etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Scratches over which metal has flowed during polishing are revealed together with pits giving a false impression of the presence of inclusions. × 250.
- E. The same specimen repolished, and etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. The material is "Armco" ingot iron, consisting of grains of ferrite. × 250.



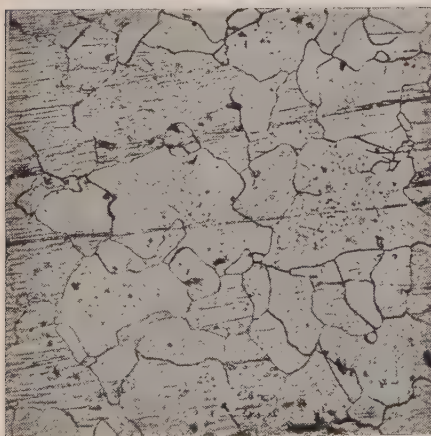
A



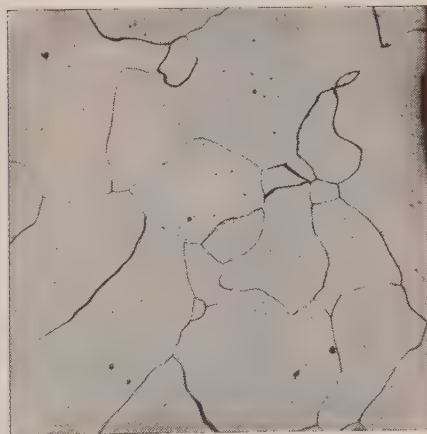
B



C

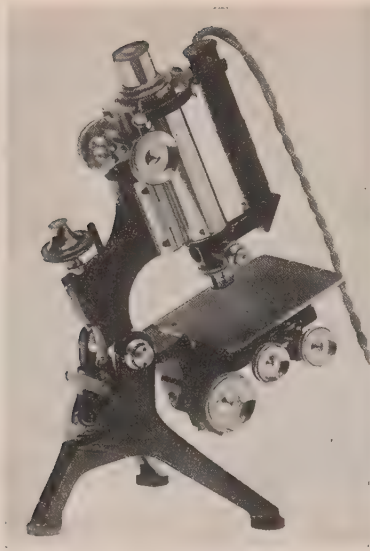


D



E

A



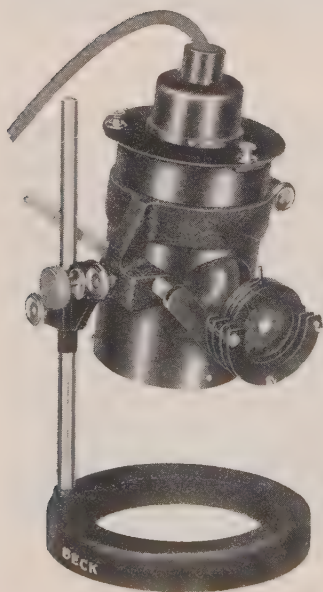
B



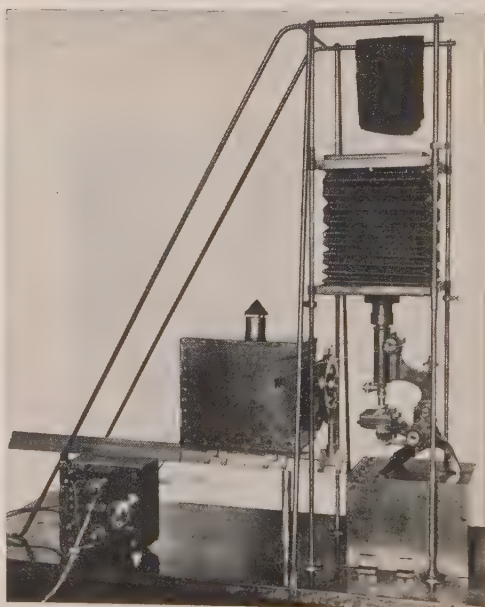
- A. Metallurgical microscope by Messrs. Watson, with Wrighton-Beck Metallurgical Illuminator attached.
- B. Metallurgical microscope by Messrs. Beck, with vertical illuminator for use with external source of light.
- C. Illuminant for visual work by Messrs. Beck, capable of adjustment vertically and about a horizontal axis. Provision is made for an iris diaphragm and colour screens.
- D. The apparatus shown was designed for general purposes, but primarily for metallurgical work. The whole of the illuminating system is mounted on a V bar which may be raised or lowered by means of a worm gear mounted on the underside of the bench. The beam may thus be brought into alignment with the vertical illuminator or with a substage mirror. The bench and the block on which the microscope rests are both very rigid, the latter being built up of steel plates.

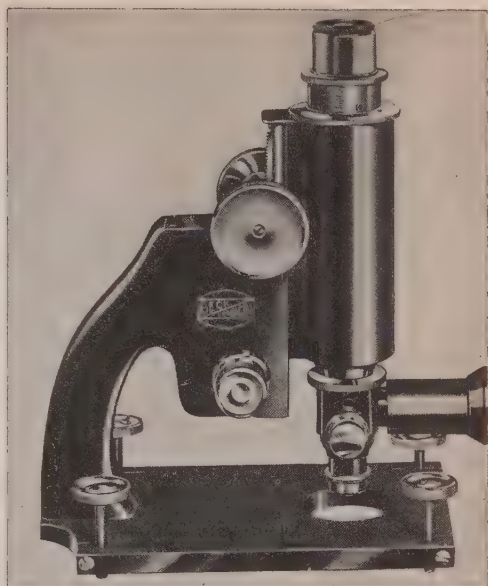
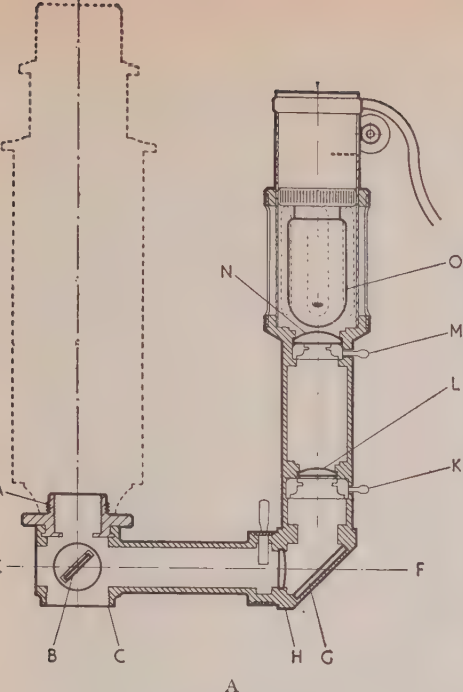
The simple illuminating system shown in the diagram Fig. 13 is assembled.

C



D



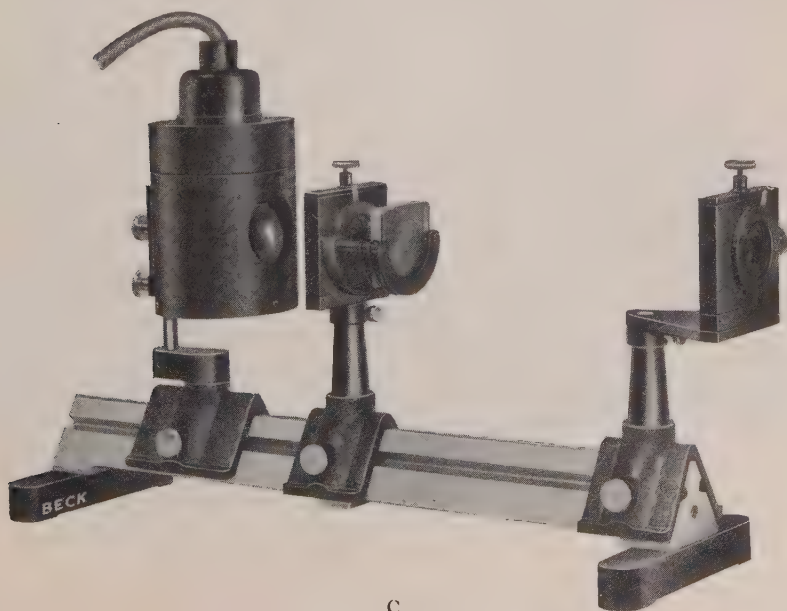


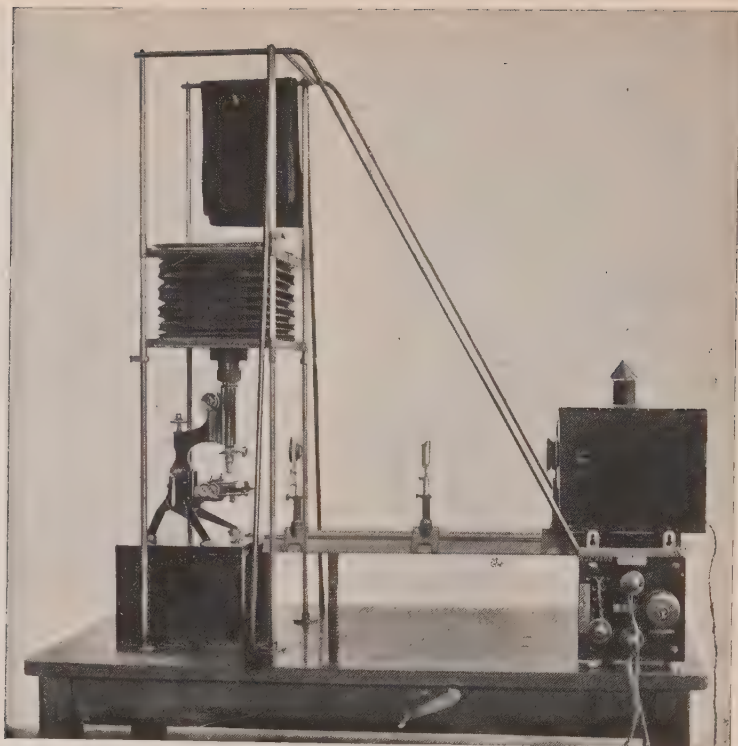
A. The Wrighton-Beck Illuminator. This apparatus contains its own illuminating source and the necessary lenses and diaphragms to give complete control of the lighting. It may be fitted to any microscope and, as it moves with the microscope body, it obviates the necessity for the focusing stage usual on metallurgical microscopes, and renders any microscope suitable for metallurgical work.

B. Workshop microscope by Messrs. Beck (part of the lighting attachment is shown). For large surfaces or parts *in situ*, the microscope can be placed in the required position and focused through the hole in the stage. Levelling screws enable it to be adjusted on an irregular surface.

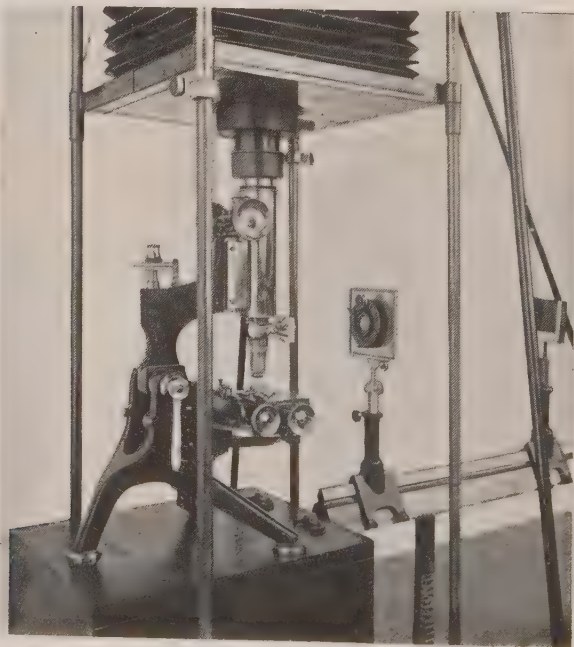
C. The Wrighton-Beck Illuminating Bench, embodying the optical system illustrated in Fig. 14.

(Photographs supplied by Messrs. R. & F. Beck Ltd.)

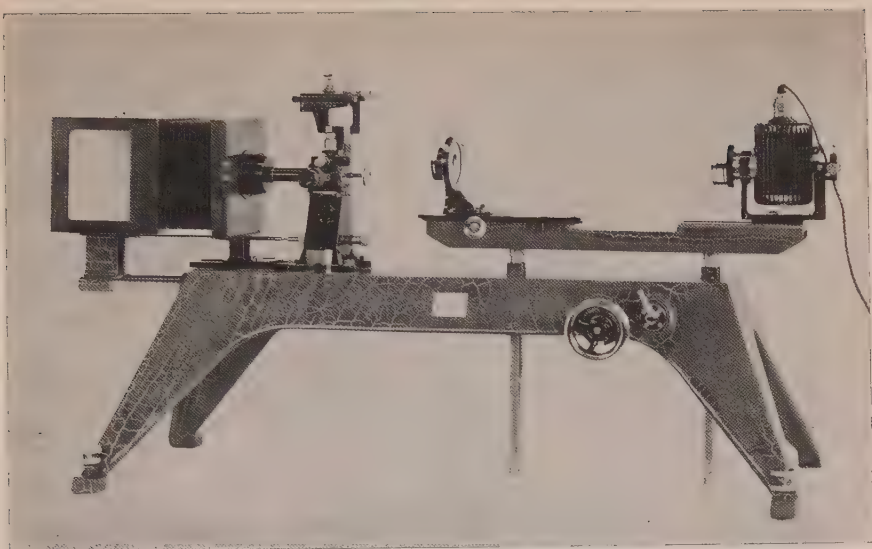




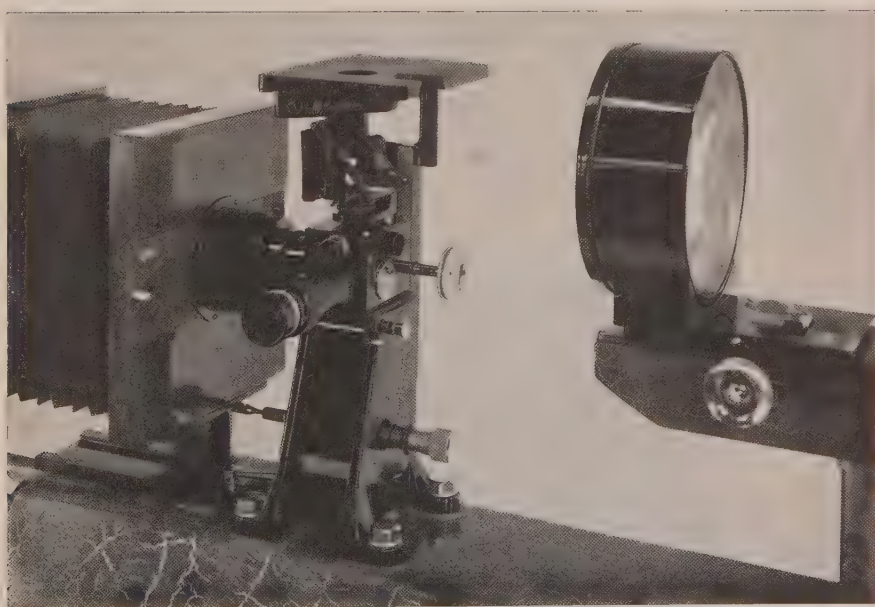
A. Photomicrographic apparatus, with the illuminating system of Fig. 14 assembled.



B. A view showing the frame support for the field lens and shutter, which allows of a crosswise centring adjustment.

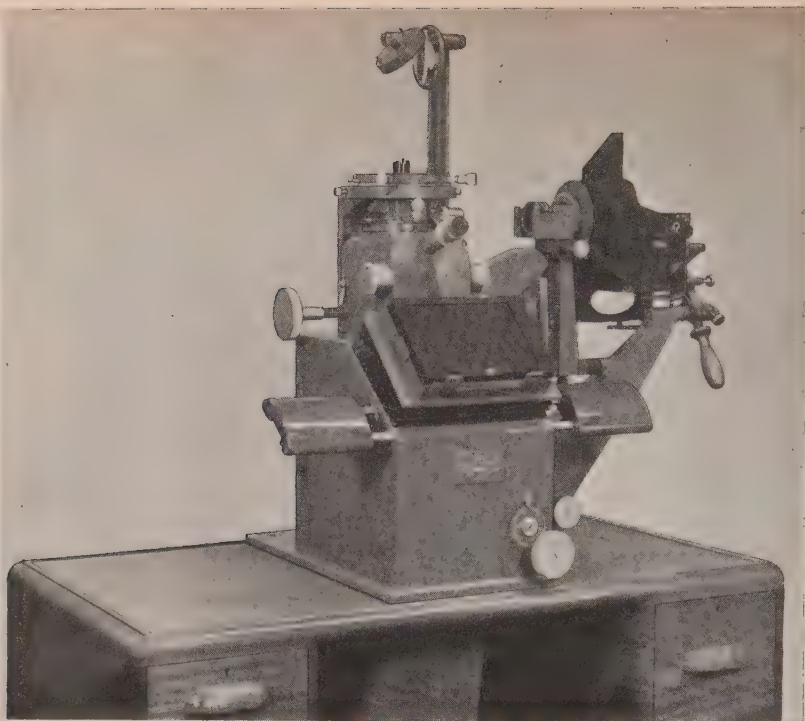


A. Photomicrographic Equipment



B. Method of Illumination for low-power Photomicrography.

A



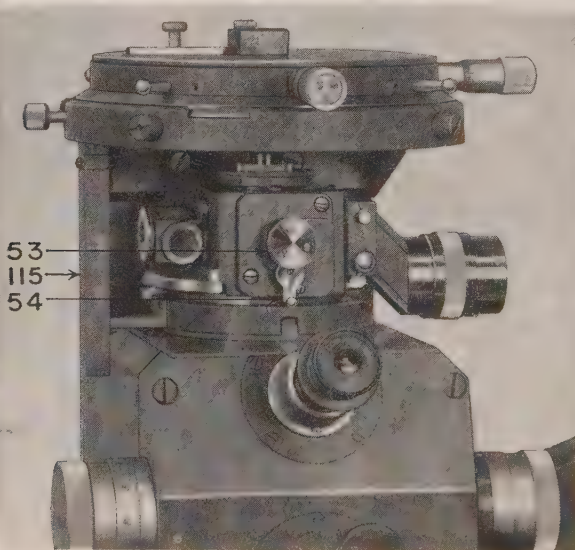
A. The Vickers' Projection Microscope by Messrs. Cooke, Troughton and Simms. (See also Fig. 15).

This instrument, designed for visual microscopical examinations and photomicrographic work, may be adapted to any of the following techniques : normal incident illumination by plane glass reflector or by metallic reflector, dark field illumination, polarized light (all these are built into the universal illuminator unit illustrated at B); phase contrast; surface profile techniques; interferometry; micro-hardness testing; and macro-examination with normal incident and oblique illumination. Provision is also made for the examination of translucent objects by transmitted light.

B. View of stage, universal illuminator unit (set for normal incident illumination) and visual eyepiece tube of the Vickers' Projection Microscope. The plunger (53) carries the glass slip reflector. A prism reflector is attached to the lever (54), but is out of action when the lever is in the position shown.

(Photographs supplied by Messrs. Cooke, Troughton and Simms Ltd.)

B



PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

scribed in a previous section may already present back and front surfaces sufficiently parallel for visual examination with the usual type of bench microscope, or may be placed face downwards on the stage of an inverted type of microscope for photomicrography.

Methods of dealing with Thin Strip, Sheet or Wire

Specimens of thin strip or sheet may be polished on the surface by attaching them to another metal or to wood by means of sealing-wax or glue. For examination of cross sections the strip may be inserted in a slot cut in a block of soft metal which is then gently squeezed on the specimen to grip it (Fig. 6). The whole block is then shaped down and ground, and the composite surface, including the strip or wire, polished and subsequently etched in the usual manner. The etching of steel, brass, copper or aluminium sheet is satisfactorily accomplished in this way, using a holder made of similar metal. Any difficulty experienced through

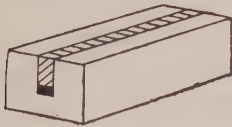


FIG. 6. Method of mounting Strip or Wire in a Metal Block.



FIG. 7. Clamp for holding Strip or Wire. (N.P.L.)

staining produced by traces of the etching medium oozing out at the junction of the strip and holder may generally be avoided by immersion of the specimen in a bath of acetone for ten minutes or more before it is dried, or by final washing with ether, which dries so rapidly that the capillary forces which cause creeping of the reagent from the cavities have no opportunity of coming into play.

As an alternative method of mounting, a clamp such as that shown in Fig. 7 may be used, and the composite face ground and polished as before. The specimen is removed for etching and returned to the holder for examination.

Wire may be mounted by inserting it vertically in a cylindrical hole punched with a pencil in plasticine, then casting round the specimen a fusible alloy such as Wood's metal (Bi 4 : Pb 2 : Sn 1 : Cd 1, m. p. 70°C). A composite section through specimen and white metal is then cut, polished and etched in the usual way.

These and various methods used in the past have now largely given place to the modern technique of embedding specimens in

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

bakelite or some other synthetic resin. Small specimens or pieces of a shape difficult to hold in preparation should be dealt with in this manner.

Protection of the Edges of a Specimen in Polishing

In certain cases, e.g. the examination of surface hardening, case hardening, decarburization, plated goods, study of fractures, etc., it is necessary to examine the structure right up to the edge of the specimen. In the case of specimens with a hardened skin this can be done sufficiently well for visual examination under the microscope by exercising care in polishing, but with other material the edges always become slightly rounded. This effect may, to a large extent, be avoided if the specimen is mounted in synthetic resin in the manner already described. This, however, may not preserve the minor irregularities of a surface, and a more satisfactory safeguard is electro-deposition. Copper, deposited first with a weak current in a cyanide bath and then with a heavier current in an acid sulphate bath, affords a suitable protection in such cases, but a nickel deposit is preferable on steel. The plated specimen is then mounted in bakelite before polishing and perfect preservation of the edge is thereby obtained.

When copper backing is used on steel and the specimen is etched in acid reagents, a film of copper is apt to form on the steel surface. Nickel is less susceptible to differential etching and does not give immersion deposits on steel. Moreover, its hardness, being comparable with that of steel, facilitates level polishing. The solution and operating conditions for a suitable nickel deposit are as follows:

Nickel sulphate ($\text{NiSO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$)	240 grams
Boric acid (H_3BO_3)	30 „
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	20 „
in 1 litre of water	

pH, 3.0–4.0. Temperature, 20° C.–30° C.

Current density, 1.5 amp. per sq. dcm.

Taper Sectioning

By sectioning the specimen at a small angle to the surface, the magnification normal to the surface to be examined is increased as the cosecant of the angle of taper, thus a taper of 6° causes a tenfold increase in the apparent thickness of a surface layer. The surface to be examined, protected by a suitable electrodeposit, is

PREPARATION OF SPECIMENS

mounted in plastic at an angle determined by placing the specimen on a wedge-shaped disc of bakelite and then mounting in the usual way. The mounted specimen is then sectioned by grinding until the region to be examined is exposed (Fig. 8). Taper grinding is useful in the examination of protective coatings, structural changes (e.g. work hardening, decarburization, etc.) which occur



FIG. 8. Method of Mounting for Taper Sectioning.

immediately below the surface, case hardened and locally hardened surfaces. It is often possible to make a series of micro-hardness tests on the inclined section through the thickness of the surface layer.

Alternative Methods of Revealing the Structure

Polishing in Relief

This effect may be produced in specimens containing a hard constituent if polishing of the surface, carried out in the ordinary way, is continued on a soft parchment or cloth pad which may be impregnated with a little of the finest rouge or calcium sulphate and washed with water at intervals.

Polish Attack

This method is carried out by very lightly polishing on a parchment pad moistened with a suitable etching agent. For steels this may be a 2 per cent. solution of ammonium nitrate in water. For copper and brass a 5 per cent. solution of 0.880 ammonia in water is used. By this method staining is avoided. There is a danger of over-emphasizing grain boundaries, but with care the method gives good results.

Electrolytic Attack

The specimen is made the anode in a solution of an electrolyte, either by suspending it by a platinum wire or holding it in pliers wired to the positive pole of a battery. Electrolytes found suitable include ammonium nitrate, very dilute acids or ammonia for copper or brasses, sodium thiosulphate for bronzes, and dilute sulphuric acid to which hydrogen peroxide has been added for nickel

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

alloys. The current used is about 0.01 amp. per sq. cm., and the time occupied does not exceed two minutes.

Electrolytic etching is frequently used as a sequel to electrolytic polishing, without changing the electrolyte, by reducing the current density.

Thermal Etching

The grain boundaries, and other features of the structure of certain metals and alloys, are revealed by heating them to a high temperature in a vacuum or in an atmosphere of an inert gas. Thus, the grain size of high-nickel alloys may be studied by heating the polished specimen at 1000° C. in hydrogen. The grain boundaries of austenite are clearly shown when a steel is heated in a vacuum or in argon for high-temperature microscopy.

Heat Tinting

The coloration of the different constituents of an alloy heated in air frequently differs considerably on account of variations in the rate at which they become covered with a film of oxide. The polished section is heated to about 120° C. on an iron plate to remove moisture, and whilst held by tongs, the warm section is very lightly rubbed on a soft piece of chamois leather. It is then placed on a layer of silver sand on an iron plate, or preferably floated in a crucible containing molten solder, and heated by a Bunsen burner. The heating of the specimen must be uniform; a temperature of 250° C. to 300° C. is suitable. Changes of colour are watched, and when the specimen shows a general purple tint it is taken by the tongs and cooled in a bath of mercury.

The method is useful in the examination of cast iron, some non-ferrous alloys such as bronzes and hard metal tools of the multi-carbide type. It is specially valuable in distinguishing certain constituents such as phosphides and carbides, but as considerable experience is required to obtain reliable results, it should only be used in conjunction with the usual methods of etching. In the examination of "hard metals", the various colours shown by different constituents facilitate identification of each type of carbide in the microscopical examination of etched sections.

CHAPTER III

THE MICROSCOPE AND METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

THE optical system of the metallurgical microscope consists of two compound lenses, one near the object (known as the objective), and the other (the ocular) at a distance of from 6 to 10 in. from the objective. The objective produces an enlarged real image of a portion of the object under examination. For visual examination, the ocular is arranged to give a further enlarged virtual image of that produced by the objective; for photomicrography the ocular is arranged to project a further enlarged real image on to the screen or plate.

Metals are opaque to ordinary light, and have therefore to be examined by reflected light. For this reason the metallurgical microscope is usually not provided with the third lens system found on good microscopes designed for other classes of work, namely, the substage condenser, which serves to control the beam of light which illuminates a transparent object.

Illumination

Proper illumination of the object is essential, otherwise the images produced by the microscope may be entirely misleading. There are two methods of illumination of metallurgical specimens, oblique and vertical (Fig. 9).

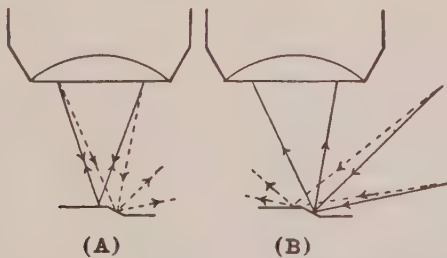


FIG. 9. Diagrams illustrating (A) Vertical and (B) Oblique Illumination.

(a) *Oblique Illumination.* The light is made to strike the surface of the object from one direction or from various directions at an angle of less than 90° . Such rays falling on a perfectly smooth surface are reflected in a direction equally inclined to the normal and

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

do not pass into the microscope tube, hence the surface appears black. Irregularities on the surface reflect light into the objective, giving bright lines or regions on a dark background.

Oblique illumination may be effected in various ways; for very low powers by ordinary daylight, or by artificial light focused on to the surface by a lens or reflected on to the specimen by a parabolic reflector fitted to the objective; for higher magnifications by a hollow cone of light of wide angle focused on to the specimen from an annular reflector or prism surrounding the objective. To study structure in relief at low magnifications it is sometimes convenient to illuminate the surface with beams of light of different colour coming from two or more directions. The symmetrical hollow cone of light is, however, more effective in illuminating all

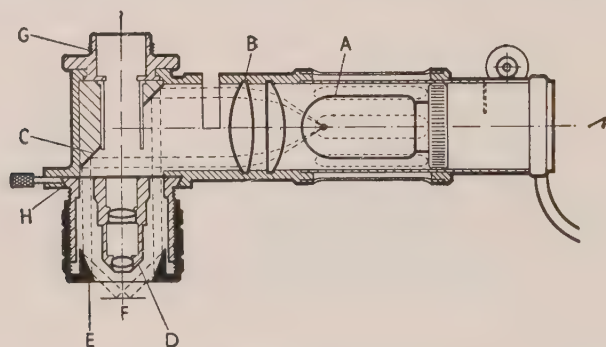


FIG. 10. Beck-Chapman Opaque Illuminator.

The mirror (C) with an aperture in the centre throws an annular ring of light on the metal reflector (E) which surrounds the object glass (D) and directs a hollow cone of light on to the specimen (F).

the contour and relief on the surface of the specimen, and is the only method available for high-power work on account of the closeness of the objective front to the specimen.

A full range of well-corrected objectives with self-contained ring illuminators by which hollow-cone dark-ground illumination is simply and very effectively obtained is now available. The construction of the reflectors is varied according to the magnifying power of the objective, so that either a larger or a smaller field of view is illuminated. One form is shown in Fig. 10.

(b) *Vertical Illumination.* Most metallurgical microscopy is carried out with this type of illumination. A cone of light is made to fall perpendicularly on the surface of the object, being reflected back into the microscope from the smooth parts of the surface, but cast astray by any irregularities. The image produced by this

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

method is, as regards light and shade, the reverse in general effect of that produced by oblique illumination.

To effect this type of illumination the cone of light travelling to and illuminating the object must traverse the same path as that reflected from it—that is, along the optic axis of the microscope. As at magnifications from 50 upwards there is not sufficient clearance between the object and the objective to permit of the insertion here of any illuminant or mirror, the incident beam of light is fed into the body tube of the microscope normal to the axis and, by a reflector or vertical illuminator (Fig. 11) placed behind

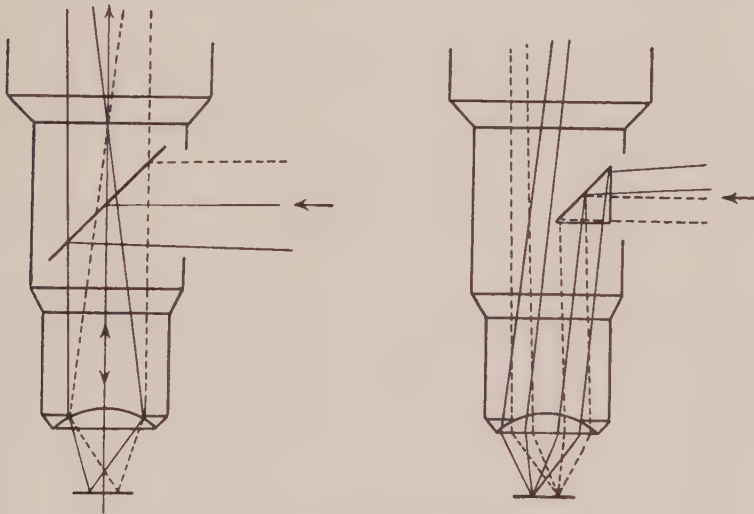


FIG. 11. Vertical Illuminators, Glass Slip and Prism.

the objective, is passed down through the objective and on to the surface of the specimen.

There are two types of vertical illuminator in general use, the prism and the glass slip type. The prism illuminator introduces an obstruction into the microscope tube which asymmetrically reduces the effective aperture of the objective with marked adverse effect on its image-forming quality. The glass slip illuminator is apt to produce more glare than the prism, thus tending to destroy contrast in the image, but this defect can be reduced by correct adjustment of the illuminating beam, and by proper selection of objectives. Under the best conditions, the glass slip illuminator gives a far more perfect image than the prism, and it should always be used for photography.

The beam of light is modified in character in passing through

the objective, but as the optical constants of the objective, its focal length and aperture and also its distance from the specimen are all fixed by the image-forming requirements, control of the illumination must be effected entirely on the beam of light passed into the body tube. For clear and accurate portrayal of structure, critical control of illumination is essential. Briefly, by critical illumination is meant the provision of an illuminating cone of light which will enable the aperture of the objective to become effective, the accurate centration of this cone, and the removal from it of all stray light which would take no part in image formation.

If the object has a perfectly smooth surface of uniform colour,

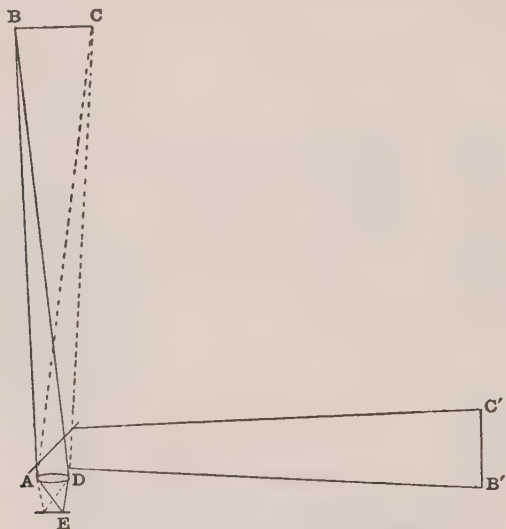


FIG. 12. Diagram illustrating Critical Illumination.

the real image produced at the focus of the ocular will consist of an even disc of light. The ideal light source is a disc of the size of this image at a distance from the objective equal to that of the image, and emitting only a pencil of rays equivalent to that included within the lines AB.CD (Fig. 12). The aperture of the objective will only be fully utilized if any point E in the specimen produces a full cone of rays, EA.ED to be brought to an equivalent image point as at B; this necessitates the presence in the illuminating beam of rays corresponding to BD and CA. These rays will be present if at B'C' there is a self-luminous disc, or its equivalent such as an illuminated ground or opal glass disc. If, however, a lens is used, the provision of the requisite bundle of rays to utilize the aperture of the objective (and these only) is

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

conditional on the light being brought sharply to a focus in the plane AD.

Under these conditions the disc of illumination corresponding to B'C' will be sharply imaged by the objective on the surface of the specimen. If, then, a diaphragm is placed at B'C' so as to reduce its size, the area of the illuminated portion of the specimen will be restricted without there being any restriction of the full cone of light through the objective to any point in the still illuminated portion of the field, i.e. a diaphragm in the plane B'C' acts purely as a field stop, without any restriction of aperture. The distance of this diaphragm from the back lens of the objective, B'A, should be equal to AB, the tube length of the microscope.

Improper control of the illuminating beam may result in restriction of the cone or pencil of rays necessary for the objective to work at its proper aperture, causing a reduction of resolving power and the production of spurious and distorted images. By the use of too wide or too strongly convergent a beam of light, rays other than those which form the image are reflected into the microscope and the image is spoiled.

Stray light, other than the true image-forming light, which passes along the microscope and is received by the ocular, whether produced by this or other causes, is spoken of as "glare."

Optical systems which fulfil the requirements for critical illumination are described in the section dealing with photomicrography, but if a separate bench microscope is used for visual work, the simple system described on p. 30 may be fitted up on some suitable support, with a light source consisting of a circle about $\frac{1}{10}$ in. diameter of ground or opal glass illuminated by a 60-watt bulb of the gas-filled type, or a bulb of the motor head-lamp type, placed close behind it.

Such a lighting system arranged alongside a bench microscope must always be kept accurately in alignment with the vertical illuminator. The microscope must not be disturbed in position, the tube may not be moved up or down, and all focusing must be done by the stage, the fine adjustment only being used to complete focusing at high powers.

These difficulties may be overcome by the use of a self-contained vertical illuminator attached to the body tube of the microscope. With such an illuminator in position the tube may be racked up and down without disturbing the centring of the lighting, and any type of microscope without a focusing stage motion becomes adaptable for metallurgical work.

An illuminator of this type supplied by Messrs. Beck is shown in Pl. 2A and Pl. 3A; it is designed so as not to be in the way of the hands whilst working, and to throw no harmful side strain on the body tube of the microscope. The illumination is accurate and can be controlled by two properly located iris diaphragms, one in contact with the ground-glass disc which serves as light source regulating the aperture, and the other acting as field stop. In the newer model of this illuminator the body tube is ventilated and permits the use of a lamp of the 15-watt, 6-volt type. This would be too intense for most direct visual work, but can be dimmed by a resistance in the circuit; it provides sufficient light for occasional photographic work under conditions of low secondary (eyepiece or camera) magnification. For regular visual observation under vertical illumination a lamp bulb of 6 volts and 0.3 amp. is adequate.

Similar vertical illuminators are now built integrally into microscopes by certain makers. A test of their efficiency is the ability to: (*a*) reduce the aperture of the objective without a resultant uneven lighting of the field, and (*b*) cut down the area of the illuminated field without restricting the aperture of the objective.

Mechanical Features of the Metallurgical Microscope

As mentioned above, metallurgical microscopes as a rule carry no substage apparatus. It is desirable, however, that they should have a small hole in the stage itself and be so designed that substage fittings may be added if at any time it becomes necessary to examine transparent objects.

The stage should be so strongly constructed as to carry specimens of considerable weight without straining from the normal, and rack and pinion traverse motions should be fitted into it. The coarse focusing of all metallurgical microscopes is effected by racking the stage itself to or from the objective, as any movement of the microscope tube throws the vertical illuminator out of alignment with the light source. The range of this stage focusing movement should be as long as possible, 4 in. is by no means too much, although more than 2 or $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. is seldom provided; the variation in thickness of specimens, as well as the focusing distances of low-power objectives, have both to be covered by this movement.

The microscope should be perfectly stable and well balanced when clamped in any position between vertical and horizontal; the surface of the stage should be large and free from projections

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

other than stage clips; even these should be removable, leaving a flat and open stage clear for the examination of large specimens.

Many objectives are computed to work with a tube length of 160 mm., and the body tube of the microscope should be sufficiently short for a vertical illuminator to be fitted without exceeding this 160 mm. overall length.

Inverted microscopes (Pl. 7A), in which the objective is mounted below the stage upon which the specimen rests face downwards, are convenient for large specimens but have the disadvantage that it is impossible to see the face of the specimen in a preliminary search for a particular field. They are rarely used except as part of a photomicrographic equipment. When work is almost continuous over a long period, eye-strain is minimized by using a binocular microscope (Pl. 7c).

Objectives for Metallurgy

All medium- and high-power dry objectives for metallurgy should be corrected to work on uncovered objects. Oil-immersion objectives for biological work are, however, suitable for metallurgy, the absence of cover glass being compensated for by the film of oil. If the objectives are to be used with a prism type of illuminator, they should be mounted so that the back lens surface is nearly flush with the objective thread, otherwise it is impossible to obtain even illumination, as the prism itself when at any distance from the back lens acts as an irregular-shaped field stop.

In making a choice between the achromatic objectives, which are partially corrected for chromatic aberration, and the apochromats, which are more fully corrected, the following points should be borne in mind.

The apochromats as a class give the more perfect resolution and central definition, but generally suffer to a somewhat greater extent than the achromats from curvature of field; in addition, they generally give rise to more glare over the image by reflections from their more numerous lens surfaces, and chiefly by pronounced reflection of the incident illuminating beam from the back lens surface, which is often relatively flat in the apochromatic objectives. If only visual work is to be undertaken, the achromats will certainly fulfil the requirements of all except the most experienced microscopist engaged in advanced research, and the expense of apochromats cannot be justified.

In selecting objectives it is better to make a photographic test as described on p. 47 than to trust to visual impressions. For

photographic work the ideal is a set of apochromatic objectives selected by an experienced photomicrographer for their comparative flatness of field and freedom from glare; these two faults which are often present in apochromats have a serious effect on the quality of photomicrographs. A range of achromats would probably give results in photographic work which are as good as, or better than, those given by a set of apochromats obtained by other than expert selection.

A selection of objectives to cover the requirements of visual and photographic work would include the following:

Achromatic; 50 mm., and 25 mm. or 16 mm.

Apochromatic or Achromatic; 12 mm. or 8 mm., 6 mm. or 4 mm., and 3 mm. or 2 mm.

It is desirable that, if possible, objectives be chosen having approximately similar tube lengths. A mixed set of lenses of the 160 to 180 mm. and 250 mm. tube-length types is inconvenient in visual work, and in photography leads to otherwise unnecessary changing of the illuminating system.

For magnifications of 1000 or over, an oil-immersion objective is used, a thin film of cedar-wood oil being introduced between the specimen and the objective. Since the working distance is small and the front lens is delicately mounted, great care has to be exercised in focusing. When the objective has been screwed into position, one or two drops of immersion oil are applied to the surface of the specimen, and one drop also to the front lens of the objective. The stage is then racked up carefully until the two oil surfaces meet, the eye applied to the microscope and the stage very slowly racked further until the specimen comes roughly into focus, the final focusing being done by the fine adjustment. If the ocular is then removed, any air bubbles trapped in the oil film will be detected by looking down the microscope tube while slightly racking the specimen to and fro across the stage. If bubbles are seen, the process must be repeated until a film free from air is obtained.

Immersion oil varies in consistency; if rather thin the film is apt to break contact, particularly when the microscope tube is horizontal; if thick, tension in the film may lift the specimen a little during focusing, and allow it subsequently to settle back, unless the stage clips are kept strong and firm. Immersion oil is a drying and gumming oil, and it should never be allowed to remain on the objective or the specimen; also, it should never be

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

used to lubricate the microscope. After use the objective may be cleaned with a soft material such as an old well-washed silk handkerchief slightly moistened with saliva (which is just sufficiently alkaline to remove the oil). The front lenses of some immersion objectives are bevelled in, others depend to a greater or less degree on balsam for fixing, and the use of solvents such as alcohol or benzene (which may be used for cleaning the specimen) is therefore dangerous. If by chance a film of oil should become hardened on the objective, the smallest possible quantity of xylene on an old silk handkerchief should be used to remove it. A very effective substitute for cedar-wood oil consists of a mixture of a paraffin with monobromonaphthalene. The mixture has the same refractive index as cedar-wood oil, viz. 1.51, but is free from the tendency to gumming.

Oculars

The ordinary Huygenian oculars corrected for use with achromatic objectives are generally marked with a series number, which should not be confused with their magnifying power.

The "compensating" oculars used with apochromatic objectives are marked with numbers indicating their magnifying power. The most useful oculars are those of low and medium magnification, such as $\times 4$ and $\times 8$. An ocular of $\times 8$ magnification will reveal clearly to a person of good eyesight all the detail resolved by most objectives, though a good objective of high aperture, used with critically controlled monochromatic illumination, may resolve detail too fine to be seen clearly except with an ocular of magnification $\times 18$ or $\times 25$.

Magnifications

The linear magnification obtained in visual examination of an object may be determined approximately from the formula

$$L = \frac{T}{f} n$$

where T is the tube length of the microscope (measured from the eye lens of the ocular to the objective thread, and including the vertical illuminator),
 f is the focal length of the objective,
 n is the magnifying power of the ocular.

The formula is applicable with sufficient accuracy for visual work to all cases where the tube length is large in relation to the focal

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

length of the objective, i.e. with a 160 mm. tube length it may be applied to objectives of 25 mm. focus and under.

Resolving Power

Increased magnification without gain in resolving power is merely equivalent to the enlargement of a negative taken at smaller magnification by the same objective. The resolving power of an objective, expressed as the minimum distance, δ , between two lines which can be resolved, is usually given by the formula:

$$\delta = \frac{1}{2}\lambda/\text{N.A.} = \frac{1}{2}\lambda/\mu \sin \alpha.$$

Where λ = the wave length of the light used;

N.A. = the numerical aperture of the objective;

α = one-half of the angular aperture, or apex angle of the cone of light entering the objective; and

μ = the refractive index of the medium between objective and specimen.

This equation refers to an object with a periodic structure like that of an optical grating: a different numerical coefficient of λ is applicable to the resolution of particles. It is not quantitatively applicable to metallographic structures, but correctly indicates that increased resolving power (diminution of δ) may be obtained by the use of an objective of high angular aperture, an immersion medium of high refractive index, and light of the shortest possible wave length.

Photomicrography

For the purpose of obtaining photographs of the structures, the ocular of the microscope is made to serve as the lens of an ordinary bellows camera. Before the procedure followed in photomicrography is dealt with, the essential conditions which should govern methods of illumination and choice of equipment will be considered.

Illumination

(1) A simple system which fulfils the requirements for critical illumination is shown in Fig. 13, where A represents the back lens of the objective, B the field lens, a condenser in a position



FIG. 13. Simple Illuminating System for Photomicrography.

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

corresponding to the plane B'C' in Fig. 12 and C a small source of light. For simplicity the vertical-illuminator is omitted.

The distance AB is equal to the tube length of the microscope, and the objective A will project a sharp image of the lens disc B on to the surface of the specimen. The lens B is chosen of such focal length that, when it is placed at tube-length distance from the objective A, and when the position of the illuminant C is suitably adjusted, it is possible to obtain a sharp image of C, of such a size as just, and only just, to fill the back lens A of the objective. If a lens of $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. focus be used at B, then the image produced at A (using a tube length and distance AB of about 160 mm.) will be of just about the correct size to fill the back lens of a 2 mm. objective, with the 100 c.p. Pointolite as light source. When so adjusted, the system serves well for quite a range of work, the full aperture of the 2 mm. objective being used in order to obtain maximum resolution, whilst the medium power dry objectives (with back lenses as a rule slightly larger than the 2 mm.) have about two-thirds or three-quarters of their apertures filled.

An iris fitted close to B acts purely as a field stop, and may always be adjusted so as to illuminate only the area on the specimen being photographed, thus reducing glare over the image without in any degree affecting the working aperture of the objective.

The above illuminating system is very simple and efficient, and as the number of optical components is reduced to a minimum, difficulties of centring and of securing alignment are almost eliminated; it may be used for the full range from the highest powers, down to work with a 25 mm. objective. (For powers below this, a different method of illumination is advised, to be described later.) The system just described provides no means of controlling the working apertures of the objectives. Such a control is very liable to abuse, apertures being restricted in order to obtain flatness of field to such an extent as materially to impair resolution and general quality of image. The system may therefore be regarded as a safe one, and the beginner in photomicrography is advised to fit it up if possible after the manner shown in Pl. 2D, and with this apparatus in use, following the procedure described on pp. 42 to 49 to overcome most of the technicalities of micrography, such as adjustments of the optical system, elimination of glare, choice of photographic materials, etc. In this connection, a few of the difficulties which may be experienced, with possible causes and remedies, are given on the following page. At

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

DIFFICULTIES WHICH MAY BE EXPERIENCED BY THE BEGINNER IN PHOTOMICROGRAPHY WITH POSSIBLE CAUSES AND REMEDIES

Defect.	Cause.	Remedy.
Image on screen, or on developed plate, irregularly illuminated.	Condenser system not properly adjusted, or illuminant out of true alignment with it, or, Field lens not set at tube-length distance.	With illuminating system described on p. 33 (Fig. 14) field lens must be completely filled with light, and light must be brought to a sharp focus on it. If an arc lamp is used, care should be taken that the direct light from the crater, and not that from the wavering flame above it, is utilized. With the Pointolite, the creep of the electrode inside the bulb on heating must be allowed for before centring the light. Expose successive strips of a plate at intervals and develop, noting which strip received correct exposure.
Negative too thin or too dense, flat and lacking in contrast.	Incorrect exposure, or faulty photographic technique. Glare from unsuitable objective will reduce contrast.	Rotate ocular to determine whether trouble is there or on field lens. Carefully examine camera and dark slides for defects.
Small light patches (printing dark) on negative.	Dust, either on field lens or on ocular, or air bubbles in glass of field lens.	
Dark blurred patches (printing light) on negative.	Stray light entering the camera, probably at connection between camera and microscope.	Ease connection between microscope and camera.
Image sharp on screen, but negative out of focus and blurred.	Inadequate water cooling of beam from an arc lamp. Vibration transmitted from camera to microscope in changing screen for dark slide. Fine adjustment creeping during exposure.	Slides of fine adjustment motion should be cleaned and re-lubricated, using finest clock oil. Fine focusing at high magnifications should be completed by motion in direction against the spring. Strong stage springs are necessary with immersion objectives to overcome tension in oil film. Specimens may sag in a plasticine mounting when on a vertical stage. A suitable light filter must be used.
Image sharp in centre of negative, blurred all round; or sharp around, blurred in centre.	Specimen moved on stage during exposure.	Remount. Confirm source of trouble if necessary by focusing true flat plate.
Sharpness of negative falls off uniformly from one side of plate to the other.	Blue rays not cut off, with achromatic objectives. Incorrect focusing, or creeping of fine adjustment, or curvature of field of objective.	Carefully re-centre, and if any re-centring of field is then required, again check aperture lighting after making it.
An area on the screen which cannot be brought into really satisfactory sharp focus, to one side of the centre of the field (when using high-power objectives).	Specimen not mounted dead flat. The illumination of the objective aperture will be found to be eccentric.	Re-prepare specimen. Use full aperture of objective. Scratches are more readily noticed if, whilst viewing the focusing screen, the stage is slightly racked across to cause the field to move.
Fine scratches or other defects on specimen showing prominently on negative.	Such defects usually prominent in negative, although scarcely noticeable when viewing the screen. Reducing the aperture of objective always accentuates such markings.	Re-oil and re-focus.
General imperfect definition, with immersion objective.	Air bubbles in oil film.	Add oil and re-focus.
No image on plate, but general fogging (when using immersion objective).	Film of oil broken during or just before exposure.	

a later stage the choice of objectives by photographic tests, correction of tube-length settings and other delicate operations may be carried out, preferably with the illuminating system now to be described.

(2) A more elaborate illuminating system for photographic work which permits aperture control is shown in Fig. 14. Here A

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

is the back lens of the objective, B the field lens, C the illuminant and D an additional condenser lens. The distance AB must again be tube-length distance, whilst BD may conveniently be about 20 in. The lens B now focuses a sharp image of lens D on to A, and,



FIG. 14. A More Elaborate System giving Independent Control of Aperture and Field.

as the iris in D is adjusted, the size of the illuminated disc at A, and therefore the working aperture of the objective, may be controlled.

The lens B must now be of $5-5\frac{1}{4}$ in. focus (for use with objectives corrected for 160 mm. tube length). The objective A will as before focus a sharp image of lens B and its iris on to the specimen, so that it becomes necessary for the lens B to be quite evenly illuminated, and if this is to be done without wastage of light, the lens D must focus a sharp image of C on to the lens B, of size such as just to cover the full aperture of B (this needs to be about $\frac{7}{8}$ in. diameter).

The brilliance of illumination obtainable is largely dependent on lens D; its iris diaphragm will, in general, be open to an extent governed by the diameter of the back lens of the objective in use; its focal length should be short enough to cause it to be quite close to the bulb of the Pointolite when at its proper setting to focus the light on B, so as to pick up a cone of rays of as wide an angle as possible. Unless the lens be aplanatic, a considerable proportion of the light it transmits will not be concentrated on B, but spread over a surrounding halo. In a compound condenser lens, a high aplanatic correction may be obtained, but with some loss of transparency, owing to overall thickness of glass and internal surfaces. Attention should be given to the choice of this lens, as this is a point in the system where light may be lost, necessitating the substitution of an arc lamp with its irregularities for the Pointolite or mercury vapour lamp.

Lens B may be used mounted in a photographic shutter of the between-lens type having an iris opening to $\frac{7}{8}$ in. or more, and may be of the rectilinear or aplanatic type. The shutter is used for making the exposures.

The above illuminating system gives completely independent control of size of illuminated field and of working aperture. Modifications of it are to be found in some metallographic outfits,

additional lenses being sometimes introduced to shorten the overall length of the system, or to bring the aperture control close to the microscope, the added convenience being obtained at the expense of some intensity of illumination.

Any such system should give this independent control, i.e. the aperture of the objective should be reducible without causing any unevenness of illumination over the field, and the field should be reducible to quite a small disc (as is desirable when using high-power oculars), without in any way affecting the working aperture of the objective.

A diaphragm in the illuminating system at about 1 in. or $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. from the back lens of the objective would, if reduced sufficiently, act imperfectly as an aperture control, but it would also then be acting as an imperfect field stop, leaving the centre of the field bright whilst darkening the borders of the image. Vertical illuminators which have a small iris fitted to the side of the illuminator box are frequently met with, but the iris on these should not be used; the system of aperture control above described is much to be preferred.

An illuminating bench incorporating this system and giving complete control of the illumination of the specimen in conjunction with the vertical illuminator of the microscope is supplied by Messrs. Beck (Pl. 3c).

The illuminating system just described may be used for micrographs taken with vertical illumination, from magnifications of 50, using a 25 mm. objective, to the highest powers, without any variation or adjustment being required beyond manipulation of the two iris diaphragms.

With objectives of the 250 mm. tube-length class, lens B would require to be of rather longer focus, about $6\frac{1}{2}$ in., and a corresponding slight shift backwards in the positions of D and C might be required; hence the desirability of using a set of objectives of fairly uniform tube length.

Illuminants

Various illuminants are available for photomicrography, and with a number of outfits different types are interchangeable.

(a) *Pointolite*. This is available as the 100-candle-power model working from direct current, or the 150-c.p. model for alternating current. The 100-c.p. model has somewhat the higher intrinsic intensity, and it is adequate for work at the highest powers under vertical illumination by a glass slip reflector, and with a colour

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

screen in use to give a first approximation to monochromatizing the light and so aiding sharpness of definition. Its spectrum, however, is of the nature of a continuous one, and so a close approach to monochromatic light can be obtained only by the use of heavy filters, and a correspondingly severe diminution in intensity.

(b) *High-pressure Mercury Vapour Lamp*. This lamp has come into quite general use during recent years. It has a line spectrum which allows, with less dense filters, the selection of monochromatic light of either deep blue, green or orange colour. Its intensity is amply adequate in either of the above three bands for photography under vertical illumination.

(c) *Carbon Arc Lamp*. The adoption of other methods of illumination, such as oblique lighting, polarized light, etc., which tend to give images of very low general light intensity, has led to the reintroduction of the arc lamp in improved forms with automatic feed to the carbons. Whilst automatic control of arc lamps has been greatly improved, slight flicker and wandering of the arc crater still remain to cause unsteadiness of illumination, either over the field or at the objective aperture. Unsteady illumination at the objective aperture has an effect similar to that of uncentred lighting. Though it is less obvious than uneven field lighting, it impairs resolution. For satisfactory critical vertical illumination an absolutely steady light source is most desirable, and whilst a carbon arc may be supplied for use with dark-ground illuminators, an alternative steady source, such as the Pointolite or the high-pressure mercury arc, should be available for direct illumination and critical high-power work.

(d) *Xenon Arc Lamp*. For photography in colours the band spectrum emission of the mercury vapour lamp is unsuitable. For such purposes, a xenon arc lamp is now available which is of higher intrinsic brilliance than the tungsten electrode lamp.

Colour Screens

With a glass slip illuminator, well-chosen objectives and properly controlled illumination, there should be quite sufficient contrast in the image for photographic purposes, and it should seldom be necessary to select colour filters for the purpose of increasing contrast; rather, in some cases, it may be desirable to reduce contrast. Thus, copper alloys, when etched to show their grain structure with some grains darkened, are apt to give excessive contrast, and for these a deep yellow or red filter may advantageously be used.

With achromatic objectives a colour screen which will filter blue and blue-violet rays from the light must be used, otherwise sharp pictures are not obtainable. For general work with these or with apochromats, a yellow-green filter is very suitable, giving a tone rendering of any colour present in the specimen approximating to that seen visually in the light of a metal filament lamp. Some apochromats will give sharp photographs without any colour filter when used with a Pointolite, whilst others require the removal of the blue-violet, a light yellow filter being sufficient. A blue-green filter may be used to obtain the increased resolving power of the shorter wave-length light. As blue-green light is of rather low visual intensity, the uncertainty of focusing by it may introduce some error, and it may be found advisable to focus by the unscreened light when working on dark subjects. With a well-corrected apochromat it should then be possible to insert the blue-green filter without causing any change of focus. It is, however, desirable to check this and, if necessary, to make the final adjustment by the aid of a focusing magnifier on a clear glass screen with the filter in position.

The appropriate filters for use with the mercury lamp are referred to on Pl. 10. Both achromats and apochromats yield their sharpest definition and highest resolution when used with the deep-blue radiation from this source, but the correct tube-length setting will in most cases be found to be 10 or 15 mm. shorter than the normal setting, and focusing must be done in the blue light.

Apparatus for Photomicrography

This may be divided roughly into two classes:

- (a) The more elaborate outfits (Metallographs), comprising an inverted microscope, and fitted with reflecting prisms or mirrors so that the illuminating train, microscope body, and camera may all be mounted in easily accessible and comfortable working positions;
- (b) types in which a microscope in the normal, upright position is surmounted by a camera, the whole being built into a rigid construction of combined microscope stand and camera support; and
- (c) the simpler type in which an ordinary microscope, as used for visual work, is employed.

(a) The first type of apparatus is generally very convenient for medium- and high-power work, and when a large amount of

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

work, from 50 diameters upwards, has to be done, the comfort and speed in working which it furnishes are appreciable. The provision for illumination at very low powers is efficient in several of the newer outfits, but some upsetting of the normal assembly of apparatus is inevitable, and maintenance of a separate outfit, designed specially for low-power work, might in some instances be worth consideration.

In selecting an outfit of this type, with the knowledge that most of the work will be done under vertical illumination, a choice may be possible between equipments which are each capable of satisfactory performance but which vary considerably in detail of design. The simpler type of equipment may have the various lenses and diaphragms of its illuminating train separately mounted, whilst a more pretentious outfit may have several of these items built into one boxed unit, together with the vertical illuminating reflector, on the microscope body. This latter arrangement is attractive when the instrument is to be used by others than an experienced microscopist, but should the centration of any component become disturbed by jarring or vibration, even his skill and patience may be taxed and considerable delay, and possibly expense, may be caused before the defect is remedied. On the other hand, with a little study and experience the centration of a few separately mounted lenses and diaphragms fitted with adjustments can be effected in a few minutes. Lenses and reflecting surfaces should be accessible for cleaning and small parts which are removed for this purpose should be so mounted as to ensure accurate replacement. A mirror introduced between the ocular and the camera screen allows the overall length or height of the outfit to be reduced to produce a compact assembly which can be built to be very rigid. Any irregularity on such a mirror will, however, impair the image locally; whilst a number of minor irregularities or a film of dust will produce a general deterioration. There still remains the problem of obtaining a mirror surface, perfect and of sufficient area yet robust enough to withstand cleaning.

A delicate and reliable fine adjustment is essential: in general, the smaller the weight of the parts set in motion by the fine adjustment the more sensitive it will be and the longer life it will give. Objectives to be used with some outfits need to be specially corrected in accordance with the considerably increased effective tube length of the microscope; as a consequence only the one maker's objectives may be available, and this imposes an undesir-

able limitation of choice. To obtain the best results, use of a steady source of light such as the Pointolite or high-pressure mercury lamp should be permissible, though an arc lamp as an alternative is desirable if dark-ground illumination is to be employed. Elaboration of the optical system by reflecting prisms and mirrors may so reduce the intensity of the image as to make illumination by Pointolite inadequate and compel the use of an arc lamp.

An image with an extensive flat field, obtained by reducing the working aperture of the objective and demonstrated under the powerful illumination of an arc lamp, though fascinating to an inexperienced observer, may be highly imperfect. The illuminating system should admit of independent control of field and aperture lighting and should enable the back lenses of the objectives to be properly filled with light. The optical equipment is, or should be, a matter of separate choice and, if best results are to be obtained from the selected objectives, means to vary the tube length, and to focus the lighting accordingly, must be provided.

Equipment designed in the Research Department, Woolwich,* to incorporate these features, and made by Messrs. Beck, is shown in Pl. 5. The illuminating train, which can provide critical illumination on metal specimens over a range of magnifications from 4 to 2500 diameters, is carried on a bar which may be brought into line with the usual vertical illuminator or with transparent reflectors fitted to the fronts of the micro-anastigmats used for low-power work in accordance with the principles described in Chapter IV. The illuminating train may also be raised still higher when a focusing substage and mirror are fitted for the micrography of transparent materials. Each interchangeable condenser is mounted so that it may be removed and replaced with no disturbance of its centration. The camera is of the reflex type with variable extension. The image is first thrown by the reflex mirror in the camera on to the ground-glass screen which faces the operator when he is seated beside the instrument. When the field has been chosen the mirror is swung out of position, and the final focusing and exposure are carried out at the back of the camera. Provision is made for the use of oblique illumination and polarized light. The source of light usually employed is the high-pressure mercury lamp.

(b) Inverted microscopes with a horizontal camera are obtainable from the principal microscope makers, but most modern equipments are arranged for vertical projection of the image.

* *Journ. Royal Micros. Soc.*, 1935, vol. 55, p. 79.

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

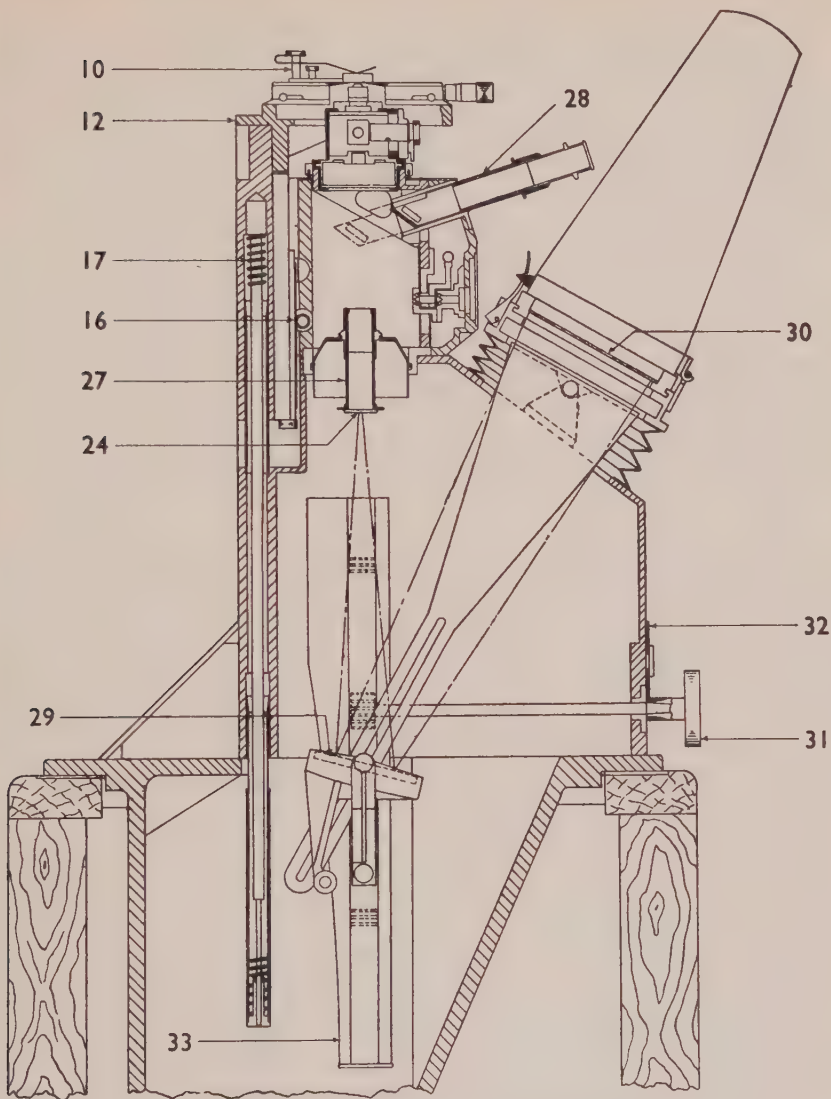


FIG. 15. Section of Vickers Projection Microscope.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 24 Projection eyepiece. | 30 Projection screen. |
| 27 Tube length slide adjustment. | 31 Projection distance control. |
| 28 Visual eyepiece tube. | 32 Projection distance scale. |
| 29 Mirror. | 33 Mirror control cam. |

An outfit by Messrs. Beck (the No. 50 Universal Microscope) is of the vertical camera type. With this apparatus there is a choice of interchangeable illuminants and the illuminating system is in accordance with that shown in Fig. 14. The microscope provides means for the use of special techniques (polarized light, phase contrast, etc.) and apparatus for micro-hardness testing can be

fitted if required. Equipment for work at low powers (below $\times 12$) is, however, not provided. An alternative outfit is available to meet this need. The new model of the Leitz "Panphot" metallographic microscope also has a vertical camera; and, with this outfit, equipment for low-power work ($\times 1$ to $\times 10$) is incorporated by the use of a special object stage, a micro-ring illuminator and photographic lenses of various focal lengths.

Both of these outfits have a reflecting mirror in the camera body whereby, for the purposes of comfortable study of structures and selection of field, the image may be deflected on to a vertical ground-glass screen facing the operator. When the photograph is to be taken, however, the deflecting mirror is turned out of the path of the image-forming rays and the photographic plate, inserted at the end of the camera, receives the image direct from the ocular.

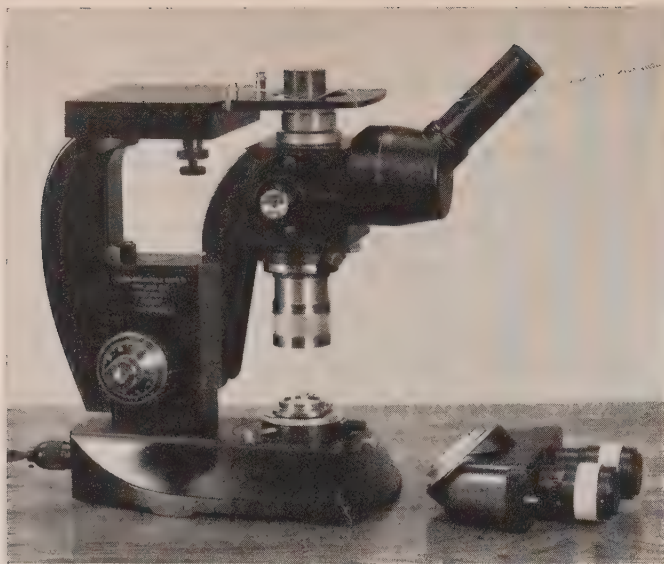
For stability and convenience of manipulation the Vickers projection microscope (Pl. 6 and Fig. 15) offers many advantages; it is notable for its compactness and rigidity. It is a microscope of the inverted type with the eyepiece for projection placed vertically below the objective, the image beam from the ocular being reflected upwards by a mirror and focused on to an inclined screen. The camera length can be altered by raising or lowering the mirror, and with this motion the tilt of the mirror is controlled so as to keep the image centralized on the screen. The microscope is designed for use with objectives corrected for a tube length of 250 mm. and a range of these is supplied by the makers of the outfit. A corrector lens is supplied to make possible the use of objectives corrected for a tube length of 160 mm. In the latest models the mirror in the camera is of surface-aluminized plate glass. The outfit has a good range of equipment for low-power metallography, and there is interchangeable lighting (clockwork-fed arc, Pointolite and mercury vapour lamps). The necessary adaptations for dark-field micrography, polarized light and phase-contrast work are available. Provision is also made for microhardness testing.

(c) The simpler type of outfit is cheaper, and where total expenditure is limited, allows of a more extensive or high-grade optical equipment being obtained. The apparatus which has been used for the production of many of the micrographs reproduced in this book is shown in Pl. 2D and Pl. 4. The camera is a whole-plate square bellows, sliding on four tubular steel supports. There is no long-distance focusing adjustment, the milled head on the micro-

PLATES

7-9

Plate 7



A

- A. Inverted Metallurgical Microscope by Messrs. Cooke, Troughton and Simms.

The fine focusing movement is applied to the objective and its support only : the coarse movement actuates the limb upon which the mechanical stage is mounted.

- B. 35 mm. Photomicrographic Camera by Messrs. Beck, designed to fit over the eyepiece of the Beck monocular microscope or by adaptation to any other standard microscope. It accommodates film sufficient for forty exposures and observations of the specimen can be made up to and during exposure.

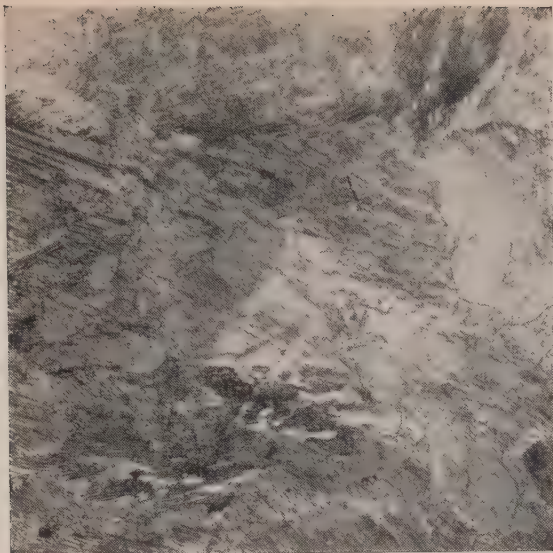
- C. Binocular Metallurgical Microscope by Messrs. W. Watson & Sons Ltd., fitted with triple rotating nosepiece and Watson vertical illuminator.



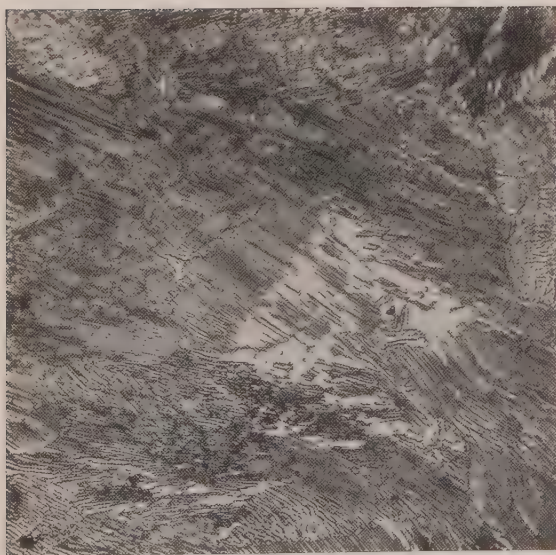
B



C



A



B

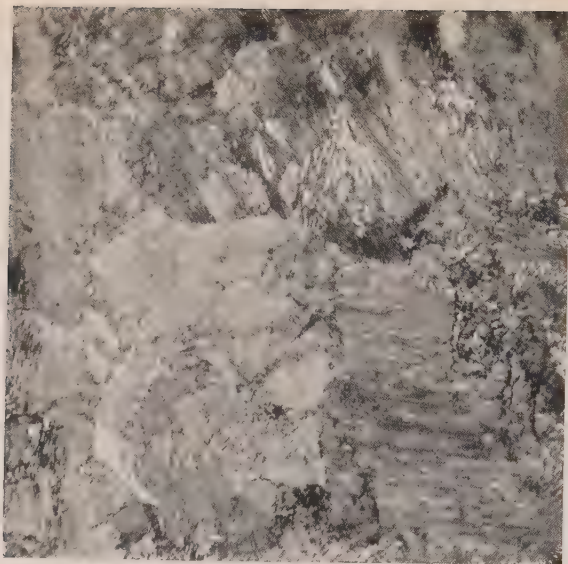
A and B. Lamellar pearlite and ferrite.

4 mm. Apochromat.

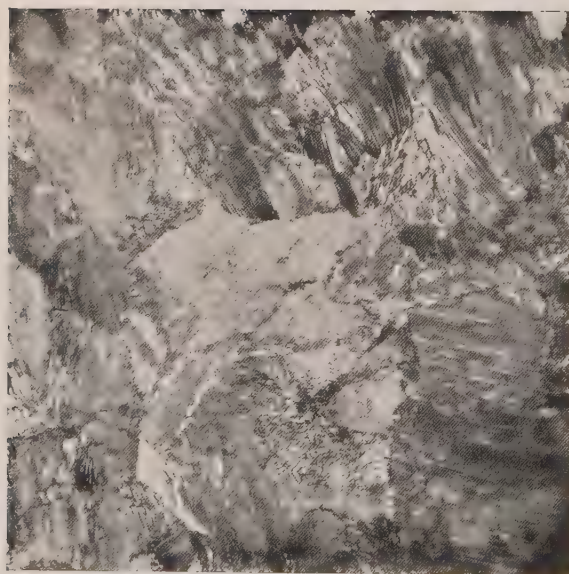
× 500.

Micrographs showing the importance of the tube-length correction, A being obtained with a tube length of 180 mm. (makers' setting) and B with tube length of 200 mm.

Plate 9



A. 3 mm. Apochromat. N.A. 1.30.



B. 2 mm. Apochromat. N.A. 1.30.

A and B. Fine lamellar and sorbitic pearlite.

× 1000.

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

scope being within reach. The bench, and the block on which the microscope rests, are both very rigid, the latter being built of thick steel plates. The outfit is stable and relatively immune from vibration owing chiefly to this substantial stand for the microscope. The lenses used in the condenser train are mounted on saddle stands having a small cross-wise centring adjustment, which, together with the sliding pillar of the stand, permits accurate centration of each lens.

The only novel feature of the apparatus is the V bar on which the condenser train is mounted. This may be raised or lowered by a worm gear operating underneath the table, and so may be brought into alignment with the vertical illuminator at any position of the microscope body tube—a very useful feature in low-power work, when the body tube needs to be racked up to its highest position to provide enough focusing distance for low-power objectives.

The outfit is conveniently adaptable to the changes in the illuminating train required for very low-power work, to tube-length adjustments, or to whatever variations in equipment or practice may be required. Continuous and rapid work with the vertical camera set up in this manner is tiring; but where a high standard of work is the prime consideration, an outfit of this type may be adopted with confidence.

Vertical photomicrographic eyepiece cameras, for clamping to the drawtube of the microscope and use with a projection eyepiece, are obtainable. Messrs. Beck supply one with a visual eyepiece fitted at a convenient angle so that observations can be made up to the moment of exposure. Mention may also be made of the 35 mm. photomicrographic camera (Pl. 7B), which will take enough film for forty exposures. In this, also, observations can be made up to and during exposure. Such a camera should prove useful in recording a series of changes as, for example, in the appearance of surface films.

Oculars for Photomicrography

The "Projection" oculars are specially computed for photographic work and may be used with either achromatic or apochromatic objectives. They are generally made with a low magnifying power (indicated by a number with which they are marked), and they therefore require a rather long camera extension, involving the use of a long-distance focusing adjustment with its uncertainties. The most effective position of the upper lens of the

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

projection ocular depends on its distance from the screen on which the image is projected, and is indicated on a tape-measure supplied with the ocular. The lens is then adjusted by screwing in or out until the arrow it bears coincides with the required position on a graduated dial.

In practice excellent results are obtainable by the use of Huygenian or of compensating oculars, of moderate magnifying power, with achromatic or apochromatic objectives respectively; the fine focusing adjustment of the microscope is then within reach. A range of oculars from $\times 4$ to $\times 10$ should be available in both Huygenian and compensating types, with, in addition, one or two compensating oculars of higher magnification.

The additional curvature of field introduced by oculars is quite negligible, i.e. all the curvature shown on the camera screen may be attributed to curvature in the primary image given by the objective. Recently a number of oculars have been placed on the market in which an attempt has been made to compensate for the curved field of the objective; with some of these the central definition has been impaired.

Testing of the Apparatus and Optical Equipment

The correct assembly and adjustment of the outfit should be checked by making a number of tests, some of which may afterwards occasionally be repeated. The exact procedure in testing and in operation will vary to some extent with the type of apparatus employed, but the following notes may be regarded as directly applicable to the simpler type of outfit just described.

A specimen showing lamellar pearlite, rather lightly etched and very carefully levelled in plasticine on a glass slip, may be placed on the stage and the light switched on. If a Pointolite is in use, two or three minutes should be allowed for the electrode inside the bulb to come to rest, and then an examination made to see that the bulb is so turned that the glowing electrode is as near as possible to the condenser lens without either of the wire supports in the bulb being in the path of the light. The various condenser lenses in the illuminating train must be centred by measurement (as accurately as possible to the same height), and then the Pointolite adjusted in position in its lamp house so as to project a beam centrally through the system. A medium-power objective (16 mm.), and low-power ocular having been fitted, a dark colour screen is placed in the screen holder so that the eye may not be damaged by too bright a light, and the specimen brought into view by focus-

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

ing; the glass slip of the illuminator may need adjustment. Adjustments to the iris diaphragms and to the positions of the lenses in the illuminating train may now be made in accordance with conditions already laid down; the field lens must be quite evenly filled with light, there should be a sharp image of the glowing Pointolite electrode thrown on the mount holding the field lens and slightly overlapping the lens itself in size; light must also be brought to a focus by the field lens in the plane of the back lens of the objective. The ocular should be removed and the back lens of the objective inspected for centrality of lighting (a small micrometer adjustment to the position of the field lens is useful for this centration), then the eyepiece replaced, the field stop reduced and the centrality of the field lighting adjusted by movement of the glass slip of the vertical illuminator. After this has been done, the centration of aperture lighting may require a further slight readjustment.

After readjustment of the aperture control (when the illuminating system permits) so that about two-thirds to three-quarters of the back lens of the objective is filled with light, the ocular may be replaced and the field brought into focus on the camera screen. With the field iris partly closed, the field lens should now be moved to and fro until the image of its iris is in focus on the screen along with that of the specimen; if the focal length of the field lens has been correctly chosen, only very slight, if any, adjustment from the previous setting to give sharp light focus on the back of the objective should be required.

The image on the screen should be examined for stationary black specks which do not move when the specimen is racked across the stage. The source of any such specks will be found either on the ocular or on the field lens; the joint of the camera should be eased away a little and the ocular rotated. If the specks move, the ocular must be taken to pieces and cleaned; if they remain stationary, the field lens should be examined for dust or for tiny air bubbles in the glass of its lenses; if any defects are sufficiently prominent to remain visible on the screen with a very slight mis-setting of the field lens, the lens must be changed for another free from air bubbles.

The objective may now be changed to a 4 mm., the specimen focused and the field iris opened until the full field of the ocular is in view on the screen. After some one point on the periphery of the field has been focused carefully, the whole rim of the field should be examined for evenness of focus. Any irregularity will be due either to the specimen not being mounted flat, or to the

microscope stage being out of true. If there is trouble of this kind, a small flat steel plate about $3 \times 1 \times \frac{1}{8}$ in., and of perfectly uniform thickness, may be used as a test plate; one surface should have fine emery scratches over it and these are brought to a focus on the screen. Any asymmetry of focus must now be due to the stage itself. The test should be repeated with a weight of four or six ounces, in addition to the test plate, resting on the stage. Irregularity of focus on the screen is not likely to be due to misalignment of the camera, as slight displacement there is without noticeable effect on the focus.

The pearlitic specimen should now be focused by the 4 mm. objective, the centre of the field this time being brought into sharp focus, and the centrality of the illumination over the back lens of the objective should be checked by inspection. Whilst some one point in the image is observed, the fine adjustment should be turned to and fro so as to run through the focus. Provided the specimen is accurately level and normal to the microscope axis and the illumination central, any appreciable lateral shift of the image whilst running through the focus indicates lateral shift of the objective and must be remedied by the microscope-maker.

After re-focusing the centre of field the instrument may be left for ten minutes or more; if there is any shift in the focus this is due to creep, and must be corrected. Long-distance fine focusing adjustments are notorious for this trouble, but inadequate water-cooling of the beam of light from a powerful arc lamp may cause a similar effect.

The operations of exposing a plate (i.e. removing the ground-glass screen, fitting a dark slide and drawing its shutter) should be gone through to determine whether they cause a disturbance of the focus. Such disturbance is most likely to be caused by direct transmittance of vibration from the camera to the microscope itself; direct rigid contact between the camera and the microscope should be avoided if possible.

Magnifications

The camera extensions required for the various magnifications may next be determined. A stage micrometer scale engraved on invar is brought into focus with each objective in turn and the camera extension adjusted and oculars selected so that the appropriate magnification on the screen is obtained in each case. Care must be taken that the prescribed tube length is employed for each objective in turn.

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

By the use of objectives working with tube lengths of 160–200 mm., the magnifications given below will all be obtainable with an extension from ocular to screen of between 25 and 45 cm.

Magnification .	50	100	250	500	1000
Objective .	25 mm.	16 mm.	8 mm.	4 mm.	2 mm.
Ocular .	× 4	× 7	× 7	× 7	× 7

Standard magnifications such as those given above should be used.

Routine Procedure in Photographing a Structure

The specimen having been mounted on the microscope and the light turned on, the image is focused on the screen, which is set to the proper distance to obtain the magnification desired with the objective and ocular selected. With the field iris wide open a check may be made of the level mounting of the specimen as already described, after which the field iris is closed until the illuminated circle on the screen is only slightly larger than necessary to cover the plate to be used; this will be found to reduce glare on the image and give better contrast in the photograph.

With the aid of a focusing magnifier, the image of the field selected is brought to a sharp focus at a point midway between the centre and the corner of the rectangle to be photographed. The focusing should always be completed by a motion which is against the spring of the fine adjustment in order to minimize any danger of creep. A small cover-glass should be cemented to the ground side of the focusing screen by a little balsam or immersion oil at the above-mentioned point of critical focus; it will allow the image to be picked up more brightly by a focusing magnifier.

Exposure

Provided that a steady light source such as the Pointolite is used, it will be found that exposures can, to quite a considerable extent, be standardized.

A simple change of objective from low to high power will have little effect on the intensity of illumination on the screen. Exposure required will vary as the square of the ocular power and as the square of the camera extension. In a case of magnifications of 100 and 500 obtained as follows:

× 100	16 mm. objective	× 7 ocular	Camera 24 cm
× 500	4 mm. ,,	× 6 ,,	" 40 "

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

the relative exposure at $\times 500$ will be:

$$\left(\frac{40 \times 6}{24 \times 7}\right)^2 = 2.04, \text{ or twice, approximately.}$$

The aperture-controlling diaphragm may be calibrated, numbers 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, being given to a series of apertures whose diameters are in the ratio 4, 2.8, 2, 1.4, 1, and so arranged that the middle number of the range is applied to the aperture most commonly to be used, namely, that which will two-thirds to three-quarters fill the back of the medium-power objectives. Each step in aperture number will represent a halving of the exposure, and if that required with a given plate and colour filter and a specimen of average character be determined at $\times 100$ and taken as standard, a table may be drawn up as below:

Magnification	Objective.	Ocular.	Camera extension.	Exposure with aperture diaphragm :				
				1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
$\times 100$	16 mm.	$\times 7$	24 cm.	4	2	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
$\times 500$	4 "	$\times 6$	40 "	8	4	2	1	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\times 1000$	3 "	$\times 14$	30 "	24	12	6	3	1.5

The relative exposures for various colour filters and plates may be determined, and their factors, combined with the above, will give a close estimate of exposure, the one uncertain factor being the reflecting power of the specimen.

Test exposures may be made by exposing plates in strips, withdrawing the shutter of the dark slide an inch or so at a time, and if a record of the results be kept, the exposure problem should soon be mastered.

Photographic Materials

For nearly all subjects, plates of the "screened chromatic" type (some makes of which are much faster to yellow-green light than others, although of similar speed to daylight) should give ample contrast. Occasionally a flat subject, or one showing fine dark lines on a brilliant ground, may require a more contrasty plate, but really hard "Process" plates should not be required. In the absence of red coloration, panchromatic plates are unnecessary. For use with monochromatic blue light (which may be obtained from the mercury vapour lamp) a plate with an emulsion of moderate speed and contrast if obtainable undyed may give some

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

appreciable gain of speed over the usual orthochromatized type. The relative exposures for the various grades of plates, used in conjunction with the different colour screens, must be determined by tests.

Photographic Tests of Objectives

In the design of any micro-objective, flatness of field is obtainable only by some sacrifice of central definition. A compromise has therefore to be effected, and in the case of apochromats the computer strives as a rule to meet the requirements of the pure research worker by giving the best possible central definition. Such fine definition is very easily destroyed by mal-adjustment of lighting conditions or by using the objective with even a slightly inaccurate tube-length setting; it follows that the utmost care is required if the best selection is to be made among apochromatic, or the higher power achromatic objectives.

With suitable oculars and the camera arranged to give magnifications with the various objectives in accordance with the table on p. 45, a sharp field should be obtainable over a $2\frac{1}{2}$ –3 in. circle. Any reasonably good objective, except perhaps a 2 mm., should give this without undue restriction of aperture; a lens with a more curved field can scarcely be regarded as suitable for general photomicrographic work, as exquisite central definition does not overcome the bad appearance of blurred edges. The back lens of the objectives should be kept regularly under observation in the course of test for their selection, and at least two-thirds to three-quarters of their apertures filled, and the lighting carefully centred.

A specimen showing fine lamellar pearlite in steel, quite lightly etched, is a suitable test object, since with a light etching and fine structure glare over the image is more noticeable. A useful comparison may be made by removing the specimen from the microscope and fitting various objectives, the light reflected to the screen by them under these conditions is glare; in some cases its quantity is surprising, and obviously a most important point in selection.

The excellence of the colour corrections is, for metallurgical work, a point of minor relative importance; most metallurgical specimens are monochromatic in character, and the yellow to green light for which most achromats are corrected is very suitable for nearly all work. Careful attention should be given to the setting of the tube length, the makers' figure being accepted unless

some experience has been gained in its experimental determination. A small error in this setting may cause a splendid objective to be overlooked (see Pl. 8). The desirability of selecting a series of objectives of fairly uniform tube lengths, so as to avoid the necessity of making changes in the illuminating system, should be borne in mind, but should not be permitted to cause the rejection of any objective of outstanding merit.

A good 2 mm. apochromat may probably have a very restricted flat field, and in consequence give more satisfactory photographs when used at $\times 1500$ or $\times 2000$ than at $\times 1000$. For this latter magnification a 3 mm. immersion objective may be used to give a more satisfactory flat field, particularly if its aperture be a little restricted, but some slight loss of resolving power as compared with the 2 mm. objective will probably occur; some 3 mm. objectives have a very flat field, but the resolution they give may not be appreciably better than that of a good 4 mm. dry lens. Examples of the work of good 3 mm. and 2 mm. apochromatic objectives are shown in Pl. 9; and Pl. 10 illustrates the performance of a 4 mm. apochromat with monochromatic light from a mercury lamp as illuminant. When different high-power apochromats are examined under proper working conditions the definition and resolution which they give is generally excellent and the choice among them will probably be decided by absence of glare. It is now customary to "bloom" those surfaces of lens combinations which are most likely to give rise to glare, with some consequent degree of reduction of this trouble.

The achromatic objectives are less exacting in the matter of critical operating conditions than the apochromats, and thoroughly satisfactory work is possible with them. A range of micrographs taken with achromats is shown in Pl. 11, in addition to many others in the text of later chapters.

Tube-length Correction

When some proficiency in photomicrography has been obtained, the tube-length settings for the various objectives in use should be checked, as the makers' figures must not be accepted as strictly applicable to each individual objective used in conjunction with different oculars and light filters. The higher the numerical aperture of the objective and the more perfect its correction for spherical aberration the more sensitive it will be to variations of tube length. A true comparison of high-grade objectives is not possible unless made with the correct tube-length adjustment for

PLATES

10 - 13

Micrographs illustrating the performance of a 4 mm. Apochromat, N.A. 0.95, with monochromatic light from a mercury lamp as illuminant.

Magnification 500 diameters.

The specimen of pearlite was focused on the screen in the green light of the mercury lamp, and then photographed in the following order, without movement of the focusing mechanism, by light of different colours, obtained by inserting the appropriate screen :

	<i>Light.</i>	<i>Wave Length.</i>	<i>Wratten Filter.</i>
A	Blue	4359 Å	47 (Tri-colour blue) + 2A
B	Yellow	5780 Å	22
C	Green	5460 Å	77A

Although the third photograph taken showed that the initial focusing in green light was correct and unchanged, the photograph taken in the blue light was badly out of focus, indicating that the colour correction even of an apochromat is not sufficiently wide to include the blue of the mercury lamp, which is so far removed in wave-length from the visually strong rays.

D. Refocused in blue light. Finer definition is given by an image focused and photographed in blue light, a somewhat shorter tube length being employed.

In occasional instances, as in the photography of multi-coloured specimens for which the use of monochromatic radiation may not be desirable, a Wratten 12 ("minus blue") filter may be used. This cuts off the blue radiation and permits of photography with the mixture of green and yellow giving tonal effects similar to those seen by eye.



A



B



C

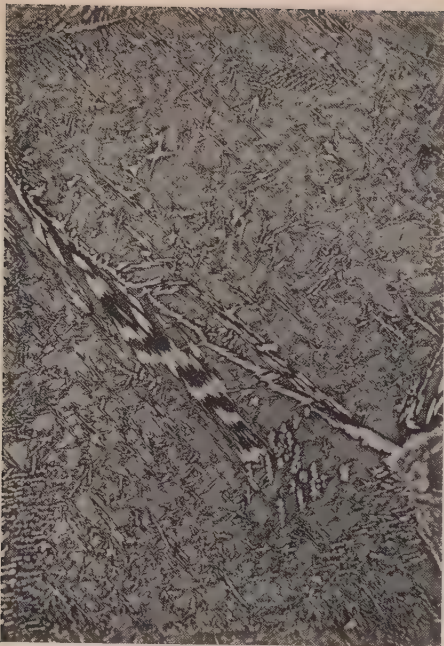


D

Plate 11

Micrographs with Achromatic Objectives.

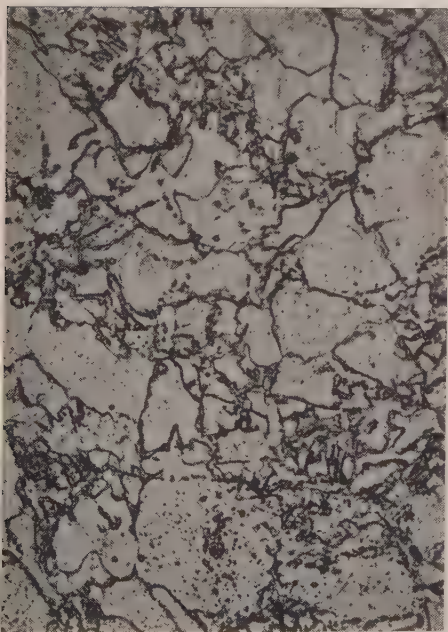
- A. α and β solid solutions in cast brass containing copper 60, zinc 39, tin 1 per cent.
 $\times 50$. 25 mm. objective.
- B. Ferrite and pearlite in an annealed chromium steel containing carbon 0.35, chromium 1.5 per cent.
 $\times 250$. 8 mm. objective.
- C. Coalesced carbide and ferrite in nickel steel (carbon 0.30, nickel 5.2 per cent.), annealed and very slowly cooled.
 $\times 500$. 4 mm. objective.
- D. Fine lamellar pearlite.
 $\times 1000$. 2 mm. objective.



A



B



C



D

Plate 12

- A. Sorbite in an oil-hardened and tempered nickel-chromium steel, showing the granular structure of the carbide and a minute film of included matter (running vertically near the middle of the photograph).

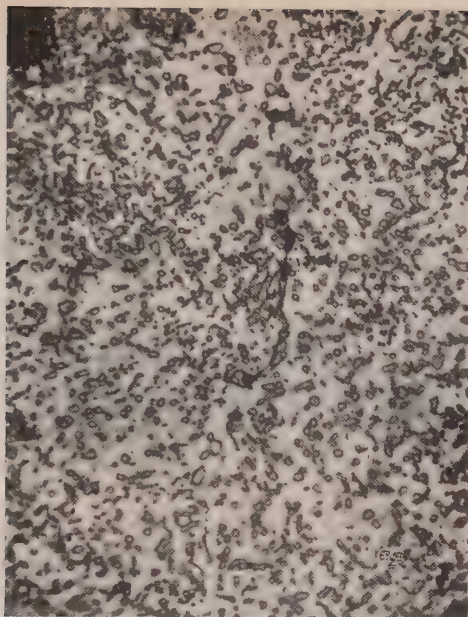
Etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

× 2500.

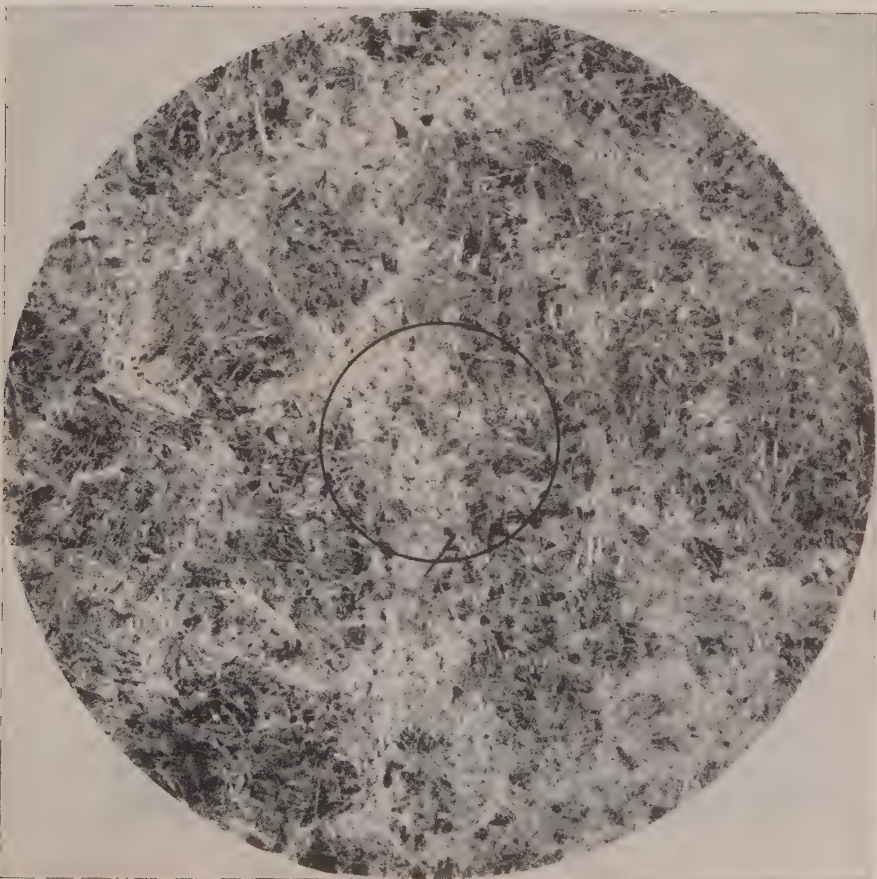
This micrograph was taken with a monochromat, N.A. 1.60, in blue light ($\lambda = 4359 \text{ \AA}$), the immersion fluid being monobromonaphthalene ($\mu = 1.66$).

- B. Hyper-eutectoid steel (carbon 1.2 per cent.) as cast. Photographed with $\frac{7}{8}$ in. ciné lens, and showing the large flat field obtainable. × 20.

The black circle shows the field covered by a $\frac{7}{8}$ -in. micro-objective as usually employed to cover a 3-in. circle at 50 magnifications.

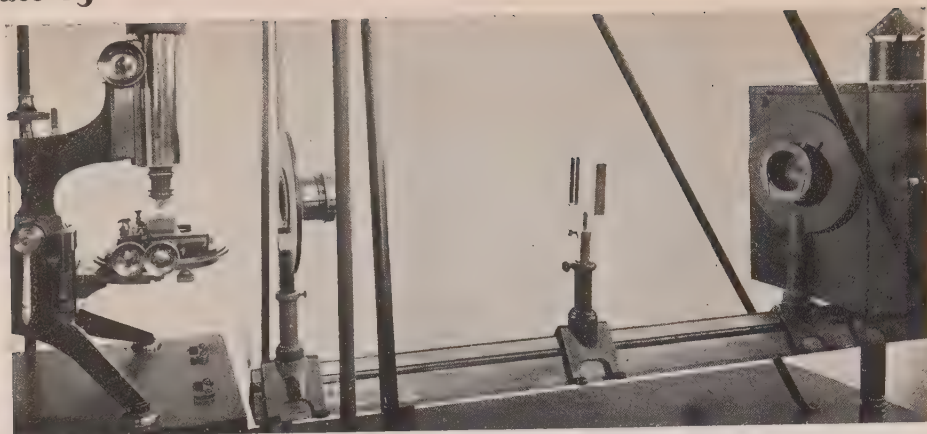


A



B

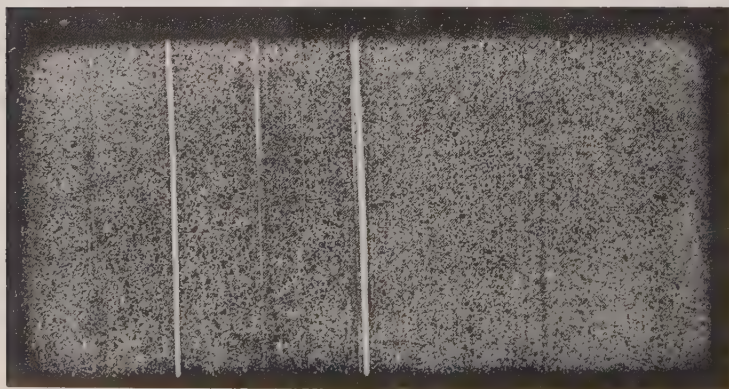
Plate 13



A. Illuminating system used with $\frac{3}{8}$ in. ciné lens and 35 mm. micro-anastigmat.
(Magnifications of 25 to 10 diameters.)



B. Illuminating system used with 75 mm. micro-anastigmat.
(Magnification of 5 diameters.)



C. Longitudinal section of forged 0.5 per cent. carbon steel
showing ghosts. $\times 5$. 77 mm. micro-anastigmat.
Vertical illumination as shown in Fig. 18 and B (*above*).

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

each in turn. A specimen showing the finest detail the objective is capable of resolving should be photographed with the ocular and light filter intended to be used, first with the makers' tube-length setting and then with settings a little on either side of that judged to be correct. A suitable subject to use in determining tube-length setting is a minute speck or inclusion in the centre of a field of the lightly etched ferrite of a normalized or annealed low-carbon steel. It may be observed by means of a focusing magnifier on the clear glass camera screen while changes in tube length are made and the image re-focused, but the final test must be made photographically. At the correct setting not only do the first-observed inclusions appear sharpest, but others, smaller or more removed from the centre, may come into view. For this test it is essential that the fine adjustment of the microscope should be quite free from creep: the illumination must be accurately centred and re-focused as changes in tube length are made. The field stop should be adjusted to illuminate only the central zone of the ocular, and the aperture control set so that the aperture of the objective is just filled with light.

Certain makers have recently adopted an infinity tube-length setting for their objectives, the ocular being modified to bring the beam to a focus, or an additional lens being introduced. The infinity tube-length setting has the advantage that the glass slip of the cover-glass reflector type of vertical illuminator need not be thin to avoid aberration, and that other optical components may be introduced into this part of the image path more conveniently. The method, however, leaves the user dependent on the precise setting of this adjustment in the objective as manufactured, and without the means of compensating for those variations which may mean so much for image perfection, as shown in Pl. 8A and B.

The Illuminator Plate

When used with objectives of conventional type which pass a convergent image-forming pencil of rays to the eyepiece, the vertical illuminator plate must be of quite thin glass to avoid astigmatism. Other defects, however, in the glass slip, such as surface irregularity or imperfections, curvature, etc., can produce deterioration of the image to an extent that is not generally recognized, and this will occur with any type of objective. In the use of vertical illuminators fitted with a specially cut rectangular glass plate, difficulty has been experienced in the past in obtaining glasses sufficiently free from these defects, and there has been

recourse to the fitting of a support to take the small circular "microscope cover glasses" which are in free supply. A search among a half-gross box of these will generally produce several which are satisfactory. The following method of inspection appears to be primitive, but will be found to be highly selective, and it is in fact used among microscope makers.

A small wooden support is covered with a strip of black cloth and on this several cover glasses are laid in line. In a room with windows darkened, the support is held at a few inches from the eye and tilted so that the reflection of an ordinary metal filament electric lamp with clear glass bulb is picked up by the eye from one slip after another in turn. The image of the glowing filament should be a single one, crisp and clear, and the image of its surrounding bulb and any lamp shade should be free of any distortion such as would be introduced by a curved reflecting surface. It will be found to be quite easy to make a selection of the most satisfactory slips. The poor ones having been discarded for this purpose, the remainder should be turned over and examined on the obverse side.

The slip must be mounted without any strain; and strain will almost certainly be introduced if it is glued to a support or pushed into a frame which grips it in the least degree. A method which has been adopted is to fix, by soldering, two very small hook supports on the underside of the usual metal ring support; the glass slip is allowed to rest on the hooks and against the ring; no glue or other adhesive is needed.

Microscopy with Deep-blue Light

To take maximum advantage of the increased resolution obtainable by the use of the deep-blue light ($\lambda = 4359 \text{ \AA}$) of the mercury lamp, a monochromatic immersion objective of N.A. 1.60 has been computed for metallurgical work by R. J. Bracey of the British Scientific Instruments Research Association, and made by Messrs. Beck.* Micrographs taken with this objective are shown in Pls. 12A and 49c. The immersion fluid used is monobromonaphthalene (refractive index, 1.66) which may be removed from the specimen by means of acetone. The objective is free from glare and gives a resolution of about 180,000 lines per inch. Although designed as a monochromat it is sufficiently achromatic to give excellent definition when used with the blue band of radiation given by a Pointolite through a Wratten 50 L

* *Journ. Royal Micros. Soc.*, 1933, vol. 53, p. 328.

METHOD OF MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION

filter. For visual examination with this objective a green filter and a slightly increased tube length may be used, with either a Pointolite or mercury lamp as source of light.

Microscopy with Ultra-violet Light

This method, which has proved to be so successful in biological and medical research, has been applied to metallurgical specimens.*

A quartz prism is used to separate from either the cadmium or the magnesium spark a beam of ultra-violet light of approximately half the wave length of blue visual light, and by its use the theoretical resolving power, attainable with objectives of similar numerical aperture, is doubled. The whole optical system of the apparatus must be of quartz or other material transparent to ultra-violet light, and as the image is invisible, other means of focusing are necessary, calling for the utmost precision and skill. The quartz objectives at present available were computed for bacteriological work without any special attempt to avoid the flat lens surfaces which may introduce glare in metallurgical micrography. The highest numerical aperture they possess, viz. about 1.3, is low compared with that of the 1.6 N.A. monochromat described above. By the use of these objectives on metal specimens increase of resolving power in accordance with theory has been obtained, and no unforeseen difficulties have been encountered. There appears to be no fundamental obstacle to the production of ultra-violet light objectives of high numerical aperture, specially designed for metallurgical purposes.

Efforts to advance the ultra-violet microscopy of metals have, however, been rendered superfluous by the development of the electron microscope, in which very high resolution is obtained by the use of an electron beam having an effective wave-length of 0.5 Å. The application of the electron microscope to the examination of metallic materials is dependent on the production of a replica of the etched metal surface in the form of a plastic film, the image of the surface being formed by transmission of electrons through this film. A resolution of about 200 Å is possible by this method, enabling useful magnifications of 10,000 to 50,000 to be obtained.

Various modifications of the replica technique were described and the metallurgical applications of the electron microscope reviewed at an Institute of Metals Symposium in 1950.†

* F. F. Lucas, *Journ. Franklin Inst.*, 1934, vol. 207, p. 661; J. Smiles and H. Wrighton, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1937, vol. A. 158, p. 671.

† "Metallurgical Applications of the Electron Microscope," *Institute of Metals Monograph and Report Series*, No. 8, 1950.

LOW-POWER PHOTOMICROGRAPHY AND MACROGRAPHY

THERE is often much to be learned from micro-examination at quite low powers; a better idea of the quantity and distribution of inclusions and of cavities is obtainable, and the relation between the true microstructure and the primary crystallization, or macrostructure, of the metal may best be studied at low magnification. In order that these structures may be observed and recorded effectively, it is necessary to apply "vertical illumination": the appearance and the photographs may then readily be correlated with those obtained at higher magnifications.

The images obtained at quite low magnifications, when low-power micro-objectives are used with the systems of vertical illumination described in the previous chapter, are not entirely satisfactory owing to the amount of glare set up by the large and flat back lens of the objective. The glare may be reduced to some extent by the use of a prism type illuminator, or by restriction of working aperture, but in either case there is generally a resultant blurring of the image of any surface irregularities such as slag inclusions or cracks and some unevenness of illumination. These imperfections may be tolerated in visual examination. They are not sufficiently serious to merit the fitting up of special equipment on the microscope, and low-power visual examinations may be made by using micro-objectives of 50 or 75 mm. focal length a low-power ocular, and, if contrast is weak in the image, a prism illuminator.

The method of calculating visual magnification given in the previous chapter is not applicable to long-focus objectives. In the case of a 75 mm. (3-in.) objective, for instance, the initial magnification when used with a 6-in. tube length is not $\frac{6}{3} = 2$, but something much lower. Assuming the primary image to be produced 6 in. from the objective, and applying the formula for conjugate foci

$$\frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{1}{f}$$

LOW-POWER PHOTOMICROGRAPHY

where f_1 and f_2 are object and image distances and f is the focal length, it is seen that the object distance must also be 6 in. and therefore primary magnification is 1.

A point of more direct importance is that with most microscopes it is impossible to obtain a separation of 6 in. between objective and specimen, and an image may only be formed in the microscope with objectives of this focal length by extending the draw tube to its limit of 10 in. or more.

For photographic purposes, objectives of the photographic anastigmat or Planar type may be used with advantage. These lenses cover a larger area on the specimen, and have a flatter field than micro-objectives of equivalent focus; they also have a sufficient free working distance to allow of the use of a glass slip reflector between objective and specimen, thereby almost eliminating glare. They must be used without an ocular.

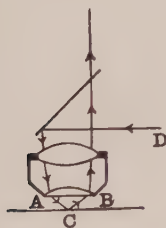


FIG. 16. Vertical Illumination at High Powers.

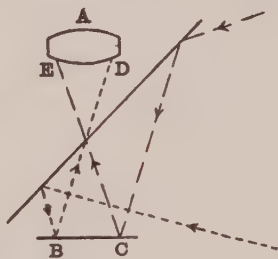


FIG. 17. Vertical Illumination at Low Powers.

With the vertical illuminator placed between objective and specimen, the objective takes no part in controlling the illumination; this and other considerations necessitate a modified illuminating system. At low magnifications, the area under observation on the specimen becomes large in relation to the front lens of the objective. The conditions of vertical illumination at higher magnifications are shown in Fig. 16, where the field in view is small in relation to the objective front AB, and may be represented by a point C. Light transmitted through the objective along the path AC will be reflected into the objective along CB and vice versa, every point on the objective front thus receiving light from C. With light transmitted through the objective at low powers a similar condition holds only with regard to the centre of the field, and if the extremities of a field BC (Fig. 17) are to reflect light into the whole objective front, and the field thereby be evenly illuminated, a cone of light must be provided which is sufficiently

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

wide to allow rays corresponding to BD and CE to be reflected to the objective.

The arrangement shown in Figs. 18 and Pl. 13A is suitable for photography at magnifications between $\times 25$ and $\times 10$, the area illuminated being sufficient to fill a quarter-plate. The required wide-angled cone of light is provided by a large aperture photographic lens of $4\frac{3}{4}$ -in. focus and $f3$ aperture at B, and in order that a sufficiently large area on the specimen may be illuminated, the lens D, which is a single aspherical condenser lens supplied by Messrs. Swift, must be opened to its full aperture of $1\frac{3}{4}$ in.

Results showing a rather exceptional combination of large flat field with good resolution are obtainable at magnifications from 15 to 25 diameters by the use of one of the modern baby-ciné anastigmat lens of about $\frac{7}{8}$ -in. focus and $f2$ aperture. Such a lens, for micrographic purposes, must be mounted the opposite way

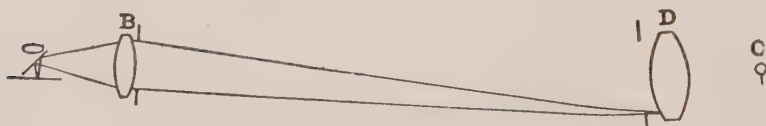


FIG. 18. Illuminating System for Low Magnifications.

about to that used for ordinary photography, i.e. with what is normally the front surface of the lens facing into the camera; this must always be done so that the correction for spherical aberration in the lens may not be vitiated. With the condenser system shown in Fig. 18 and Pl. 13A, almost the whole of the aperture of the lens may be filled (corresponding to a numerical aperture of about 0.22). The resolution thus obtainable is almost equivalent to that normally obtained with a micro-objective as used for photographs at 50 or 100 magnifications. The definition obtained, whilst not so critical as the central definition of a good micro-objective, is good enough to give a thoroughly satisfactory image at the low magnification employed; it is given over a very much larger flat field, and in addition, the portrayal of cracks and cavities is more accurate (Pl. 12B and Pl. 14). The vertical illuminator is a glass cover-slip of $\frac{3}{4}$ -1 in. diameter, mounted so that a rotating motion may be obtained, in a small bracket held in place by the objective collar. The draw tube of the microscope is removed in order not to restrict the field, and a light-tight connection arranged between the wide body tube and the camera front.

LOW-POWER PHOTOMICROGRAPHY

The iris diaphragm on lens B (Fig. 18) acts as aperture control, and that on D as field stop. It will be found necessary to centre the illumination accurately, and this may be most quickly carried out as follows. Lenses B and D are arranged in alignment as nearly as possible and set so that the beam of light impinges centrally on the glass slip illuminator. With both iris diaphragms open the specimen is brought roughly into focus, and then B is adjusted axially so that an image of D is focused on the surface of the specimen. D is next adjusted so that the rays from it fill, or almost fill, the lens B. Some further slight adjustment of B may now be required in order to obtain a sharp and even disc of light on the surface of the specimen; this may best be done by the aid of a small slip of white paper temporarily placed on the specimen so that the illumination there may be readily observed. If the back of the objective is now observed (the paper having been removed), it will probably be found that the illumination there is not central, and this should next be corrected by turning the glass slip illuminator until the spot of light on the back lens is central. Finally the field illumination should be centred by almost closing the iris of D so that only a small portion of the field on the screen is illuminated and bringing this to a central position by slight lateral adjustment of lens B in its supporting frame; after which, on opening both irises the full field of view should be evenly illuminated and also practically the whole aperture of the objective.

An objective of this type is sufficiently achromatized to work well without a colour filter, but it will be found that, with the illuminating system described, the image on the screen is very brilliant, and shows enough contrast to demand the use of rather soft-working (and therefore somewhat rapid) photographic plates. Exposures without a colour filter are apt to be inconveniently short; with a light yellow-green filter they may be only of the order of two to four seconds.

The assumption has been made, in this and the previous chapter, that the surface of a metal specimen, as polished and etched for micro-examination, acts sufficiently as a true reflector to permit of proper aperture control in metallurgical microscopy. If the surface were sufficiently roughened by the etching to cause it to break up and reflect light in all directions, and thereby cause the specimen to act in some degree as a self-luminous object, regulation of the character of the incident beam of light would be valueless. It is of interest to examine the back of the $\frac{7}{8}$ -in. lens, in use as above described, whilst it is in focus on a moderately etched speci-

men. If the specimen were spreading its light so as to utilize the full aperture of the objective independently of the character of the incident beam, then the back of the objective should remain evenly illuminated when the incident beam is restricted by closing the diaphragm in B. This is far from the case, the illuminated portion of the objective aperture will be found to be sharply defined and to vary in accordance with the angle of the incident light.

At lower magnifications the area on the specimen to be illuminated becomes still larger, and in order to produce a focused disc of light of the requisite size, the lens B (Fig. 18 and Pl. 13B) must be of greater focal length, and also of large diameter to preserve the wide-angled cone.

It will be found that the rays from D will by no means fill this condenser; a piece of ground glass is accordingly fixed close in front of D; the whole area of B is now able to pick up light from this new radiant surface, and the requirements of wide-angled cone with focused light disc of sufficient diameter are met. There is great loss of light at the ground glass, but still there is ample intensity for comfortable examination of the screen image. For a magnification of ten diameters a photo-anastigmat or Planar of 35 mm. focal length will be suitable; for five diameters a 75 mm. lens of a similar type may be used. For field searching with these objectives in use, a low-power ocular may be employed in an extended draw tube. The image will, however, be somewhat imperfect as the corrections are spoilt, and the field brought into view by a low-power ocular of standard pattern is considerably smaller than that available on the screen.

A larger glass slip illuminator will be required at these lowest powers; in the photograph, Pl. 13B, a framed glass disc of about $1\frac{1}{2}$ -in. diameter mounted in gymbals is shown bracketed to the limb of the microscope; this is a very convenient mounting, as either the specimen or the objective may be racked up or down to focus without disturbance to the lighting system.

Facilities for low-power work in accordance with the above principle are now incorporated in certain metallographs.

Oblique illumination at low magnifications may be effected by the light of a small electric lamp directed through a bull's-eye or similar condensing lens on to the surface of the specimen; or two such lamps may be used, one from either side. With specimens showing relief, the angle of the illumination should be adjusted, and the specimen rotated until a suitable shadow effect is obtained.

LOW-POWER PHOTOMICROGRAPHY

Photography of Macrostructures

The term "macrostructure" embraces all the range of features of metal surfaces, from those just visible to the eye, but more comfortably examined with the aid of a hand magnifier, to the whole surface of a large ingot or forging; it includes all patterns, either in colour or relief, or both, related to the structure of the metal, and also all markings indicative of unsoundness, cracking, segregation or other imperfections in the metal.

The portrayal of these structures calls for a technique quite different from that used in the commercial photography of objects, metals or otherwise, for such purposes as catalogue illustrations in which design and shape must be faithfully reproduced, and surface marks or irregularities are generally to be regarded as blemishes, and suppressed in the photograph. In the photography of macrostructures the external shape is a matter of minor importance (it may already have been partly or wholly destroyed by cutting), but surface features must be reproduced in all possible detail and in a uniform manner over the whole of the area included in the photograph.

Visual examination of a macro-etched surface of quite moderate dimensions in a room, by the light of one or two windows, will indicate that with a fixed viewpoint and stationary specimen, a uniform appearance over the whole of the surface is only obtainable by attention to the lighting, for some part of the surface, which happens to catch the light of a window and reflect it direct to the eye, may present an image appearance quite different from that of the remainder. A slight change of viewpoint or movement of the specimen will cause a rearrangement of the lighting, and indeed, in examining a macrosection, this turning of the head or specimen is done without thought, so as to observe the effects of light reflected at different angles, and the various visual impressions are mentally summed up. Further, in making a visual examination, two eyes are used, and the stereoscopic effect gives prompt differentiation between dark but smooth features and cavities or cracks.

The one eye of the camera cannot entirely overcome the absence of stereoscopic relief, but, on the other hand, by the provision of suitable illumination, uniform in character over the whole surface from the viewpoint of the lens and chosen to accentuate structural features, the photographer may be able to reveal the details of a macrosection in a completely satisfactory manner.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

Equipment

A half-plate square bellows "studio" camera with double extension will be found suitable for this work. A rigid tripod with tilting and rotating top, extension rise, and with the legs cross braced so as to prevent slip, will be required when large objects are being photographed, whilst something in the nature of a copying table may conveniently be used for fixing up smaller specimens in front of the camera.

Two projector lamps of the "focuslite" type, with gas-filled cluster filament bulbs of 250 or 500 watts, will provide convenient means of illumination; their light may be concentrated or spread over larger areas as required.

A set of three or four photographic objectives covering a range of 3 in. to about 12 in. focus is necessary; these should be anastigmats, but need not be of very large aperture, $f/8$ being sufficient. They may very probably be selected from the stocks of second-hand photographic dealers provided that they may be had on approval for testing.

The chief precaution which must be taken when choosing a lens for this work is that it should be reasonably free from spherical aberration when projecting an approximately actual-sized image. Photographic lenses are normally computed to be clear of this defect when photographing relatively distant objects, this being the manner in which they are most commonly used, with the distance from lens to camera screen approximately equal to the focal length of the lens. The degree to which this correction is maintained when the lens-to-image distance is increased, varies considerably in different types of lenses. When a lens is used to give a well-magnified image of an object, lens-to-image distance is increased, and object-to-lens distance is reduced almost to focal length; the trouble may then be avoided simply by turning the lens round, but for producing approximately actual size images, when object-to-lens and lens-to-image distances are more or less equal and well in excess of the focal length, this expedient is not available.

If a new set of lenses is to be obtained, attention should be given to those made specially for copying and known as "Process" anastigmats, as they are suitably corrected in this respect. Their other corrections also are generally of a high order and they are rather expensive, but otherwise ideal for the work. Lenses which will meet the requirements may be selected as follows.

A sheet of fine and clear printing is set up in front of the

PHOTOGRAPHY OF MACROSTRUCTURES

camera, quite normal to the camera axis and parallel to the focusing screen, and strongly illuminated by the projector lamps. Its image is obtained at approximately actual size and carefully focused, by the aid of a focusing magnifier with the lens at full aperture. The aperture should then be reduced to f_{22} or f_{32} and, whilst the image on the centre of the screen is observed through the magnifier, the camera screen should be slowly racked back a little farther from the lens. If the image seen at small aperture is noticeably improved in sharpness by racking back, the lens is not entirely suitable, and a further choice should be made.

With photographic lenses, as distinct from micro-objectives, definition of fine detail may often be improved by restriction of aperture, and as some depth of focus is frequently required and prolongation of exposure is a matter of little consequence, a rather small lens aperture is often employed. The image on the screen is seldom sufficiently bright for focusing, however, at small apertures, hence the necessity for lenses free from spherical aberration under actual working conditions, so that there shall be no change in focus when the aperture is reduced.

Among anastigmats, only those of very early make are likely to be unsatisfactory in other respects, such as lack of covering power, or curvature of field.

The photography of macrostructures is best carried out in a rather large room, with large windows on two or more sides and roof lights, so that a good diffuse illumination is obtainable. Dark blinds or shutters should be fitted so that the room may be darkened, and, as light is apt to be reflected by polished or smooth surfaces from even quite narrow streaks along the edge of a blind, causing puzzling irregular illumination, the blinds should be well fitting.

The methods of illumination employed may be roughly divided into the two classes of oblique and vertical.

Oblique Illumination

This type of illumination usually gives an appearance similar to that seen under diffuse daylight. Its effects may be accentuated with artificial lighting by projecting the light at a very wide angle from the normal, or by illuminating the specimen from one direction only, whereby small cavities or irregularities in a surface will remain unilluminated, whilst the fine relief patterns produced by rather strong etching on some macrostructures will be thrown into light and shade.

Polished surfaces, or those which remain smooth after etching, will reflect oblique light clear of the camera lens and so appear dark in the photograph. Surfaces which on etching reveal their structure by the production of a light and dark, or coloured, patina, may be more satisfactorily photographed under vertical illumination.

For oblique illumination the camera should be normal to, and opposite the centre of, the surface to be photographed. There is no perspective to be preserved, and therefore a lens of relatively short focus may be used, with the object of getting near to the surface and picking up the fine detail more clearly; the lens should, however, cover the size of the plate, at the magnification employed, reasonably sharply to the corners and without falling off of illumination there.

For the photography of large surfaces, such as an ingot section some 3 ft. in extent, on a half-plate, a lens of about 9 in. focus would be suitable, whereas for copying actual size, a lens of 6-7 in. focus should cover the half-plate sharply and evenly; for a magnification of two diameters a 4- or 5-in. lens is suitable, and a 3-in. lens of the micro-anastigmat or Planar type will cover the plate at magnifications of four or five diameters. The micro-anastigmats have their corrections adjusted and their components suitably mounted for use in this way, that is, with a relatively long distance between lens and plate and a short distance, approximating to the focal length, between lens and specimen. If a short-focus lens, designed for a small amateur or a ciné camera, is used, it should be mounted the opposite way about on the camera front, with what is normally the front lens pointing inwards to the plate.

Short-focus lenses bring the camera front very close to the specimen, where it is apt to interfere with illumination; a conical sleeve lens adaptor as shown in Pl. 15A is useful in such cases.

When the position of the camera has been approximately adjusted to give the image desired on the screen, the camera back may be pushed forward near to the lens panel, the focusing screen removed and the lens unscrewed from its flange, so that the eye may be placed close behind and a viewpoint nearly the same as that of the lens obtained. The appearance of the surface may be studied under the diffuse illumination of the room and also by the light of one or more projector lamps set at varying angles; any altered appearance given by the lamps may as a rule be enhanced by darkening the room.

PHOTOGRAPHY OF MACROSTRUCTURES

Vertical Illumination

The appearance of a polished and etched macrosection which shows, on a coarse scale, constituent features related to those which are customarily viewed under the microscope, is, when seen under oblique illumination, difficult and tedious to interpret or to correlate with microstructure. In steel specimens, for example, ferrite veins appear dark and fine cracks light and the one may easily be taken for the other (Pl. 16B and c). Further, the finer detail of such a structure may not be made visible at all, since it is produced by a patina or colour, rather than by a relief effect.

Although it is impracticable to provide an axial and sufficiently large cone of light to give true "vertical illumination" over the surfaces of macrospecimens, a system of illumination is available which produces quite a similar appearance. Owing to the great covering power of photographic lenses as compared with micro-objectives, the specimen, lens and screen may be set up well out of alignment with one another and yet allow non-axial light to be reflected to the lens from smooth portions of the surface, thus securing the equivalent of vertical illumination.

In Fig. 19, AB is a macrosection, and D the camera lens in a position slightly beyond the line BC, which is the normal to the surface at B. Light to be reflected into the camera lens from smooth portions of the surface near B must be incident along the path FB, and from portions near A, along EA. If an area with a surface not too smooth, but with good reflecting properties, such as white blotting-paper or a white distempered board, at EF be strongly illuminated as by a projector placed at G, the whole surface of AB will be illuminated in the required manner. The image produced by the lens will be out of centre on the screen if the camera is placed parallel to the normal BC. The cross front movement of the camera should be used as indicated so as to bring the image on to the focusing screen whilst maintaining

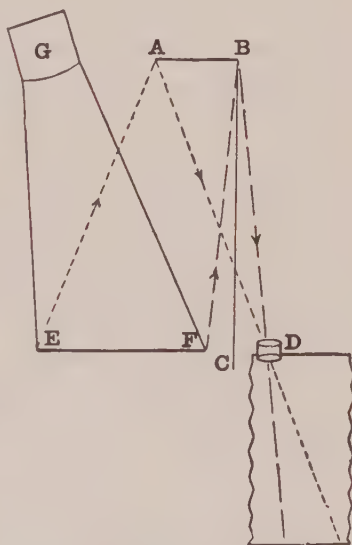


FIG. 19. Diagram showing Method of obtaining the Equivalent of "Vertical Illumination" in the Photography of Macrosections.

camera front and focusing screen both parallel to AB; in this way distortion is avoided. If, with the whole of the cross front movement in use, the image cannot be completely brought on to the screen, an attempt should be made to reduce the distance FD to a minimum, which will permit the object AB being brought a little more into alignment with the camera. If moved too far, however, the illumination of B on the camera screen may be weakened in comparison with A. Alternatively, the camera may be turned to face a little more directly towards AB; some distortion of the image of AB on the screen may then be noticeable, but as a rule this is of no consequence. The aperture of the lens may need to be considerably reduced to bring the whole of the image sharply into focus, or the swing back of the camera may be used; this will introduce some further slight distortion, but the maximum distortion likely to be produced is quite insufficient to be of consequence in relation to macrostructure or its interpretation.

The illumination is not critical; an irregular portion of the surface near B may throw some light it receives from E into the lens, but in practice a very satisfactory image is produced with ample contrast for photography, provided that the area EF is regulated to the minimum necessary to cover AB, and that diffuse illumination is removed by darkening the room.

No light from the projector must be allowed to strike the lens. A shade may be fitted to the lens to ensure this.

The size of the bright surface EF will depend on the size of the specimen and its distance away. If placed alongside the camera lens, EF will require to be approximately twice the size of AB, and it should be also of approximately the same shape, so that it may be kept of minimum area, for crispness and contrast in the image are largely dependent on this. Strips of black cloth or paper may be pinned over the white board to bring the shape of the white reflecting area roughly into conformity with the specimen.

In addition to the portrayal of macro-etched surfaces, this method of illumination provides an effective means of displaying minute irregularities such as hair-line cracks on polished surfaces.

Exposures required vary within wide limits, being proportional to the square of the aperture number used and also, when photographs on a larger scale than about half actual size are being taken, to the square of the magnification. The intensity of the light thrown by projector lamps depends on their distance and the angular width of the beam they are set to project, whilst the pro-

PHOTOGRAPHY OF MACROSTRUCTURES

portion reflected to the camera is dependent also on the nature of the surface of the specimen and its colour.

Exposure meters of the comparator type, sensitive enough for indoor work and artificial lighting, are now available. These can be of considerable help in judging the widely varying intensities of illumination which are met with in this class of work. The surface reflectivity of some specimens to be photographed is so low that in some instances the use of such a meter may be simplified if, after fixing everything in readiness for exposure, a sheet of white card is placed immediately in front of the specimen, and the light reflected from this is measured.

The etched surfaces of some of the non-ferrous metals show structures in which some grains or areas reflect light which is very non-actinic in colour, and these are apt to show excessive contrast in the photograph unless light is used of a colour similar to that of the darker areas of the specimen.

The definition of lenses of medium and long focus is impaired when colour filters are fitted to them, unless these are mounted in optically worked glass, and a set of such filters in various colours is an expensive item. Stained gelatin and celluloid filters, cut to fit in between the components of the lens, may be used, but these are fragile and troublesome, and a better method is to make use of a set of tinting screens to fit on to the projector lamps. These may be purchased very cheaply and with them there is no impairment of definition in the lens. Usually, however, colour filters are not required.

Photographic Materials of similar grades to those used for micro-work are suitable, panchromatic emulsions being called for when coloured light is used.

THE STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

Pure Metals

PURE metals in the cast or annealed condition present under the microscope a system of polygonal grain boundaries representing sections through polyhedral crystal grains which constitute the mass of the metal.

These polyhedral grains, though lacking in external geometrical symmetry, are true crystals the growth of which has suffered interference by contact with similar neighbouring crystal grains. A crystal, the external form of which is defined in this way by its surroundings, is called an allotriomorphic crystal.

The crystal structure of the metals has been shown by X-ray analysis to consist of an orderly geometrical arrangement of the

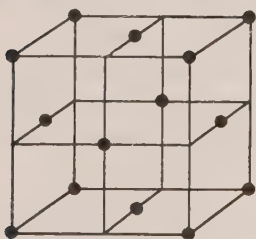


FIG. 20. Face-centred Cubic Lattice.

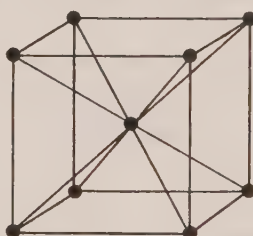


FIG. 21. Body-centred Cubic Lattice.

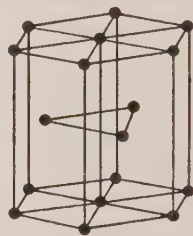


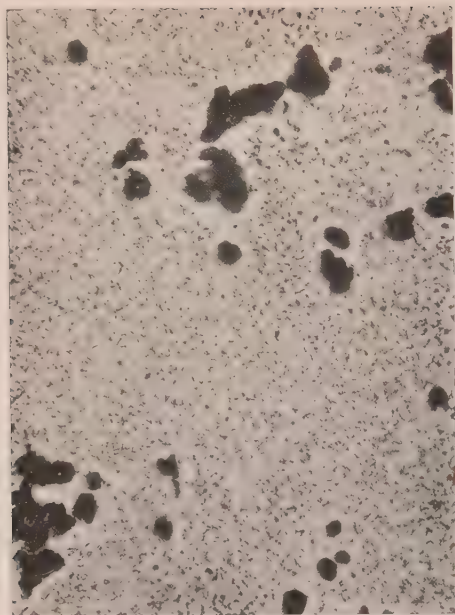
FIG. 22. Close-packed Hexagonal Lattice.

atoms on what is known as a "space lattice." This is a system of points formed by the intersection of three sets of planes parallel to pairs of principal axes of the crystal. The complete pattern consists of repetitions of a group of such points known as the unit cell. The space lattice may be thought of as formed by the corners of the unit cells. Many metals crystallize in the cubic system, and the unit cell is a cube of very minute dimensions. The smallest particle visible at the highest possible magnification under the microscope will be about 1,000 times the linear dimensions of the unit cube, its surface will cover about 1,000,000 such cubes. In most of the common metals the atoms are arranged on a face-centred cubic lattice, the unit cell being a cube with one atom at

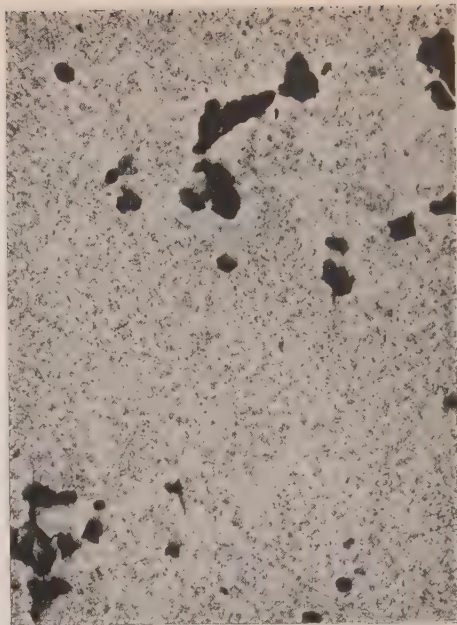
PLATES

14 - 17

Plate 14



(a)



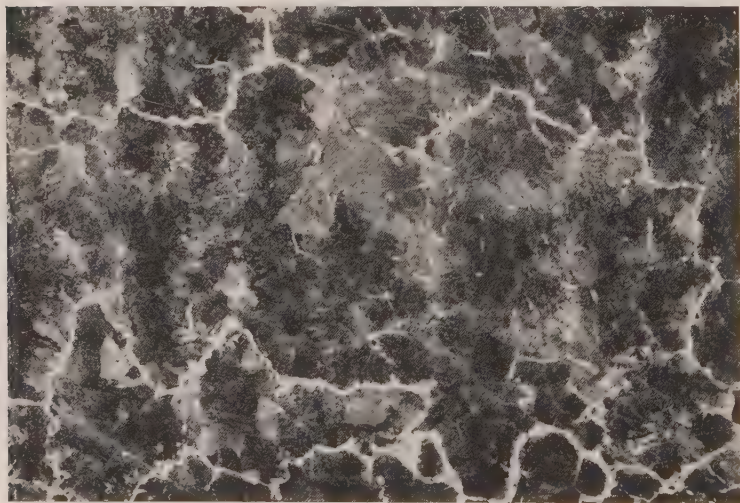
(b)

A. Cavities in steel casting.

× 25.

(a) Taken with 40 mm. micro-objective. Note enlarged and blurred appearance of surface irregularities.

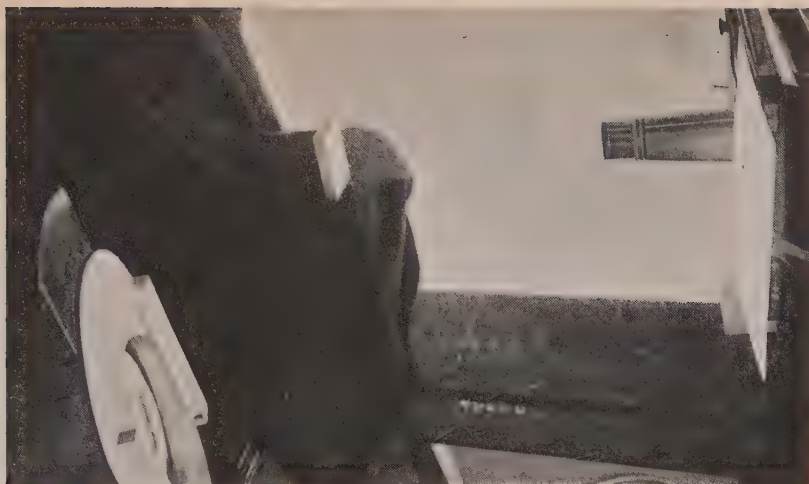
(b) Taken with $\frac{7}{8}$ in. ciné lens.



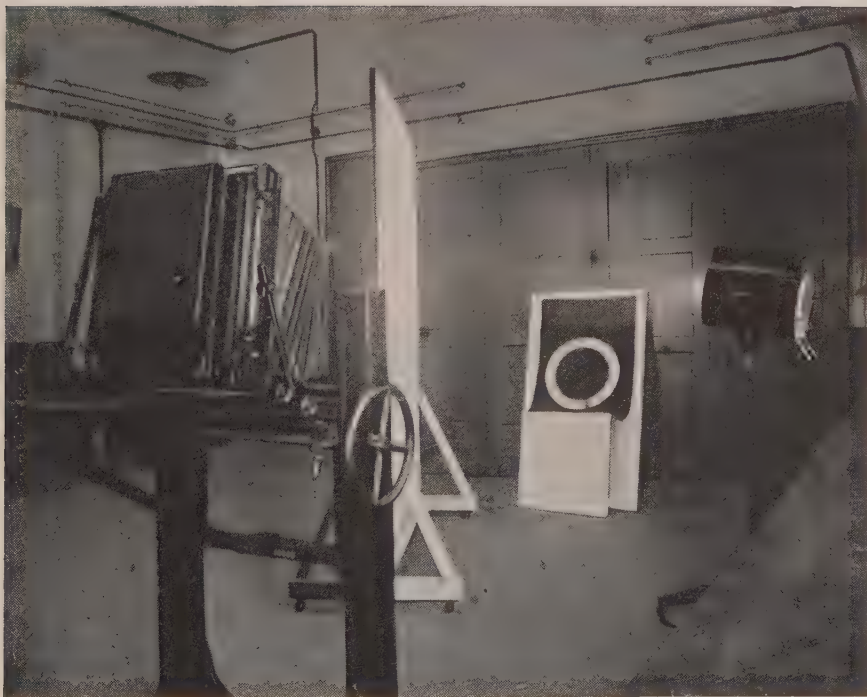
B. From steel ingot.

× 15. $\frac{7}{8}$ in. ciné lens.

Illustrating the definition obtained and covering power of the lens.



A



B

A and B. Showing arrangements of apparatus for obtaining the equivalent of "vertical illumination",
in photo-macrography.

Plate 16

Photographs illustrating the advantage of vertical illumination in interpreting macrostructures and in correlating them with microstructures. Etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

- A. Section from a steel ingot. Ferrite and Pearlite, “ Vertical illumination ” : photograph, actual size.
- B. Portion of section from steel ingot. Oblique illumination. Ferrite dark. × 2.
- C. The same. Vertical illumination. Ferrite light. × 2.
- D. Portion of section from steel ingot. Vertical illumination. × 5.



A



B



C



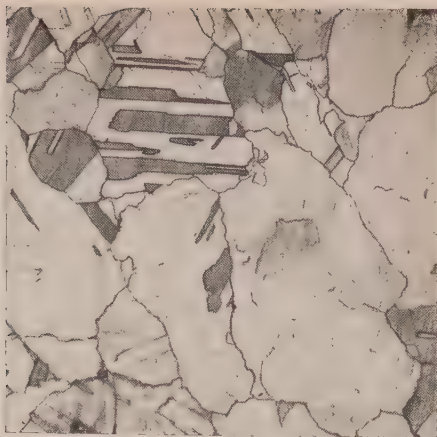
D

Plate 17

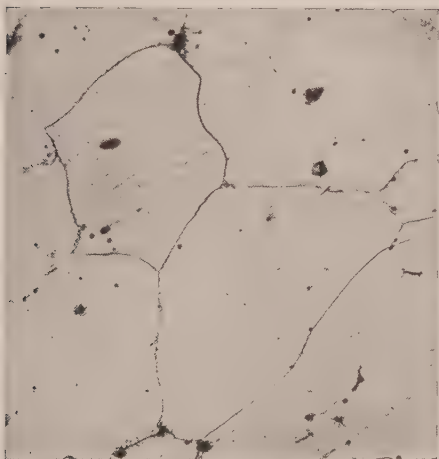
- A. Cast oxygen-free, high-conductivity copper, showing allotriomorphic grains of copper.
Polish attack with ammonia. × 100.
- B. Rolled and annealed copper. Polyhedral grains of copper showing some twinning.
Etched with acid solution of ferric chloride. × 100.
- C. Cast nickel, showing allotriomorphic grains of nickel with some inclusions of oxide and graphite.
Etched with a 2 : 1 : 1 mixture of nitric acid, acetic acid and water. × 100.
- D. Lead, extruded hot. Polyhedral grains of lead with inclusions.
Etched with acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide. × 15.
- E. Dead mild steel, carbon 0.05 per cent., annealed at 930° C. and slowly cooled, then reheated to 660° C. and quenched in water. The grain size is unaffected by this reheating, and the carbon is held in solid solution by the quenching.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- F. Mild steel, carbon 0.1 per cent., reheated to 880° C. and cooled quickly, showing refinement of grain size which occurs on recrystallization at the A_{c_3} point.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.



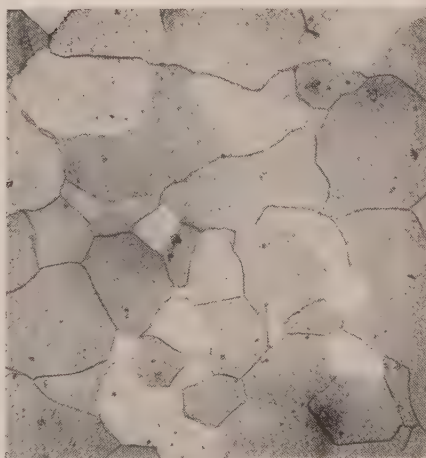
A



B



C



D



E



F

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

each corner and one at the centre of each of its six faces (Fig. 20). In some metals the atoms are arranged on a body-centred cubic lattice in which the unit cube has an atom at each corner and one at the centre of the cube (Fig. 21). The more commonly employed metals crystallizing in the cubic system are given in the following table, together with the approximate length of side (or parameter) of the unit cell (a) expressed, to two places of decimals, in Ångstrom units ($1 \text{ Å} = 10^{-8} \text{ cm.}$) at room temperature.

Face-centred cubic

	Cu.	Ag.	Au.	Al.	Pb.	γ -Fe.	β -Co.	Ni.
$a =$	3.61	4.08	4.07	4.04	4.94	3.56	3.54	3.52
						(Extrapolated)		

Body-centred cubic

	V.	Ta.	Cr.	Mo.	W.	α -Fe.
$a =$	3.03	3.30	2.88	3.14	3.16	2.86

Next in order of importance is the close-packed hexagonal structure (Fig. 22), a structure which would be obtained by stacking spheres so that they are in contact with as many neighbours as possible and one which is associated with relatively poor ductility at atmospheric temperature.

Close-packed Hexagonal

	Be.	Mg.	Zn.	Cd.
$a =$	2.28	3.20	2.66	2.97
$c =$	3.58	5.20	4.94	5.61

a = length of side of the equilateral triangles of the basal plane.

c = height of unit cell.

There remain only a few common metals with more complicated types of structure.*

The formation of crystal grains in metals can be interpreted by analogy with the freezing of other pure liquids, e.g. water. During the cooling of a pure liquid, when the freezing point is reached, solidification begins (in the absence of super-cooling) at numerous centres. The minute crystals formed increase in size by throwing out branches in certain directions bearing a relation to the symmetry of the crystal. The dendrites thus formed continue to grow at a rate depending on the temperature conditions in their immediate neighbourhood, until their growth is interfered with

* For further data, see "The Structure of Metals and Alloys," by W. Hume-Rothery and G. V. Raynor. Published by the Institute of Metals, 1954.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

by meeting neighbouring crystals. In this way the skeleton of the structure and the main outline of the crystal grain boundaries are mapped out. Subsequent solidification takes place by further dendritic growth on a smaller scale in the interstices of the original dendrites, finally resulting in a polyhedral structure such as is shown in Pl. 17A. Each polyhedral grain is uniform in composition and internal structure because it is made up of a single constituent, crystallizing at a constant temperature.

If such a metal is rolled, hammered or forged, the crystals are broken up, and if the operation is carried out hot they are continuously re-formed. If the rolling is carried out cold the crystals are deformed, but the metal may be made to recrystallize by subsequent annealing.

The effect of annealing will be dealt with more fully later, but here it may be remarked that straining followed by annealing often results in the formation of twin crystals. Neighbouring crystals of the same chemical composition and constitution, but orientated symmetrically about an axis as mirror images of one another, are known as twin crystals. Such crystals have one face in common, the boundaries between the neighbouring crystals appearing in section under the microscope as a straight line (or several parallel lines) across the crystal grain. The presence of such twinned crystals denotes that the metal at some stage in its history has undergone permanent deformation, though the absence of twins is not sufficient evidence of the absence of such treatment. Pl. 17B shows the structure of rolled and annealed copper. It consists of copper grains showing the characteristics of twinned crystals.

Nickel, lead and iron also show a simple polyhedral structure (Pl. 17C, D and E). As a micro-constituent pure iron is referred to as ferrite. In spite of their similarity of appearance, the history of the formation of ferrite grains is far more complicated than that of the copper grains or those of the other metals illustrated.

If pure copper is allowed to cool from the liquid state the rate of cooling suffers an arrest while solidification takes place at constant temperature, but afterwards the temperature falls without interruption down to that of the surrounding atmosphere. Its other properties, such as its specific volume, also show no discontinuity. Iron, however, behaves quite differently. The melting point of pure iron is 1535°C . and on cooling from the melting point the rate of cooling suffers three definite arrests at about 1403° , 910° and 768°C . respectively. If carbon is present, a fourth arrest occurs at about 700°C ., increasing in importance

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

with increase in amount of carbon: this was the first arrest point to be observed and was originally known as A. It is now termed A_1 , that at 768°C. being A_2 , at 910°C. A_3 and the upper point A_4 . The same critical points are also observed on heating, but the actual temperatures are a little higher than those found on cooling. It was therefore necessary to distinguish between the points on the cooling and on the heating curve, and this was done by adding r (*refroidissement*) or c (*chauffage*) to the symbol. Thus Ar_3 indicates the point observed in the neighbourhood of 910°C. in cooling pure iron, Ac_3 represents the corresponding point on the heating curve, and similarly for the other points.

Several metallic and non-metallic elements are known to exhibit at certain temperatures changes of chemical, physical and mechanical properties, accompanied by changes in crystallographic habit and, frequently, by evolution or absorption of heat. In the non-metals oxygen, sulphur and phosphorus, the change is known to depend on a change in the number of atoms in the molecule, and in solids is associated with a rearrangement of the atoms on a new space lattice. Such changes are referred to as allotropic transformations and the conditions of the element as allotropic modifications.

The absorption or evolution of heat occurring in iron at definite temperatures is considered to be due to allotropic transformations and may be explained by the existence of distinct allotropic modifications of iron. The pure iron which exists at ordinary temperatures is the stable modification at all temperatures up to 910°C. and is known as α -iron, though from 768° to 910° it is non-magnetic and was formerly referred to as β -iron: from 910° to 1403° the metal exists as γ -iron and between 1403° and the melting point δ -iron is stable. All these, however, are not different allotropic modifications of iron. Definite evidence has been obtained by X-ray crystal analysis of a difference in atomic arrangement between α - and γ -iron, while similar evidence has shown that α -, β - and δ -iron are identical in the atomic structure of their crystals.

The thermal changes occurring at the critical temperatures A_2 and A_3 are both accompanied by discontinuities in other physical properties, such as electrical resistance, thermo-electric potential and tenacity. At Ac_2 there is a very sudden fall in the magnetic permeability of α -iron accompanied by no change in the lattice itself. At Ac_3 , however, the change in the physical properties mentioned above, as well as in dilatation and specific heat, is accompanied by a change in the cubic lattice from the body-

centred type, characteristic of α -iron, to the face-centred type characteristic of γ -iron: and at the Ac_4 point the lattice again reverts to the body-centred type. These changes in lattice structure are accompanied by recrystallization and refinement of grain size. No refinement occurs on heating through the Ac_2 point, but if iron is heated to Ac_3 recrystallization occurs, and on cooling rapidly from just above Ac_3 a very fine grain size is obtained (Pl. 17F).

Alloys

An alloy may be defined as a mixture with metallic properties composed of two or more elements, one at least being a metal. As now understood in industry the name usually implies that an intentional addition has been made to a metal to improve its properties for some particular purpose. The number of phases (p. 3) present in any solid binary alloy in the state of equilibrium must be either one or two. When the two components of the alloy are metals, these phases are essentially solid solutions, as there is always some degree of mutual solubility, however small it may be, between the two metals. Provided that its homogeneity is not destroyed, the composition of a solid solution may vary within certain limits, and so affect the mechanical properties of the alloy. The single-phase region may be so wide as to extend over the whole range of composition from one metal to the other; or, on the other hand, it may be so restricted as to approximate to a pure metal, or, if intermediate in composition between the two components, to a chemical compound of fixed composition. As the relative proportions of the two metals are progressively altered, the constitution of the resulting alloy may change from a single phase (the primary solid solution) having the structure characteristic of the first metal, to a mixture of two phases, then to the second of these, existing as a single phase and so on, but finishing the series with a single phase conforming to the lattice of the second metal. This series of solid solutions are usually referred to in order by the letters of the Greek alphabet.

Solid Solutions

In a solid solution formed by small additions to a pure metal, the space lattice is of the type characteristic of the solvent metal, but the points on the lattice are occupied indiscriminately by the atoms of the two or more metals present. This type of replacement gives rise to a substitutional solid solution as distinguished

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

from interstitial solid solutions (formed by gases in metals or by carbon in γ -iron) in which the solute atoms fit into the spaces between those of the solvent.

If the lattice structure of the two metals is the same and their atomic diameters (or closest distance of approach in crystals of the solid element) very similar, they are often completely miscible in the solid state. As typical of an uninterrupted series of solid solutions, the alloys of copper and nickel may be taken. When a molten copper-nickel alloy is cooled the solid crystallizing is neither pure copper nor pure nickel, but a solid solution of the two differing, however, in composition from the liquid. It separates at a temperature lower than the melting point of pure nickel, but higher than that of pure copper, and solidification takes place,

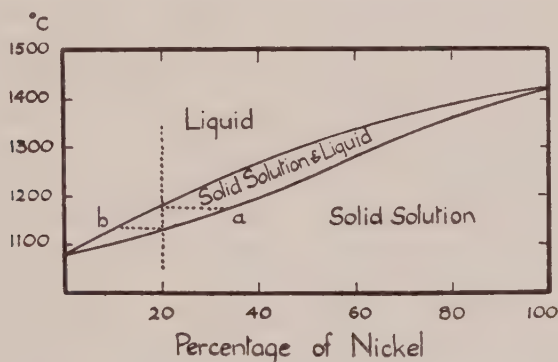


FIG. 23. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Nickel Alloys.

The alloys are completely liquid at temperatures above the upper line (the liquidus), and are completely solid at temperatures below the lower line (the solidus).

not at a constant temperature as for a pure substance, but over a range of temperature. This is indicated by the constitutional diagram constructed from thermal and microscopical data (Fig. 23). Consider, for example, a solid nickel-copper alloy of uniform composition containing 20 per cent. of nickel and 80 per cent. of copper. If this is melted, fusion begins at 1130°C . and the first drops of liquid formed have the composition represented by the point *b* on the liquidus curve, i.e. they are richer in copper than the solid. As the temperature rises, melting continues and is completed at 1180° , the final composition of the liquid (kept uniform by convection and diffusion) being that of the original alloy. On cooling this liquid, solidification begins at 1180° , and the first material to solidify has the composition corresponding to the point *a* on the solidus curve, i.e. it is richer in nickel than the liquid. As solidification proceeds, metal progressively poorer in

nickel is deposited round the original crystals, that which solidifies last being richest in copper. Hence the structure of the solid cast alloy differs from that of cast copper or nickel, and consists of dendritic crystals originally so-called from their branched tree-like appearance. These vary in composition, being rich in nickel at the centre and rich in copper at the outside, and therefore show a corresponding difference in microscopic appearance at these positions after etching (Pl. 18A).

This lack of homogeneity can be corrected by diffusion if the rate of cooling is sufficiently slow, or if the alloy is rendered homogeneous by annealing at temperatures below the melting point. The rate of diffusion varies considerably for different metals and the inhomogeneous or "cored" structure persists longest when produced in alloys of those metals which have the slowest rates of diffusion. It is very persistent in nickel alloys. The cored structure of a cast solid solution will be more pronounced the greater the rate of cooling, and will thus be most evident in chill castings. Other conditions being the same, it will be least for alloys in which the range from liquidus to solidus is smallest.

Uniformity of composition of the crystal grains is assisted by mechanical work, e.g. rolling, forging, etc., followed by annealing. All the copper-nickel alloys in the rolled and annealed condition have a similar microstructure, that of a homogeneous solid solution (Pl. 18B and c). When certain etching reagents are used it frequently happens that crystals of identical chemical constitution present different appearances under the microscope, some appearing light and others dark. This effect, known as contrast etching, is due to a difference in orientation of the crystals, which in some instances may cause a difference in coloration of the grains by the etching reagent, and in others may result in a difference of slope of the etched facets of adjacent grains, some reflecting light back into the microscope tube, and others reflecting it at an angle to the axis of the microscope. By using oblique illumination and rotating the specimen the appearance of any particular grain is then seen to alternate between light and dark according to whether or not the reflected rays travel up the microscope tube. This effect is illustrated by a photograph (Pl. 18B) of the structure of Monel metal, and later by other copper alloys.

Eutectic Mixtures

When the freezing point of each component of the system is lowered by the addition of the other until the two branches of the

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

liquidus intersect at a temperature at which both components (or their solid solutions) are in equilibrium in the liquid, the molten alloy solidifies to form a eutectic (or "easily melted") mixture. An example of this behaviour is presented by the tin-lead alloys (Fig. 24). From the liquid alloy containing less than 62 per cent. of tin, a lead-rich solid solution first separates and as the temperature falls the remaining liquid becomes richer in tin until it contains 62 per cent., when it solidifies without further fall in temperature. Similarly, from a molten alloy containing more than 62 per cent. of tin, a tin-rich solid solution first separates leaving the liquid poorer in tin until it reaches the eutectic composition and solidifies at the eutectic temperature. An alloy of eutectic composition melts or freezes at a constant temperature and in this re-

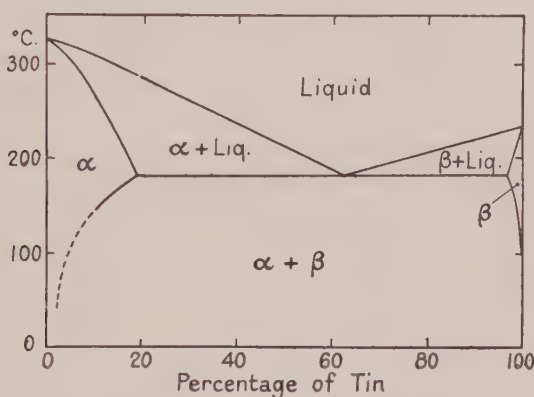


FIG. 24. Constitutional Diagram of the Lead-Tin Alloys.

At 183° C. the solid solubility of tin in lead is 19.5 per cent.
and of lead in tin 2.6 per cent.

spect behaves as a pure substance. Continued separation of either constituent of the eutectic would imply a rise in freezing point of the remaining liquid, a tendency which would be checked by the immediate separation of the other constituent, thus giving rise to the duplex structure which a eutectic shows under the microscope (Pl. 18D). A eutectic (not being homogeneous throughout) is not a phase, but a structural constituent.

Intermediate Phases

When zinc is added to copper, the zinc atoms at first replace copper atoms in the face-centred cubic lattice giving the α solid solution. When the limit of this solution is reached, a new phase, the β solid solution, with a body-centred cubic lattice appears. This,

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

in turn, is succeeded by the γ solid solution having a complicated structure, derived from the body-centred cubic, but with a unit cell of 52 atoms. Then follows the ϵ solid solution which has a hexagonal close-packed structure. The δ -phase is not stable below 560° C. This succession of phases, face-centred cubic (α), body-centred cubic (β), γ -brass structure (γ) and close-packed hexagonal (ϵ) is characteristic of many alloy systems. Sometimes, as in the copper-silicon alloys, the β -brass structure is replaced by the β -manganese structure, a related cubic structure with 20 atoms in the unit cell.

While these intermediate phases vary in composition between certain limits, they approximate to those which can be represented by the following empirical formulae:

β .	γ .	ϵ .
CuZn	Cu ₅ Zn ₈	CuZn ₂
Cu ₉ Al	Cu ₉ Al ₄	—
Cu ₅ Sn	Cu ₃₁ Sn ₈	Cu ₅ Sn

The copper content of successive phases differs widely from one copper alloy system to another, but the succession of structures is the same; and the governing factor was observed by Hume-Rothery to be that the ratio of the number of valency electrons to the total number of atoms is constant for each type of phase. For the β structure this ratio is 3 : 2, copper contributing 1 valency electron. For the γ structure, it is always 21 : 13 and for the ϵ -phase 7 : 4. For example, to take the copper-tin series:

		Electrons.	Atoms.	Ratio.
β	. . . Cu ₅ Sn	5 + 4 = 9	6	3 : 2
γ	. . . Cu ₃₁ Sn ₈	31 + 32 = 63	39	21 : 13
ϵ	. . . Cu ₅ Sn	3 + 4 = 7	4	7 : 4

The formation of a γ structure when the ratio of valency electrons to atoms reaches 21 : 13 is observed also in ternary alloys, so that, for example, in the copper-zinc-aluminium alloys, the typical γ structure and properties are obtained if the composition is chosen to keep the ratio of valency electrons to atoms at the value 21 : 13, required by the Hume-Rothery rule. Although only the copper alloys have been specifically referred to, the Hume-Rothery rule that similar phase structures have the same ratio of electrons to atoms is of wide application.

These intermediate phases are sometimes called "Electron compounds," but there is no sharp line of division between them and chemical compounds which obey the ordinary valency laws.

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

An intermediate phase of invariable composition is generally referred to as an intermetallic compound.

Constitution and Structure

An example of a series of alloys showing both eutectic mixtures and intermetallic compounds is found in the copper-magnesium alloys. The constitutional diagram of these alloys summarizing the data given by cooling curves and microscopical examination is shown in Figs. 25 and 26.

The addition of increasing amounts of copper to pure magnesium results in a progressive depression of the freezing point. If a liquid containing 16 per cent. of copper is allowed to cool, magnesium begins to separate at 585°C. and continues to separate as the temperature falls, leaving the liquid progressively richer in copper until the temperature has fallen to 485°C. , when the remaining liquid, containing 30.7 per cent. of copper, solidifies at a constant temperature (Pl. 19A). Similarly when a liquid containing 37 per cent. of copper is allowed to cool, solidification begins at 512° , but in this instance the solid first separating is the compound Mg_2Cu containing 56.6 per cent. of copper. Thus the liquid this time becomes progressively poorer in copper until the temperature has again fallen to 485°C. , when the remaining liquid will have reached the same composition as before, viz. 30.7 per cent. of copper (Pl. 19C). This composition, having the lowest melting point, is the eutectic alloy (Pl. 19B). All the copper-magnesium alloys containing 0 to 56.6 per cent. of copper consist of the same two phases magnesium and Mg_2Cu , and the eutectic E_1 is a binary eutectic consisting of these two phases. The magnesium phase contains about 0.03 per cent. of copper.

On passing to the copper-rich alloys of the series, it will be noted that the freezing point of pure copper is progressively lowered by the addition of increasing amounts of magnesium. An alloy containing 93.7 per cent. of copper begins to freeze at 858°C. , but the solid separating is not pure copper; it is a solid solution of magnesium in copper containing 1.6 per cent. of magnesium which may be referred to as the α solution. As the temperature falls α continues to separate, but its magnesium content increases until at just above 722°C. (provided that cooling has been slow enough for equilibrium to have been maintained) α solid solution containing 2.6 per cent. of magnesium exists in contact with liquid containing 9.7 per cent. of magnesium in the ratio 3.4 : 3.7 (approximately 1 : 1). On reaching 722°C. all

the remaining liquid solidifies without further change of temperature, forming a eutectic groundmass in which the crystals first formed from the liquid, or primary crystals, are embedded (Pl. 19F). The structure of this eutectic in an alloy containing 8

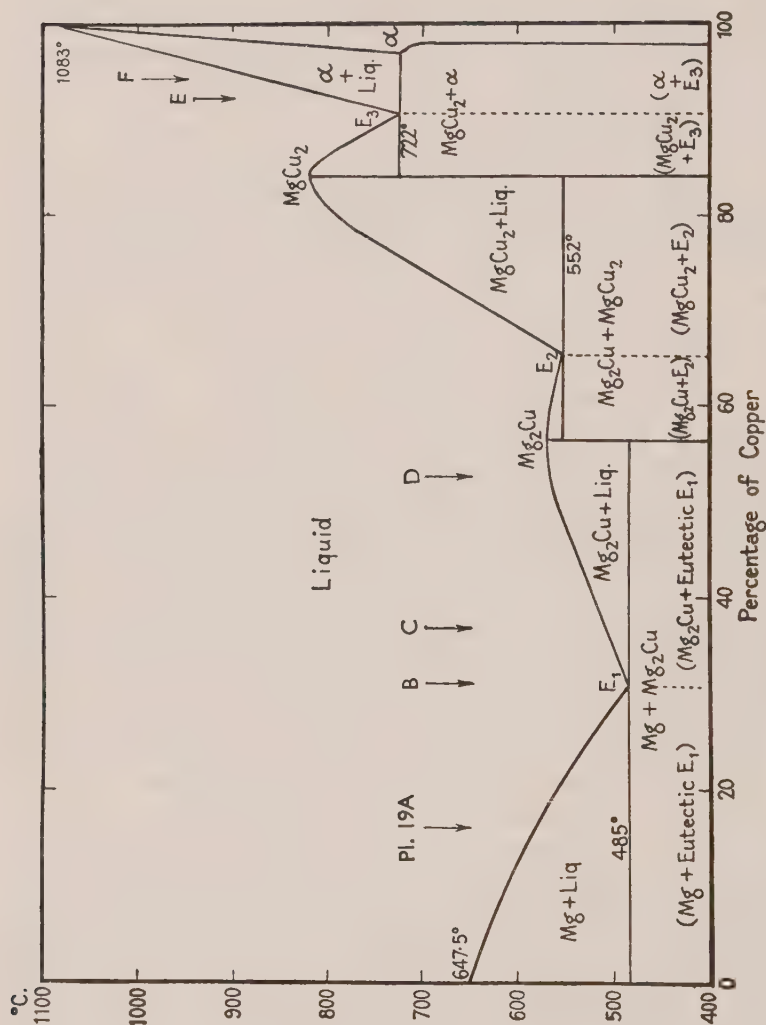


FIG. 25. Constitutional Diagram of the Magnesium-Copper Alloys. (*W. R. D. Jones.*)

per cent. magnesium is shown in Pl. 19E. The alloy containing 9.7 per cent. of magnesium consists wholly of the eutectic of α and MgCu_2 ; it freezes without change of composition at the constant temperature 722°C .

At the eutectic temperature copper will retain 2.6 per cent. of magnesium in solid solution. An alloy containing less than this

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

amount of magnesium should therefore consist of uniform polyhedral grains of a single constituent. If, however, cooling is sufficiently rapid, the liquid remaining after the primary separation of very nearly pure copper is sufficiently enriched in magnesium to form some eutectic. The cast alloy therefore shows solid solution and eutectic (Pl. 19G), though after long annealing to enable diffusion to equalize the composition throughout, it attains its condition of true equilibrium at the annealing temperature and consists of uniform solid solution (Pl. 19H).

In the complete series of copper-magnesium alloys there exist two alloys (containing 56.6 and 83.9 per cent. of copper respectively), which show higher freezing points than neighbouring alloys with slightly more or less copper. If the copper and magnesium contents of the alloys are divided by the atomic weights of these elements (63.6 and 24.3 respectively) it will be seen that the ratio of atoms of magnesium to atoms of copper in the alloys is 2:1 and 1:2. These alloys are the chemical compounds Mg_2Cu and MgCu_2 ; they solidify at a constant temperature to form homogeneous solids and their freezing points are depressed by the addition of either copper or magnesium. They thus behave as pure substances. The compound Mg_2Cu together with a little of the eutectic E_1 is shown in the alloy containing 52.4 per cent. of copper (Pl. 19D). The complete copper-magnesium system can be split up into three simpler systems: alloys with more magnesium than Mg_2Cu can be regarded as alloys of Mg and Mg_2Cu , those with more copper than MgCu_2 as alloys of copper with MgCu_2 , while the two compounds themselves form a system showing a eutectic $\text{Mg}_2\text{Cu}-\text{MgCu}_2$ melting at 552°C . and containing 32.3 per cent. of Mg_2Cu (or 65.4 per cent. of copper).

Some intermetallic compounds separate from the liquid at temperatures not merely higher than the freezing points of alloys of adjacent composition, but higher than the freezing points of either of the component metals. For example, tin freezes at 232°C . and magnesium at 650°C ., but the liquid containing 71 per cent. of tin solidifies completely at about 780°C . to form a

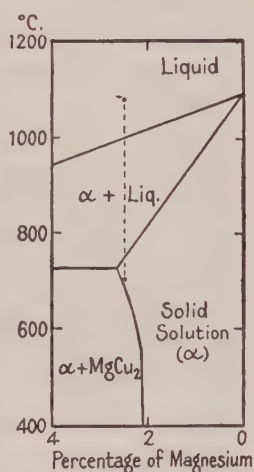


FIG. 26. Part of the Constitutional Diagram (Fig. 25) indicating the Solid Solubility of Magnesium in Copper.

homogeneous solid, the compound Mg_2Sn . The freezing points of aluminium and of nickel are respectively 660° and 1450°C. , but the alloy containing 68 per cent. of nickel has the highest freezing point of any of the series, viz. 1645°C. , and consists of the chemical compound NiAl . Such alloys are not of any industrial utility, but are sometimes a source of trouble. Thus, in making a "hardener" for the introduction of nickel into aluminium alloys, the nickel content is limited in practice to about 20 per cent. on account of the very high melting point of alloys containing more than that amount. Furthermore, nickel must always be slowly added to molten aluminium, for if aluminium is added to nickel, or if a large amount of undissolved nickel is present, the composition of the alloy will, at some stage before melting and mixing is complete, pass through the range in which NiAl is formed and the whole mass will set to a relatively infusible solid.

Chemical compounds which occur in the free state in alloys are very hard and brittle substances. When they form a constituent of industrial alloys they are usually present only in small amounts. In many cases the compound has the property of entering into solid solution with one or both of the components of the system: in other cases it may possess a limited range of stability and only appear in the solid alloy at temperatures considerably below the melting point.

Supersaturated Solid Solutions

A sloping line in the constitutional diagram indicates that the mutual solubility of two phases is progressively changing with change of temperature. Liquid solutions of salts in water usually, but not invariably, show increasing solubility as the temperature is raised, and if the solution is cooled in such a way as to avoid the separation of the solid substance a supersaturated liquid solution is obtained at atmospheric temperature, and by suitable means the excess of dissolved substance may be precipitated or made to crystallize out. Similarly in many alloy systems the limit of saturation of a solid solution decreases with fall of temperature. These solid solutions may often be retained in the supersaturated condition at atmospheric temperature by quenching. Thus a supersaturated α solid solution can be obtained in certain copper-nickel-aluminium and copper-manganese-aluminium alloys, but not in copper-aluminium alloys, since the solid solubility of aluminium in copper increases as the temperature falls, whilst its

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

solubility in the alloys containing nickel or manganese decreases. The structure of a copper-nickel-aluminium solid solution is shown in Pl. 18E. If this alloy is reheated after it has been quenched or if it is slowly cooled instead of being quenched, separation of the excess of the dissolved constituent occurs (Pl. 18F), and the slower the rate of cooling the larger are the separated particles. The effect of this separation of small particles within the original grains of the solid solution is to increase its hardness, and for this reason the process is sometimes known as "precipitation hardening."

The deformation which occurs in a metal or alloy under stress is due to minute movements occurring under shearing stress on the plane surfaces of slip in the crystal grains. Anything which will act as an obstruction to the process of slip will thus raise the stress required to produce a given deformation. In this way separated particles of the dissolved constituent dispersed throughout the crystals will cause an increase in hardness. In general, fine particles cause greater hardening than coarse particles. To obtain the greatest effect the precipitated particles must be of such a size and distribution as to produce maximum interference with the process of slip within the crystal. In other words, the hardening depends on the degree of dispersion of the particles, and is accordingly sometimes known as "dispersion hardening." The lower the temperature at which the solid solution can be induced to break down, the finer will be the particles deposited.

Treatment which consists of rest at atmospheric temperature after quenching is known as "ageing" and the effect as "age-hardening." If reheating is necessary to induce precipitation, the treatment is sometimes known as "artificial ageing," but might preferably be referred to as tempering, the effect produced being "temper-hardening."

This type of hardening is of wide occurrence and was first observed, long before its true character was understood, in the aluminium alloy, Duralumin. It is shown by both ferrous and non-ferrous alloys. Thus carbon can give rise to marked age-hardening in very mild steel quenched from 700° C. The solubility of carbon in α -iron is probably about 0.007 per cent. at atmospheric temperature and 0.035 per cent. at 730° C. (Fig. 27). In a 0.1 per cent. carbon steel, quenched from 700° C. and aged for a month at atmospheric temperature, the elastic limit, tensile strength and hardness may be increased by at least 50 per cent. and the elongation halved, owing to the precipitation of finely divided carbide

(not visible under the microscope) from the supersaturated solid solution. The solubility of nitrogen in iron is 0.5 per cent. at 580° C. and only about 0.01 per cent. at atmospheric temperature, and the age-hardening effect of nitride reinforces that of carbide, especially in Bessemer steels. In these instances the hardness

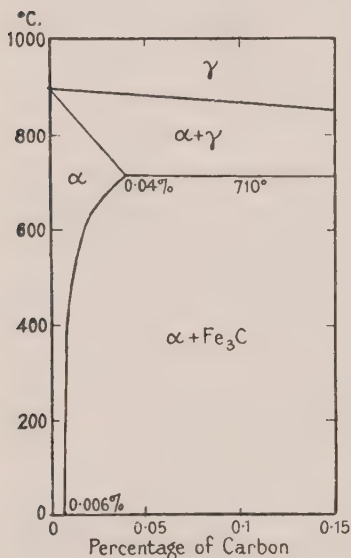


FIG. 27. Constitutional Diagram indicating Solubility of Carbon in α -Iron.

is not increased so much if the temperature is raised above atmospheric. In other iron alloys, e.g. iron-copper or iron-molybdenum, tempering is essential if any effect is to be obtained; precipitation will not occur at atmospheric temperature. In the age-hardening which occurs at atmospheric or slightly raised temperatures (e.g. that of duralumin, p. 187) it is possible to distinguish at least three distinct processes, nucleus formation, ultra-microscopic precipitation and coalescence, of which the first contributes the greatest hardening effect. In alloys which have to be heated to a fairly high temperature to initiate hardening these stages

follow one another so rapidly that a simple precipitation theory is sufficient to account for the observed behaviour. Moreover in practice, in such materials as copper steels coalescence and microscopically visible precipitation are essential if undue brittleness is to be avoided.

The importance of a diminution of solid solubility with fall of temperature as a basis of heat treatment of ferrous and non-ferrous alloys is being increasingly recognized. There is now a very large number of commercial alloys which owe their useful properties to a heat treatment which consists of heating to produce a uniform solid solution (homogenizing or solution treatment) and rapid cooling, followed by reheating at a much lower temperature or resting at room temperature (tempering or ageing).

The Peritectic Transformation in Iron-Carbon Alloys and the Identity of α - and δ -Iron

Reference has been made to the allotropic form of pure iron existing between 1403° C. and the melting point, and known as

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

δ -iron. The temperature range in which it is stable is greatly affected by the presence of other elements, and is rapidly narrowed by the addition of carbon, until it ceases to be present in iron-carbon alloys when the carbon reaches 0.2 per cent.

The diagram showing the region of stability of the solid solution of carbon in δ -iron is given in Fig. 28. The temperature at which the absorption of heat (Ar_4) occurs on cooling rises with increase in carbon content until it reaches 1492°C. and then remains constant. The δ -iron which separates from the liquid steel cannot hold more than 0.08 per cent. of carbon in solid solution: if the steel contains between 0.08 and 0.55 per cent. of carbon solidification is interrupted at 1492°C. by a change in which

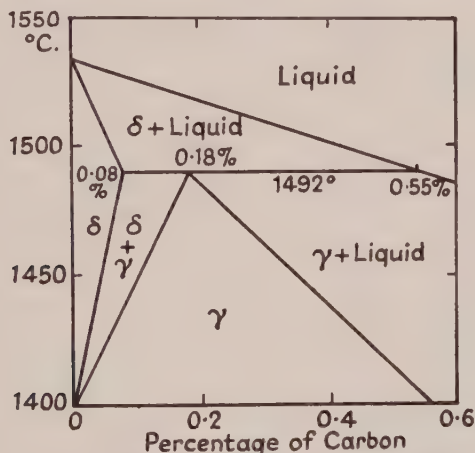


FIG. 28. The δ -Region of the Iron-Carbon Diagram.

two phases, δ and liquid, react to form a single phase γ . This type of change is known as a peritectic transformation. In an alloy having the composition and temperature represented by the peritectic point (0.18 per cent. carbon, 1492°C.) three phases, liquid, δ and γ , may exist together in equilibrium; just as three phases may exist together in equilibrium at a eutectic point, for example magnesium, Mg_2Cu and liquid at the eutectic E_1 , in Fig. 25. With change either of temperature or of composition one, at least, of the three phases must disappear. If the diagram is viewed upside down, the analogy between the peritectic and eutectic points may be seen, the former occurring at a maximum temperature in the series of alloys and the latter at the minimum.

The process of solidification of liquid steel containing 0.13 per cent. of carbon may now be followed. At its freezing point it be-

gins to deposit crystals of δ -iron. At 1493°C . it consists of δ and liquid in the ratio $(0.55-0.13) : (0.13-0.08)$ or $8 : 1$. At the peritectic temperature much of the δ will transform to γ absorbing the carbon necessary to attain the composition 0.18 per cent., from the remaining carbon-rich liquid: so that on complete solidification (if equilibrium has been maintained) the steel contains δ and γ in the ratio $(0.18-0.13) : (0.13-0.08)$ or approximately $1 : 1$. As cooling continues the amount of δ solid solution diminishes until the alloy consists of the γ solid solution only.

It will be clear that much of the peritectic reaction occurs in the solid δ which has already separated, and that with fairly rapid

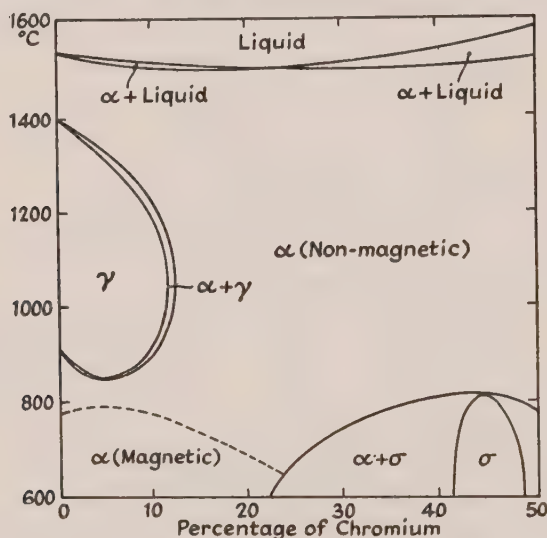


FIG. 29. The γ -Loop of the Iron-Chromium Diagram.

cooling there may not be an opportunity for attaining complete equilibrium. The peritectic change may have a bearing on the sub-surface structure of low-carbon steel ingots but its influence has not yet been fully investigated.

In the practical heat treatment of carbon steel the A_4 transformation is too remote from the temperatures normally used to be of consequence, and δ -iron is only of importance in certain high alloy steels. The fact that α - and δ -iron are shown by X-ray crystal analysis to possess the same structure received a complete explanation when the addition of certain elements to pure iron came to be studied. It has been found, for example, that the addition of silicon to iron progressively raises the A_3 point and lowers the A_4 point, thus narrowing the range of temperature within which

PLATES

18 - 24

A. Chill cast Monel metal. Composition : Nickel about 70 per cent., copper about 27 per cent. with appreciable amounts of iron and manganese.

It consists of dendritic crystals of the copper–nickel solid solution which solidified first : as solidification proceeded the remaining liquid became richer in copper and finally solidified forming the dark etching interdendritic material.

Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. × 100.

B. Monel metal, rolled and annealed at 900° C., consisting of polyhedral grains of a single solid solution, sometimes showing twinning. The difference in shade of the grains is partly due to the formation of a film or patina on some of the crystals, and is partly an optical effect due to different orientation of the rather deeply etched faces of the grains with respect to the axis of the microscope.

Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. × 100.

C. Monel metal, rolled and annealed at 900° C. A clearer and more uniform etch obtained with a 2 : 1 : 1 mixture of nitric acid, acetic acid and water. × 100.

D. Alloy containing 62 per cent. of tin and 38 per cent. of lead, showing the tin–lead eutectic. Etched in nitric and acetic acids in glycerol. × 100.

Temper-hardening of a quenched alloy.

E. A hot-rolled copper–aluminium–nickel alloy (copper 87·5 per cent., aluminium 7 per cent., nickel 5·5 per cent.), quickly cooled from 900° C. It consists of polyhedral grains of a single solid solution, showing twinning.

Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. × 100.

F. The same alloy, quickly cooled from 900° C., reheated to 700° C. for three hours and cooled in air, showing precipitation of a second constituent throughout the solid solution with consequent increase in hardness.

Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. × 500.

Effect of temper-hardening on the mechanical properties.

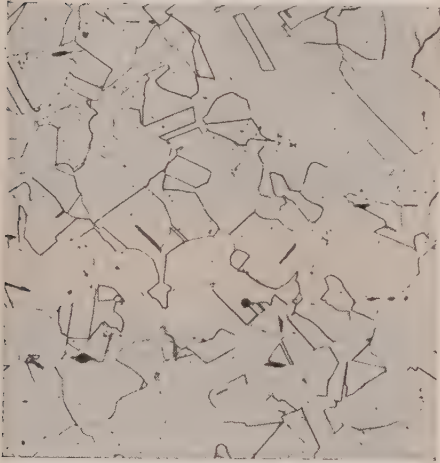
	E.	F.
Yield point, tons per sq. in.	8·6	22·7
Maximum load, tons per sq. in.	29·2	43·2
Elongation per cent. on 2 in.	73	26
Impact figure, ft.-lb. (Charpy machine, B.S.I. test-piece)	150	48



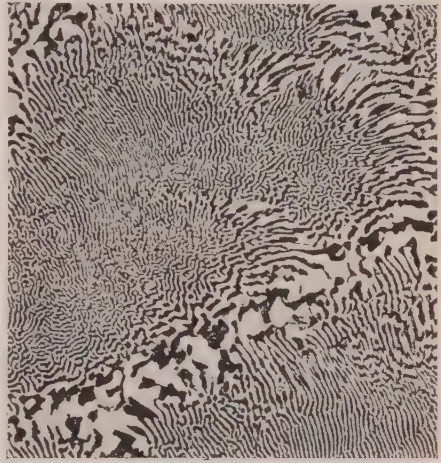
A



B



C



D



E

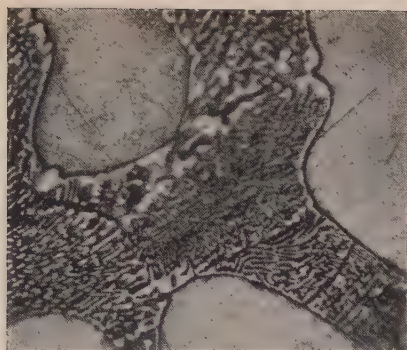


F

Copper–magnesium alloys.

Etched with nitric acid in alcohol of concentration 0·5 per cent. for the magnesium-rich alloys and 2 per cent. for the copper-rich alloys.

- A. 16 per cent. copper. Dendritic crystals of magnesium surrounded by the eutectic of Mg and Mg_2Cu . × 250.
- B. 30·7 per cent. copper. The alloy consists entirely of the eutectic of Mg and Mg_2Cu . × 250.
- C. 37 per cent. copper. Plate-like crystals of the compound Mg_2Cu embedded in the eutectic of Mg and Mg_2Cu . × 50.
- D. 52·4 per cent. copper. Large grains of the compound Mg_2Cu (containing 56·6 per cent. copper) surrounded by a small amount of the eutectic of Mg and Mg_2Cu . × 50.
- E. 92 per cent. copper. Dendrites of solid solution of magnesium in copper surrounded by the eutectic of this solid solution and MgCu_2 . × 250.
- F. 93·7 per cent. copper. Similar to E. × 50.
The structures shown in A to F are those of the alloys as cast and slowly cooled.
- G. 97·5 per cent. copper, 2·5 per cent. magnesium. Chill cast ingot, consisting mainly of solid solution of magnesium in copper with a small amount of the eutectic of this solid solution and MgCu_2 . × 250.
- H. The same material as shown in G after being heated at 680° C. for 72 hours and quenched in water. It now consists entirely of solid solution. × 250.



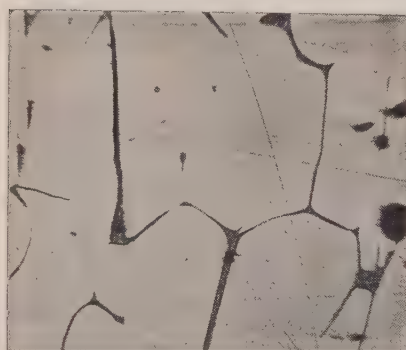
A



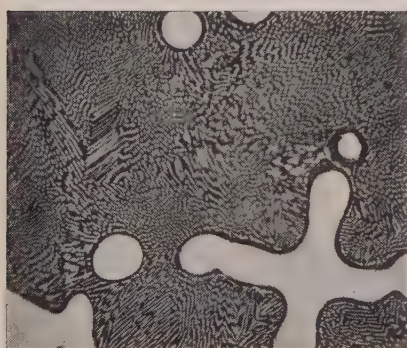
B



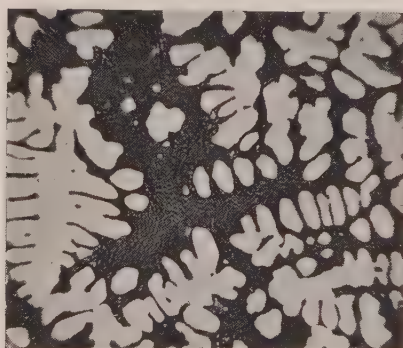
C



D



E



F



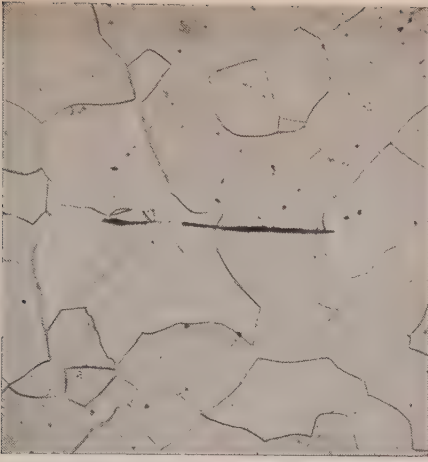
All etched with nitric acid solutions. Magnification 250 diameters

A to E. Wrought iron, consisting of grains of ferrite and slag.

- A. Swedish bar iron, longitudinal section, showing streaks of slag cutting through ferrite grains.
- B. Swedish bar iron, transverse section, showing slag dots, i.e. sections across pencils of slag.
- C. Lowmoor iron, longitudinal section. Rather deeply etched—slag corroded, and ferrite grains tinted.
- D. Lowmoor iron, transverse section. Etched with stronger acid. The slag dots have been corroded, giving in many cases pits of geometrical outline.
- E. Best Staffordshire iron, transverse section. Slag more plentiful than in the other brands shown.
- F. Mild steel with carbon 0.09 per cent., after deformation by an explosive charge. The ferrite grains show Neumann bands.

In this connection see F. B. Foley and S. P. Howell, "Neumann Bands as Evidence of the Action of Explosives upon Metal," *Transactions of the American Institute of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers*, Sept. 1922.

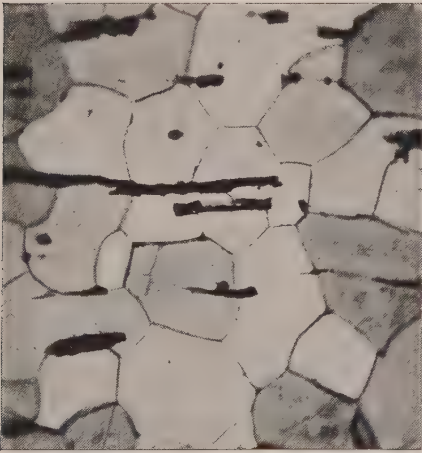
The formation of Neumann bands in α -iron is generally regarded as a type of mechanical twinning whereby narrow twin crystals are produced. It is favoured by increasing the rate, or lowering the temperature, at which the metal is strained. Neumann bands are produced in mild steel by explosive impact at room temperature, or by stretching in tension at a temperature of -120° C. or below. The temperature at which they appear is raised by increasing the rate of strain, but their formation is inhibited if the steel has already been subjected to plastic deformation; see W. Rosenhain and J. McMinn, "The Plastic Deformation of Iron and the Formation of Neumann Lines," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1925, vol. A, 108, p. 231—and for more recent references: "Work-hardening of Mild Steel under Explosive Impact," *The Engineer*, Oct. 26, 1951, p. 526; "Mechanical Twinning and Fracture," *The Engineer*, July 29, 1955, p. 156.



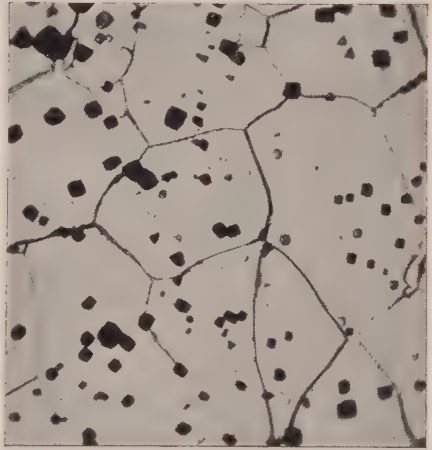
A



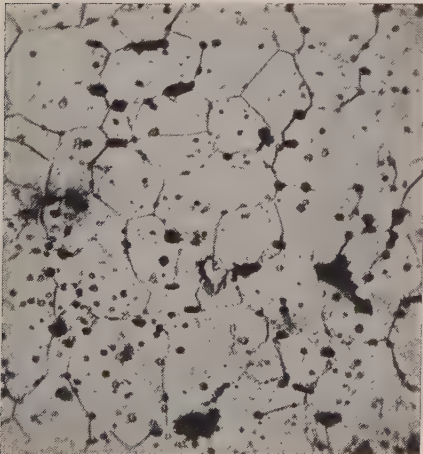
B



C



D



E



F

Normalized and annealed carbon steels.

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 100 diameters.

- A. Carbon 0.15 per cent. Normalized.
- B. " 0.3 " "
- C. " 0.3 " Annealed.
- D. " 0.45 " Normalized.
- E. " 0.6 " "
- F. " 0.9 " "

The light-etching constituent decreasing in amount with increase of carbon content is ferrite. The dark-etching constituent is pearlite which at higher powers has the appearance shown in Pl. 22E and F.

Tensile Properties of the Steels illustrated

Steels with less than 0.2 per cent. Manganese.	Yield Point, tons per sq. in.	Maxi- mum Load, tons per sq. in.	Elonga- tion per cent. on 2 in.	Reduc- tion of Area, per cent.
<i>Normalized steels.</i>				
Pl. 21A. C. 0.15 per cent.	15	25	40	65
" 21B. " 0.3 "	16	28	35	60
" 21D. " 0.45 "	19	36	26	40
" 21E. " 0.6 "	20	43	20	20
" 21F. " 0.9 "	25	53	13	15
" 22A. " 1.20 "	36	62	8	8
" 22C. " 1.47 "	32	56	3	3
<i>Annealed steels.</i>				
Pl. 21C. C. 0.3 per cent.	9	21	50	75
" 22E. " 0.89 "	17	37	4	4
" 22D. " 1.47 "	10	22	19	18
<i>Normalized steel with 1.2 per cent. manganese.</i>				
Pl. 22F. C. 0.8 per cent.	40	68	15	15

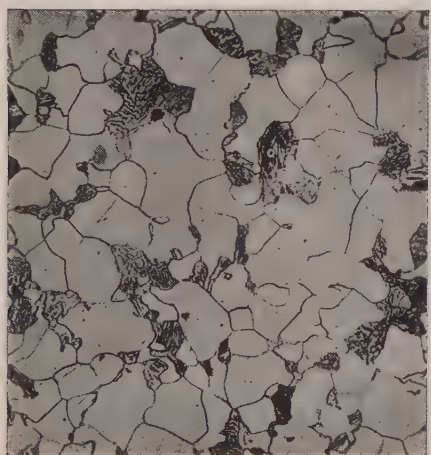
The "Yield Point" in this Table, and in all subsequent Tables recording tensile properties, is the load giving a permanent extension of 0.2 per cent.



A



B



C



D



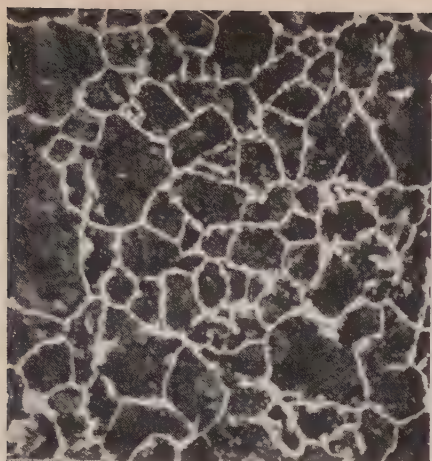
E



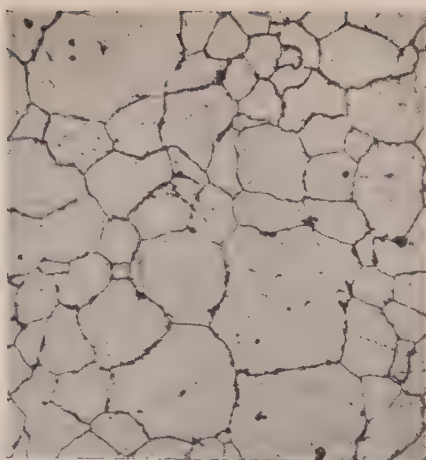
F

Normalized and annealed carbon steels.

- A. Carbon 1.2 per cent., normalized; showing a white network of cementite, enclosing grains of pearlite.
Etched with a 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- B. The same steel etched with a boiling alkaline solution of sodium picrate. This reagent darkens the cementite, hence the reversal of etching effect. The darkened striæ in the lamellar pearlite are very fine and are not visible at this magnification. × 100.
- C. Carbon 1.47 per cent. normalized, showing cementite (white network and needles) and pearlite.
Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- D. The same steel after annealing for seventy-two hours at 800° C. The carbide has decomposed, giving nodules of graphite (black) embedded in ferrite grains, with some coarse pearlite remaining.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- E. Eutectoid steel, containing 0.89 per cent. of carbon and very free from all impurities, annealed and slowly cooled, showing well-formed laminated pearlite.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 1000
- F. Steel containing 0.8 per cent. carbon and 1.2 per cent. manganese. Normalized, showing fine lamellar and sorbitic pearlite.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 1000.



A



B



C



D



E



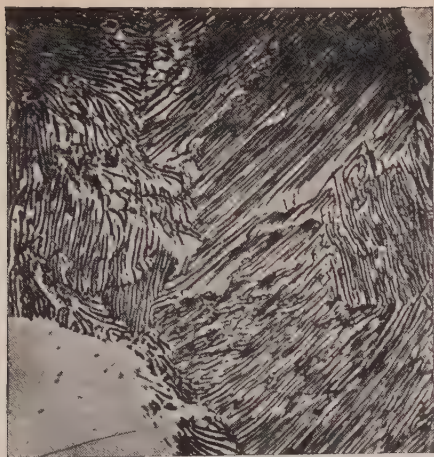
F

The structure of pearlite in carbon steels containing 0.45 per cent. carbon.

Magnification, 1000 diameters.

- A. Normalized. Ferrite and lamellar pearlite.
- B. Cooled slowly through the critical range. Ferrite with lamellar and granular pearlite.
- C. Cooled very slowly through the critical range. Ferrite and granular pearlite.
- D. Cold-worked, reheated to A_{c1} for several hours and slowly cooled. Globular cementite in a ground-mass of ferrite.
- E. Ferrite and coarse lamellar pearlite, balling up into coalesced particles of cementite.
All the above were etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
- F. The same steel as in E, etched with boiling alkaline solution of sodium picrate. The cementite is blackened.

The effect of the changes illustrated in A to E on the mechanical properties is to decrease the hardness, elastic limit, yield point, maximum load and ratio of yield point to maximum load. The elongation may be increased and the cold bend test remains satisfactory, but the impact figure is usually reduced.



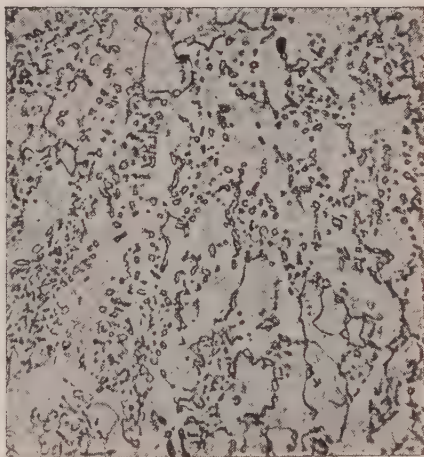
A



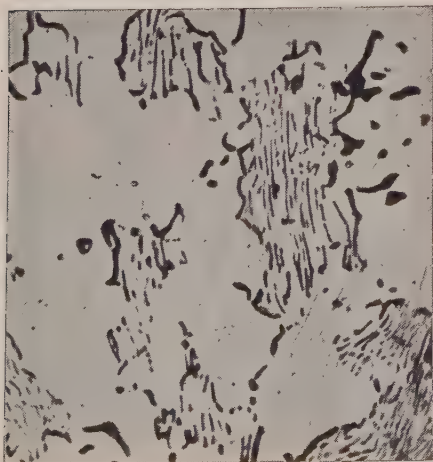
B



C



D



E



F

Carbon steel.

Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 100 diameters

- A. Steel billet, containing carbon 0.32 per cent., manganese 0.70 per cent., heated to the forging temperature and cooled, but not forged ; showing Widmanstätten structure of ferrite (light) and pearlite (dark).
- B. Steel containing carbon 0.4 per cent., manganese 0.75 per cent., overheated and slowly cooled, showing a coarse structure of ferrite and pearlite.
- C. The same steel normalized and its grain size refined, showing a ferrite network enclosing grains of pearlite.

The effect on the properties is as follows :—

	<i>As in B.</i>		<i>As in C.</i>
Elastic limit, tons per sq. in.	.	14	20
Yield point, „ „	.	19	23
Maximum load, „ „	.	40	42
Elongation per cent. on 2 in.	.	24	29
Reduction of area per cent.	.	41	49
Izod impact figure, ft.-lb.	.	6	18



A



B



C

STRUCTURE OF PURE METALS AND OF ALLOYS

γ -iron can exist, until, in the presence of 2 per cent. of silicon, its region of stability is reduced to a few degrees and with a little more silicon it cannot exist at all. The stable condition below A_3 merges into that above A_4 , and the alloy consists of α -iron (with silicon in solid solution) at all temperatures between atmospheric and the melting point. The following are some of the elements which have a similar effect in their alloys with iron, the percentage given being approximately that at which the γ phase ceases to have any range of stability, and α remains the sole constituent right up to the melting point (Fig. 29).

Element.	Al.	Si.	P.	V.	Cr.	Mo.	W.
Percentage	1.0	2.2	0.55	1.2	11.6	3.0	6.0

In alloys containing less than the percentages given above, the conversion of α to γ may not be complete, as the γ -loop is bounded by a region (varying in width in different systems) in which both phases exist together in equilibrium. These figures refer to the pure binary alloys; the presence of carbon, manganese, nickel and some other elements extends the region in which the γ phase is stable in these alloys.

If iron is heated to a temperature just above Ac_3 recrystallization occurs with refinement of grain size, but in the presence of elements which eliminate the change from α to γ no such refinement is possible. The crystals of the α -iron solid solution continue to increase in size with increasing temperature. This fact is of great importance in considering the effect of heat treatment on the properties of alloys of iron containing large amounts of the elements referred to above.

CHAPTER VI

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF INGOT IRON AND WROUGHT IRON

THE purest forms of iron, as already mentioned, consist entirely of ferrite (Pl. 1E and 17E). Certain impurities may be present in small amount in the iron without the formation of another constituent in the microstructure: they are retained in solid solution in the ferrite. Such, for example, are phosphorus, manganese and silicon. Carbon, however, even in small amounts separates in a manner which will be described in the next chapter.

Hence malleable or wrought iron, which in its purest forms contains very little carbon (say 0.05 per cent.), consists essentially of ferrite but the properties of this micro-constituent are profoundly influenced not only by impurities in solution, but by the presence of slag (silicates and oxides) which is characteristic of wrought iron. This slag is the most marked micrographical distinction between wrought iron produced in the pasty condition (puddling process) and ingot iron or dead mild steel produced in the liquid state. As the puddled iron is rolled these masses of slag become elongated, and then have an important effect on the properties of the metal. The slag occurs in pencils drawn out in the direction of rolling and visible in the transverse section as round greyish dots, but in the longitudinal sections as streaks; while the mass of metal consists of irregular grains of ferrite, which although deformed in rolling are no longer elongated, because the temperature at which the rolling has been done was sufficiently high to permit the ferrite crystals to re-form.

Of commercial wrought irons, Swedish Bar Iron is most free from slag inclusions (Pl. 20A, B). The best brands of English malleable iron, best Yorkshire iron (e.g. Lowmoor iron, Pl. 20C, D), show a similar microstructure, but as a rule contain more slag. Staffordshire irons (Pl. 20E) contain even larger amounts of slag, and their structure is also often modified by the presence of a certain amount of carbon forming the constituent pearlite which is met with in steels.

The tensile strength of ingot iron or dead mild steel is 19 to 23 tons per sq. in., with an elongation of 40 per cent. or more, on

INGOT IRON AND WROUGHT IRON

2 in.; wrought iron has a tensile strength of 22 to 26 tons per sq. in., with an elongation of about 30 to 40 per cent. on a 2-in. test-piece. The strength of a wrought-iron plate is greater along the grain (i.e. in the direction of the rolling) than across the grain, and this difference is more pronounced the further the rolling is carried. It may be bent double without fracture either hot or cold, and if of good quality is very tough. Here again the effect of the grain is evident, for it is far more resistant to bending about an axis perpendicular to the grain than about one parallel to that direction.

If a bar of wrought iron is nicked with a file and then bent by hammering, it should break with a fibrous fracture. The "fibres" are not merely the slag streaks—these can often be distinguished in the fracture by means of a lens—but they are grains of pure iron, elongated by bending, in which the slag is embedded. The ferrite of a good tough specimen of wrought iron normally undergoes extensive deformation before fracture. If the iron is broken by a sudden blow, the fracture may be complete before there has been time for such elongation, and a "crystalline" fracture results. An excessively coarse grain size due to overheating (p. 93), or the presence of too much phosphorus or sulphur, causes iron to break with a crystalline fracture and low elongation, even when slag fibres are present to interrupt the path of the fracture.

The chief impurities present in wrought iron are:

Carbon. This is usually under 0.15 per cent., but may rise to 0.25 per cent. In this case the tensile strength is raised and the elongation diminished. The metal begins to resemble steel, and shows signs of hardening on quenching in water from a red-heat. The presence of carbon (as carbide of iron) is revealed by the microscope (Chapter VII).

Sulphur is not often present in excessive amounts, but it may be injurious even in small quantities. Some will be contained in the slag, but if it occurs in the metal as sulphide of iron (the manganese content being very low) it renders the iron brittle both when hot and when cold.

Silicon is always present partly in the slag and partly dissolved in the ferrite as silicide of iron, and so unrecognized under the microscope. A figure above which the total silicon becomes injurious cannot be laid down, the dissolved silicon having a far greater effect than that occurring in the slag as silicate of iron.

Phosphorus is always present, and here again its action depends

on its distribution between slag and iron in which it occurs as phosphide, Fe_3P , dissolved in the ferrite, rendering the metal brittle.

Uneven distribution of phosphorus or of silicon in the iron may result in the presence throughout the bar of streaks of metal containing a sufficiently high content of these elements to eliminate the α to γ change on heating. Hence, when the metal is annealed, excessive grain growth occurs in place of the usual refinement, thus giving rise to defective layers of so-called "burnt iron." *

Synthetic wrought iron is made by incorporating slag into a spongy mass of solidifying mild steel which is then forged and rolled in the same way as wrought iron. It cannot be distinguished microscopically from wrought iron, but its manganese content (about 0.3 per cent.) is always higher than that of puddled bar, which rarely contains more than 0.1 per cent. of manganese and never more than 0.15 per cent.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The usual method, finishing off with alumina, wet.

Transverse and longitudinal sections should be examined.

The polished surface of a longitudinal section often shows slag streaks, visible to the naked eye.

Etching

A 5 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol or a saturated solution of picric acid in alcohol. Time required $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 minute.

Longer treatment with weaker solutions of nitric acid often results in coloration of the grains. The coloration alters with time and strength of acid, owing to the more rapid formation or subsequent dissolution of an oxide film on the surface of the grains. It is influenced by the impurities present in solid solution, e.g. phosphide or silicide of iron.

Reagents for detecting the distribution of phosphorus are referred to on p. 140.

It is often difficult to obtain ferrite grains in wrought iron free from minute black specks or pits. These may be due to tiny slag or oxide spots, but they are more frequently caused by imperfect

* H. J. Gough and A. J. Murphy: "Defective Laminations in Wrought-iron," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1931 (1), vol. 123, p. 285.

INGOT IRON AND WROUGHT IRON

polishing or too violent an etching agent. Etching proceeds more slowly but more regularly in alcoholic than in aqueous solutions.

If a section of iron is deeply etched with nitric acid or with a 10 per cent. solution of cupric ammonium chloride in water, pits are formed in the ferrite, and often show a geometrical pattern illustrating the truly crystalline symmetry of the polyhedral grains.

CHAPTER VII

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS, AND THE EFFECT OF HOT- AND COLD-WORK

THE addition of carbon to iron results in the most remarkable and valuable series of alloys known; and in the study of steel and cast iron and of the complex changes they undergo through variation of composition and of heat treatment, the iron-carbon equilibrium or constitutional diagram will serve as a guide to the correct interpretation of the microstructures observed. An equilibrium diagram deals only with stable phases in equilibrium, and nearly all the constituents of hardened steel are in this sense unstable, though their tendency to revert to equilibrium conditions is inappreciable at atmospheric temperature. Such a diagram is further limited to equilibrium between pure components; and the influence of impurities or of special elements in steel is not indicated by the iron-carbon diagram. Nevertheless the constitutional diagram provides a basis on which all the micro-constituents of steel may be classified and for practical purposes furnishes a temperature chart which summarizes in a broad and general way the effect of heat treatment on the structural constituents, and through these on the mechanical properties of the steel.

The complete diagram up to 5 per cent. of carbon is included later (Fig. 36): the portion which concerns steels below 1000°C . is given in Fig. 30.

It may be useful to trace in this diagram the changes which occur on cooling pure carbon steels of varying carbon content from temperatures above the upper limit of the critical range, at which the steel consists of a solid solution of carbide of iron (or carbon) in γ -iron. For this reason more weight is given in Fig. 30 to the position of the critical points on cooling, which are often 30 or 40 degrees below those obtained on heating.

Cooling of a 0.3 per cent. Carbon Steel

On reaching a temperature of about 804°C . the uniform rate of cooling suffers an arrest (A_r_3), since heat begins to be evolved

NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS

while the solid solution deposits α -iron in the non-magnetic (β) condition. The first separation of ferrite takes place in the grain boundaries of the γ -iron solid solution, and a network develops by gradual deposition of the ferrite at the boundaries of each grain. The solid solution remaining enclosed in the network becomes richer in carbon, and as the temperature falls more ferrite is deposited, the solid solution at any temperature always containing a limiting amount of carbon represented by points on the line GOS. On reaching 768°C . a second arrest (Ar_2) occurs, associated with the change of the α -iron from the non-magnetic to the magnetic

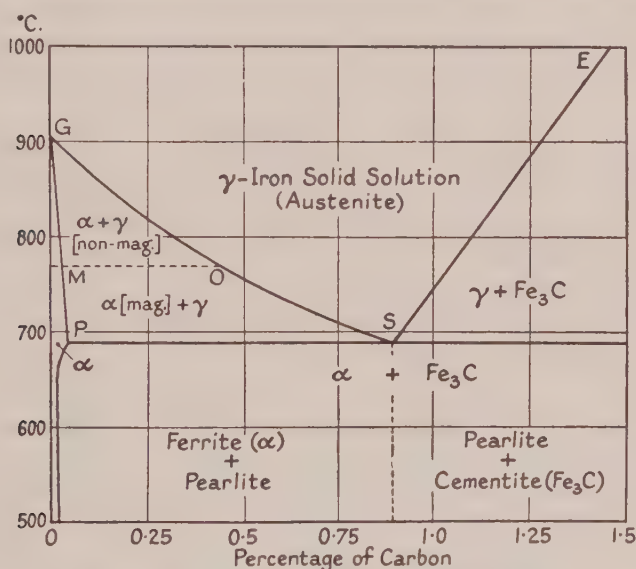


FIG. 30. Part of the Iron-Carbon Constitutional Diagram.
Based on critical points on cooling.
For solid solubility of carbon in α -iron, see Fig. 27.

condition. Below this temperature the ferrite continues to be deposited in the magnetic condition.

On reaching 690°C . the remaining solid solution, represented by the point S, contains 0.9 per cent. of carbon. Here a considerable arrest (Ar_1) occurs in the rate of cooling while the solid solution breaks down into pearlite, the eutectoid mixture of α -iron (ferrite) and carbide of iron, Fe_3C (cementite).

Cooling of a 0.5 per cent. Carbon Steel

The first arrest, Ar_3 , now occurs at a lower temperature (750°C .), and the magnetic change point is coincident with it. The γ -iron solid solution deposits magnetic α -iron direct. Strictly speak-

ing, therefore, there is no Ar_2 point, though this point is often regarded as merged into Ar_3 , which is referred to as Ar_{23} . Further cooling, with deposition of ferrite from the solid solution, takes place until the remaining solution reaches the eutectoid composition, when Ar_1 occurs at about the same temperature as before (690°C.), but with a greater evolution of heat on account of the greater amount of carbon present.

Cooling of a 0.9 per cent. Carbon Steel

In this steel no change occurs in constitution until Ar_1 is reached. The solid solution is exactly of eutectoid composition, and at Ar_1 (690°C.) it breaks down into pearlite with a still larger evolution of heat than occurs in the lower carbon steels.

Cooling of a 1.3 per cent. Carbon Steel

On reaching a temperature of about 860°C. , cementite or carbide of iron (Fe_3C) separates from the solid solution in a similar manner to the ferrite of a low-carbon steel. It forms a network enclosing grains of solid solution which on cooling become poorer in carbon and finally, on reaching Ar_1 , attain the eutectoid composition and break down into pearlite.

Microstructure of Normalized or Annealed Steels

By *normalizing* is meant reheating a steel (however previously treated) to a temperature exceeding the upper limit of the critical range and allowing it to cool freely in air.

By *annealing* is meant reheating a steel for an appreciable time at a temperature exceeding the upper limit of the critical range, followed by slow cooling.*

The structure of normalized and of annealed steels consists of ferrite or cementite enclosing grains of pearlite. Pl. 21 and 22 show a series of normalized and of annealed steels of increasing carbon content.

The grain size of annealed steel is usually considerably larger than that of normalized steel. This is most frequently due to the higher maximum temperature employed in annealing, but even when the same maximum temperature is used the annealed steel will generally have a slightly larger grain size on account of the longer time it is maintained at that temperature. A more important difference between a steel in the normalized and in the

* In general, *to anneal* means to soften or toughen by heating, but in the case of steel, *annealing* has the specialized meaning given above to distinguish it from *tempering* (p. 98). There are other specialized meanings indicated by the context, e.g. low-temperature annealing (pp. 94, 164).

NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS

annealed condition is to be found in the character and extent of the pearlite areas.

Pearlite was so called on account of the iridescent colours it shows and its resemblance to mother-of-pearl when viewed by oblique illumination. It consists of alternate lamellæ of ferrite and cementite (Pl. 22E), and contains a little under 0.9 per cent. of carbon. Annealed steels containing less than 0.9 per cent. of carbon (hypo-eutectoid steels) consist of pearlite and ferrite: those with more than 0.9 per cent. carbon (hyper-eutectoid steels) contain pearlite and cementite. Since the whole of the carbon of a hypo-eutectoid steel (except less than 0.01 per cent., dissolved in the ferrite) is in the pearlite, the relative proportion of pearlite to ferrite in a pure carbon steel is as x is to $(0.9 - x)$ where x is the percentage of carbon present. Thus, a 0.3 per cent. carbon steel should contain $\frac{1}{3}$ pearlite and $\frac{2}{3}$ ferrite; and a 0.45 per cent. carbon steel should contain $\frac{1}{2}$ pearlite and $\frac{1}{2}$ ferrite. These figures apply only to slowly cooled pure carbon steels. For a given carbon content the proportion of pearlite to ferrite is increased by a more rapid rate of cooling, or by an increase in manganese (always present in commercial steels). Both of these impede the formation of lamellar pearlite, while manganese also has the effect of reducing the amount of carbon in the eutectoid.

Before making an estimate from the microstructure of the percentage of carbon present, the steel should be annealed (care being taken that no decarburization occurs) and the probable effect of the manganese must be allowed for.

The difference in microscopical character of the pearlite of normalized and of annealed steels depends on the respective rates of cooling through the critical range. When the rate of cooling has been moderately rapid, complete lamination of the pearlite may not occur. An extremely fine and, at moderate magnification (e.g. 500), almost structureless pearlite is thus produced, which may be referred to as **sorbitic pearlite**. (Pl. 9, 28E and 29A). When properly resolved under the microscope it bears little resemblance to sorbite, a constituent of hardened and tempered steels, which will be described later. This type of pearlite is induced by certain additions to the pure carbon steels, e.g. manganese. At low magnifications it has a brownish velvety appearance, and at very high magnifications is only partially resolved. Mechanically it is the strongest type of pearlite, and confers on a steel high elastic limit and considerable hardness.

The pearlite of normalized steel is finely lamellar (Pl. 23A);

that of annealed steel, cooled more slowly through the critical range, is more coarsely laminated (Pl. 22E), but very coarse laminæ are structurally unstable and tend to ball up into coalesced particles of cementite in a groundmass of ferrite (Pl. 23B to F). Increasing coarseness of the lamellar structure is accompanied by reduction in elastic limit, yield point and hardness.

By heating pearlite at temperatures just below A_{c1} (e.g. at 700°C.) for long times, or by employing a slow rate of cooling through the critical range, **granular pearlite**, consisting of coalesced particles of carbide in a groundmass of ferrite, may be produced (Pl. 23B, c). Prolonged treatment at 700° (especially in cold-worked steel) leads to the formation of **globular cementite**, in which the carbide has balled up completely into comparatively large masses (Pl. 23D). In this condition the steel has the minimum hardness, and the lowest elastic limit and yield point possible for a given percentage of carbon. Hence this structure is frequently aimed at as a preliminary to severe cold-working of steel, e.g. spinning, cupping or the production of thin strip. The normal character of the pearlite can at any time be restored by heating the steel to a temperature well above the upper limit of the critical range and cooling in air (cf. Pl. 26E, F).

Cementite is a carbide of iron of the formula Fe_3C . It may occur in steel as free cementite (massive, network or globular) or as a constituent of the eutectoid, pearlite. Free cementite may occur in massive form in a low-carbon steel which has been cold-worked and subsequently annealed at about the temperature of A_{c1} (Pl. 31B). It always exists in annealed steels with over 0.9 per cent. of carbon and occurs in the form of a continuous network in normalized steels with more than 1 per cent. of carbon (Pl. 22A). Such a network of unyielding and brittle material has a detrimental influence on the strength and elongation of the steel. In very high carbon steels the network begins to form at a high temperature. If forging or rolling is continued to break up the network, and if the normalizing temperature is insufficient to effect solution of the separated cementite, elongated or possibly rounded grains of cementite occur in the steel (Pl. 22C and 25A). In these forms, cementite, while retaining its hardening effect, has a less harmful effect on the elongation, and shows less tendency to embrittle the steel.

Prolonged heating of high-carbon steel at about 800°C. causes decomposition of cementite into graphite and ferrite (Pl. 22D). The steel then gives a black fracture. Black tool-steel, heated to

NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS

bright redness for a short time and quenched, is found to be fully hardened, showing that the carbon has re-dissolved, but the quality of the steel is permanently impaired.

On account of its great hardness, cementite frequently remains in relief in the polished section, and both "relief polishing" and "polish attack" may be used to display the microstructure of steels containing cementite. It is coloured brown or brownish black by etching with boiling sodium picrate solution, while ferrite remains unattacked (Pl. 22B and 23F).

Cementite may in certain circumstances closely resemble ferrite in appearance, but it may readily be distinguished from ferrite by:

- (1) Its appearance in relief. This may be detected under vertical illumination by difference in focus of the cementite particles and of the groundmass.
- (2) The fact that strong etching with nitric acid stains ferrite, but leaves cementite quite bright.
- (3) Its behaviour with the sodium picrate reagent.
- (4) The fact that it rarely shows scratches. If a scratch is made on the specimen, it broadens in passing from pearlite to ferrite, but becomes narrow or disappears in passing across cementite.

Mechanical Properties

With increase of pearlite (i.e. increase of carbon up to 0.9 per cent.) the hardness, tensile strength and elastic limit of steel increase, while elongation, reduction of area, and shock-resisting properties diminish. This change in properties is reflected in the uses to which untreated steels of various compositions are put:

Carbon. Per cent.	Manganese. Per cent.	Approximate percentage of pearlite in the steel as used.	Uses.
0.10	0.3	10	Thin sheet, tinplate, etc.
0.15-0.20	0.5	20	Structural purposes, ship's plates.
0.20-0.25	0.5	25	Boiler plate.
0.30-0.35	0.7	40	Axles.
0.55-0.75	0.7	70-90	Tyres.
0.50-0.60	1.0	70	Rails.
0.60-0.65	1.0	80	Tramway rails.
0.65-0.75	0.8	90-100	High tensile wire.

Steels containing more than about 0.7 per cent. carbon are rarely used in the unhardened condition.

It is possible to form an approximate estimate from the micro-

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

structure of the strength of normalized or annealed carbon steels, based on the following figures (given by Arnold) for the properties of the constituents.

Micro-constituent.	Tensile strength. Tons per sq. in.	Elongation. Per cent. on 2 in.
Sorbitic pearlite	70	10
Normal lamellar pearlite	55	15
Laminated pearlite	35	5
Ferrite	22	40

Thus for a steel consisting of p per cent. of normal lamellar pearlite, and f per cent. of ferrite,

$$\text{the approximate tensile strength} = \frac{1}{100} (22f + 55p) \text{ tons per sq. in.}$$

$$\text{and the approximate elongation} = \frac{1}{100} (40f + 15p) \text{ per cent. on 2 in.}$$

Such formulæ take no account of the influence of inclusions and are, of course, no guide to the properties of cold-worked material.

Austenitic Grain Size in Steel

At temperatures above the upper limit of the critical range a steel exists as the γ -iron solid solution, consisting, as in the case of solid solutions stable at ordinary temperatures, of polyhedral grains. The passage from solid solution to ferrite and pearlite occurs on cooling without alteration of the grain size.

The ferrite is deposited in the grain boundaries of the solid solution, and if the cooling is sufficiently slow and the grain size is not too large a complete separation of ferrite in the form of a network occurs, enclosing grains which are entirely pearlitic.

If, however, the grains are very large, the rate of cooling may not be sufficiently slow to enable all the ferrite to diffuse to the grain boundaries. It then tends to separate within the grains, usually along the cleavage planes.

Such a structure was first observed in meteorites, and is known as the Widmanstätten structure. It is found in a more or less pronounced state in steel castings and in steel which has been cooled from a very high temperature without being worked (Pl. 24A, B and Pl. 25B).

On reheating a steel to a temperature immediately above A_{c3} recrystallization with refinement of grain takes place (Pl. 17F) as the solid solution is again formed, but as a rule the higher the

NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS

temperature, above A_{c3} , to which a steel has been heated the larger will be the grain size. The time for which the temperature is maintained has some effect, but the rate of growth after a short time becomes small compared with the influence of increasing temperature on the grain size. So much is this the case that it may be considered that for any steel there is at each temperature an approximately definite grain size, as indicated in the diagram (Fig. 31). A steel reheated to 1250°C . and cooled has a grain size represented by OL; one reheated only to 900° before cooling, by OK, etc. Hence normalizing a coarse-grained steel refines the structure (Pl. 24B, c).

The grain size corresponding to a given temperature varies in different steels of apparently the same composition. Strong de-oxidation with aluminium tends to raise the temperature at which rapid grain growth occurs, so that a given heat treatment results in a finer grain size. As the use of steel of controlled grain size facilitates uniform heat treatment and enables advantages to be taken, as may be desired, of the characteristics of fine-grain (enhanced toughness in the notched-bar test, less

tendency to warp or crack on quenching, less deterioration by strain-ageing) or of coarse-grain material (greater depths of hardening or of carburizing, ease of machining), this property of aluminium has given rise to a method of control of inherent grain size, for the determination of which microscopical tests are required. The procedure for testing, standardized in America for many years, is described by Swinden and Bolsover * in a paper on "Controlled Grain Size," and a note on the principal test—the McQuaid-Ehn test—is appended to this chapter.

Hot- and Cold-working of Steel

Steel possesses a large grain size at the temperature to which it is heated for such operations as forging, rolling or similar work.

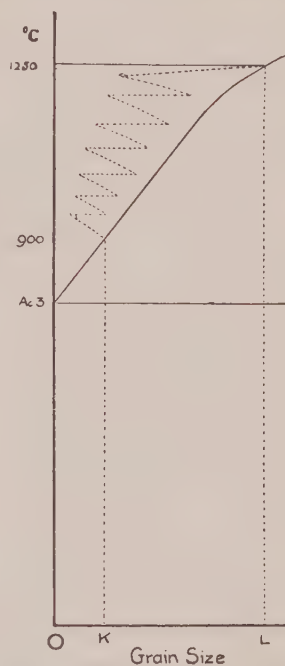


FIG. 31. Diagram, for a Medium Carbon Steel, showing the Influence of Temperature on Grain Size and the Effect of Forging or Rolling (after Howe).

* *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1936 (2), vol. 134, p. 457.

As work is done on the steels, the grains are deformed and broken up, but rearrangement of the crystal structure proceeds simultaneously. The temperature, however, is meanwhile falling, and the re-formed grains tend to grow to the normal size corresponding to that temperature. In the course of this growth they are again broken up by rolling or forging, as shown by the dotted line in the diagram (Fig. 31), and the ultimate grain size is dependent on the temperature from which the steel cools after forging or rolling. Thus, normalizing may be dispensed with if rolling is finished at the normalizing temperature.

If the finishing temperature is below A_{r_3} some separation of ferrite from the solid solution will have occurred and subsequent deformation will have the effect of elongating the ferrite and pearlite grains (Pl. 26A, B). The temperature may still be such that readjustment to equi-axial grains occurs in the banded structure of the ferrite and pearlite, and the hardening effect of cold-work may not be apparent. While the occurrence of a structure which is uniform in three directions at right angles to one another is evidence of a finishing temperature above A_{r_3} , a pronounced banded structure is not necessarily an indication of a finishing temperature below A_{r_3} , since segregation (especially of phosphorus) gives rise to a similar effect in rolled steel. By slowly cooling from above A_{r_3} , and so allowing time for diffusion of carbon out of the regions of high phosphorus content, a banded structure can often be produced in a steel which apparently shows equi-axial crystals after air-cooling from the same temperature (Pl. 27D).

If the process of working is continued below a visible red-heat, strain-hardening is produced. The object of cold-working at ordinary temperatures is to obtain and utilize the properties of steel in a condition of very severe strain-hardening. To carry out this process efficiently on medium-carbon steels it is advisable to secure a uniform structure of fine sorbitic pearlite by heating to 950°C. to 1000°C. and cooling fairly rapidly ("patenting").

The severely cold-worked condition (Pl. 26c) is characterized by a high yield point and great hardness, but the elastic limit is usually low. Cold-drawn material which is required to maintain a constant stress (e.g. piano wire, stays, and struts) should never be put to work in this overstrained condition, but should be subjected to a low-temperature heat treatment which raises the elastic limit and restores the elastic properties, at the same time increasing the yield point and hardness slightly. The microscope fails to distin-

guish between overstrained steel and the same steel aged or restored by low-temperature annealing, but momentary heating to 500° or prolonged annealing at temperatures above 350° causes softening, and has a marked effect on the structure (Pl. 26c, d, e).

High Tensile Structural Steels

It is desirable to employ the term *structural steels* to mean steels used in the untreated condition for bridges, girders, ship plates, etc., and to retain the term *constructional steel* for those used most frequently in the heat-treated condition in automobile and aeroplane construction and for general engineering purposes.

With the increasing demand for higher tensile properties in steels for modern structures, considerable development has occurred in structural steels and sections for which mild steel was at one time exclusively employed.

Greater ductility with little or no change in tensile strength is achieved by the addition to very mild steel of an element the main function of which is to form a solid solution in the ferrite, as, for example, by the addition of silicon in the high silicon mild steels developed in Germany.

The alternative, more commonly favoured, is to increase the tensile strength, and in particular the elastic limit, while retaining an equal or but slightly reduced elongation. To do this the mere strengthening of the ferrite is not sufficient; it is necessary to add an element which will increase the ratio of pearlite to ferrite in the air-cooled steel. If this is done by increasing the carbon content above 0.3 per cent., the ferrite, though reduced in amount, is unaffected in character and the increased strength is accompanied by a considerable reduction in ductility. An increase in the ratio of manganese to carbon, however, produces the desired effect and also lowers the temperature at which brittle fracture occurs in the notched-bar impact test.

The composition regarded with most favour is one containing 1.2 to 1.6 per cent. of manganese with 0.25 to 0.30 per cent. of carbon (Pl. 27E). In addition to modifying the properties of the ferrite, manganese increases the ratio of pearlite to ferrite in the air-cooled steel (Pl. 27A to D) and produces a more finely lamellar pearlite (Pl. 27F). With 0.3 per cent. of carbon, a manganese content higher than 1.6 per cent. gives rise to air-hardening properties which prevent the steel being used in the "as rolled" condition.

Other steels have been employed or suggested, e.g. 3 per cent. nickel steel, silico-manganese steels, 0.5 per cent. chromium steel,

chromium-copper steels, etc., but in all cases their structure must consist of ferrite and pearlite (finely lamellar or sorbitic). Absence of ferrite, or any indication that a martensitic constituent is replacing pearlite in the rolled or normalized material, means that, though the properties may be excellent after tempering or in the heat-treated condition, the steel is unsuitable for use as an untreated or normalized structural steel.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The usual method, finishing off with alumina, wet. For electrolytic polishing, see p. 124.

Etching

A 2 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol or a 5 per cent. solution of picric acid in alcohol.

Time of etching for ordinary examination, about thirty seconds. For examination of pearlite at high magnifications, about ten seconds (or preferably a 1 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol for thirty seconds). To show ferrite grains in low-carbon steel, one or two minutes or stronger solutions may be used (cf. wrought iron).

To reveal cementite in steels containing free cementite, sodium picrate etching is most useful, but polish attack and polishing in relief (p. 19) may be used in certain cases.

Alkaline solution of sodium picrate (Kourbatoff). Two grams of picric acid are digested for half hour with 100 c.c. of water in which 25 gm. of caustic soda are dissolved, and the supernatant liquid is poured off.

The polished specimen is placed in a porcelain dish and covered with the solution, which is heated to boiling for five to ten minutes. The section is washed with water and examined. The attack may be repeated if necessary. Staining, if encountered, may be prevented by avoiding exposure of the etched surface to air while hot, i.e. by directing a stream of water into the dish containing the specimen immersed in the etching reagent.

The McQuaid-Ehn Test for austenitic grain size (American Society for Testing Material Standard E 19-33) is carried out as follows:*

A specimen is selected of a suitable size to obtain a convenient

* As described by Swinden and Bolsover, *loc. cit.*

PLATES

25 - 31

Carbon steel.

A. Carbon 1·2 per cent. As cast. Lamellar pearlite and needles of cementite which have separated on the cleavage planes of the original γ -iron solid solution. The same specimen at low magnification is shown in Pl. 12B.

Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 500.

B to E represent the structure of steel castings.
 Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

B. Cast steel (carbon 0·27 per cent., manganese 0·67 per cent.) showing acicular structure of ferrite as found in large castings. × 15.

C. Cast steel (carbon 0·24 per cent., manganese 1·08 per cent.) showing dendritic structure of ferrite frequently found in castings of small wall thickness. × 15.

D. Large casting (carbon 0·28 per cent., manganese 0·73 per cent.) originally acicular in structure, after being annealed at 950° C. and slowly cooled. × 100.

E. Small casting (carbon 0·36 per cent., manganese 1·16 per cent.) originally dendritic in structure, after being annealed at 900° C. and slowly cooled. The pearlite forms an incomplete network surrounding ferrite. × 100.

Mechanical Properties of the Steel Castings

	B.	Annd.*	C.	Annd.*	D.	E.
Elastic limit, tons per sq. in. . . .	8	14	10	21	15	19
Yield point, " " " "	14	18	17	23	17	23
Maximum load, " " " "	30·6	33·6	34·9	36·0	33·2	38·2
Elongation per cent. on 2 in. . . .	22	36	20	26	29	26
Reduction of area per cent. . . .	24	54	27	36	34	35
Izod impact figure, ft.-lb. . . .	18	38	8	37	14	25
Brinell hardness number	142	152	160	165	143	161

* Tests made on small pieces cut from the castings and annealed at 875° C.



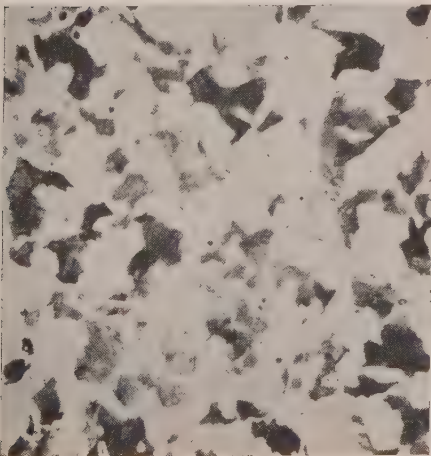
A



B



C



D



E

Carbon steel.

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

- A. Mild steel plate, carbon 0.2 per cent., longitudinal section showing effect of rolling. × 100.
- B. Medium carbon steel rod, carbon 0.5 per cent., manganese 1.0 per cent., longitudinal section showing effect of rolling. × 100.
- C. Cold-drawn carbon steel wire, carbon 0.75 per cent., manganese 0.75 per cent., longitudinal section, showing great deformation of the original structure of sorbitic and fine lamellar pearlite. × 1000.

There is no change in the appearance of the microstructure on annealing at temperatures of 200° C. to 300° C., a treatment which improves the elastic properties without reducing the tensile strength below 100 tons per sq. in.

- D. The same wire reheated to 500° C. for half hour and cooled in air. The carbide has begun to coalesce, and the ferrite to recrystallize, giving a structure of fine particles of carbide in a ground-mass of ferrite with a tensile strength of 78 tons per sq. in. × 1000.
- E. The same wire reheated to 650° C. for half hour, and cooled in air. Further coalescence of the carbide and complete recrystallization of the ferrite have occurred with a fall of tensile strength to 53 tons per sq. in. × 1000.
- F. The same wire annealed, showing fine lamellar pearlite and some ferrite. Tensile strength, 49 tons per sq. in. × 1000.



A



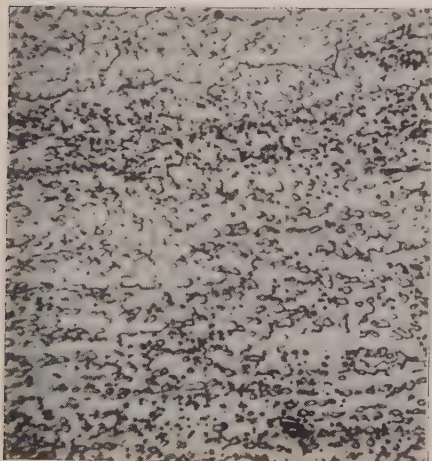
B



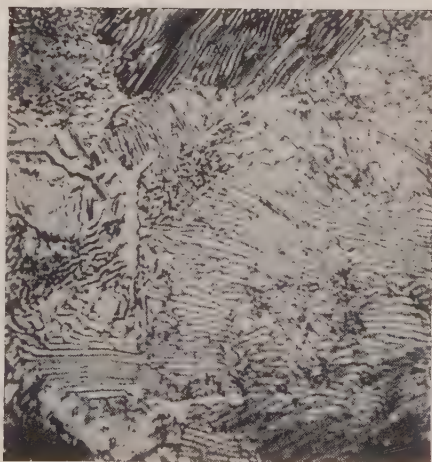
C



D



E



F

Effect of manganese on the properties of steel.
 Longitudinal sections.
 Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

The steels represented in A to C contain 0.23 per cent. of carbon, and have been normalized from 890° C. in the form of $\frac{3}{4} \times 1\frac{1}{2}$ in. bar.

- A. Manganese 0.37 per cent. The usual ferrite and pearlite structure.
× 100.
- B. Manganese 1.42 per cent. The amount of pearlite is considerably greater, and the separation of ferrite, forming a fragmentary network, has been less complete.
× 100.
- C. Manganese 2.10 per cent. The grain size is much finer and the separation of ferrite less complete. The ferrite shows a tendency to acicular structure, having separated on the cleavage planes of the original austenite grains. The air-hardening tendency is shown by the marked fall in elastic limit and in impact figure. These properties reach high values if the normalized steel is tempered at 600° C.
× 100.
- D. The same steel as shown in B cooled from 890° C. at a rate (at 700° C.) of 14° per minute. Much more complete separation of ferrite has occurred, and the pearlite occupies little more area than in A.
× 100.
- E. Commercial high tensile steel plate ($\frac{3}{4}$ in. thick), containing 0.29 per cent. carbon, and 1.60 per cent. manganese, hot rolled and cooled in air from the finishing temperature (above A_{r3}).
× 100.
- F. The same steel as in E showing the finely lamellar structure of the pearlite.
× 1000.

Mechanical properties associated with the structures illustrated

Longitudinal tests.

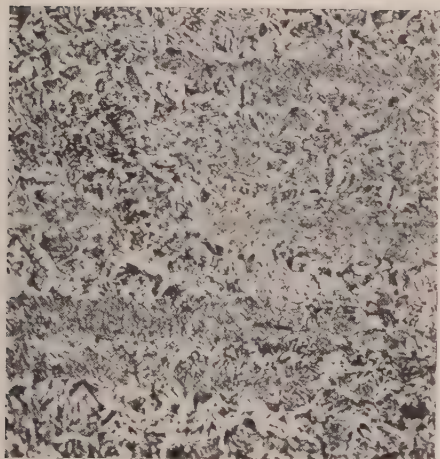
	A.	B.	C.	D.	E.
Carbon, per cent.	0.22	0.23	0.23	As B.	0.29
Manganese, per cent.	0.37	1.42	2.10	slowly	1.60
End of A_{c3}	855° C.	820° C.	810° C.	cooled.	—
Elastic limit, tons per sq. in.	11	16	11	14	17
Yield point, " "	16.8	22.8	26.6	21.0	23.9
Maximum load, " "	28.1	37.3	45.9	36.0	41.7
Ratio of yield point to maximum load	0.60	0.61	0.58	0.58	0.57
Elongation per cent. on 2 in.	39	35	23	32	31
Reduction of area, per cent.	66	69	43	62	68
Izod impact figure, ft.-lb.	79	66	16	57	40
Brinell hardness number.	126	167	210	159	183



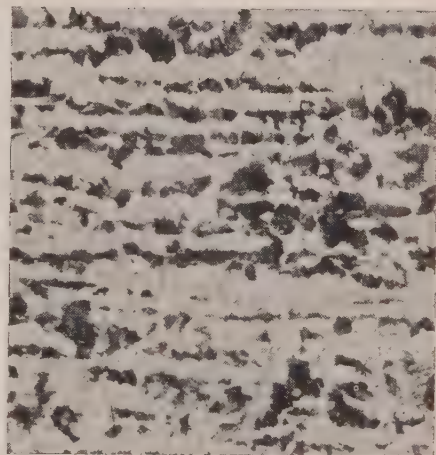
A



B



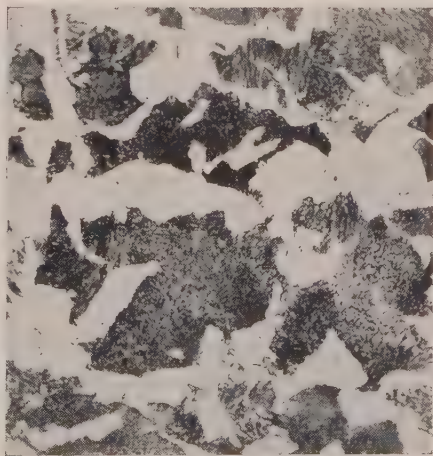
C



D



E



F

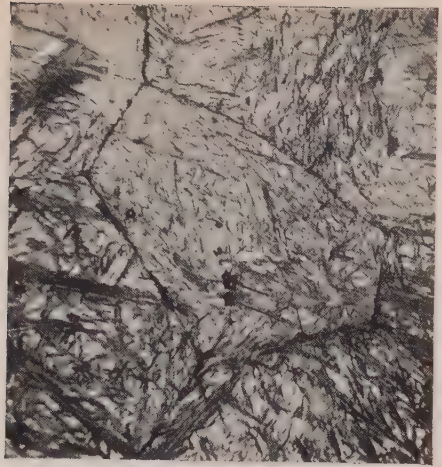
Austenite, martensite, troostite and sorbitic pearlite.

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

- A. Austenite, showing twinning, in a steel containing carbon 0.5 per cent., nickel 24.4 per cent. × 100.
- B. Austenite grains, showing an internal structure of martensite in a tungsten steel containing carbon 1.2 per cent., tungsten 3.0 per cent., heated to 1200° C., slowly cooled to 750° C. and then air-cooled. × 500.
- C. Troostite-martensite (or "lower bainite") in a 0.6 per cent. carbon steel quenched in water from 800° C. × 1000.
- D. Martensite and troostite in a rapidly cooled steel containing carbon 0.73 per cent., manganese 1.70 per cent. × 1000.
- E. Martensite and troostite in steel containing carbon 0.40 per cent., manganese 0.42 per cent., quenched in oil. × 1000.
- F. Sorbitic pearlite in a 0.9 per cent. carbon steel quenched from 760° C. in warm water. × 1000.



A



B



C



D



E



F

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

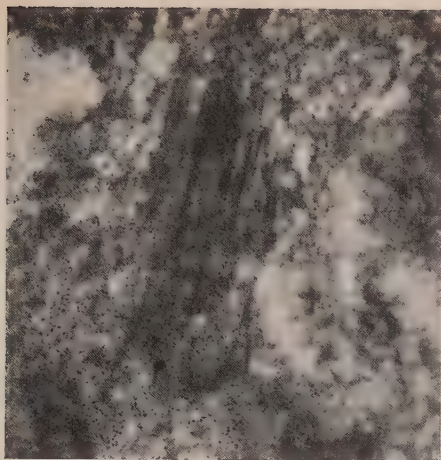
Distinction between sorbitic pearlite and sorbite.

- A. Sorbitic pearlite, when resolvable, is finely lamellar. This structure is formed at A_{r1} and can only be produced if the rate of cooling through the critical range is insufficiently great to depress the temperature of the A_{r1} change. × 4000
- B. Sorbite is granular. It is formed from martensite or troostite at a temperature below A_{c1} , and its presence indicates that when the steel was last cooled through the critical range, the rate of cooling was sufficiently great to depress the temperature of the A_{r1} change and so prevent the formation of pearlite. × 3000.

Transition from pearlite to martensite.

C to F, represent changes in structure produced in a short interval along the length of a bar of carbon steel, quenched in water when one end was above and the other end below the temperature of the critical range. Starting from the end which was colder, we have—

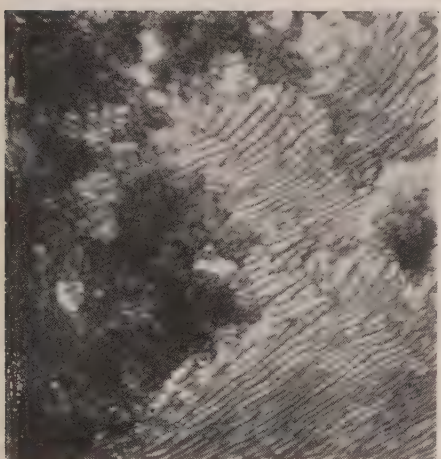
- C. Lamellar pearlite (the original structure) and troostite.
- D. Troostite.
- E. Troostite and martensite.
- F. Martensite. × 2000.



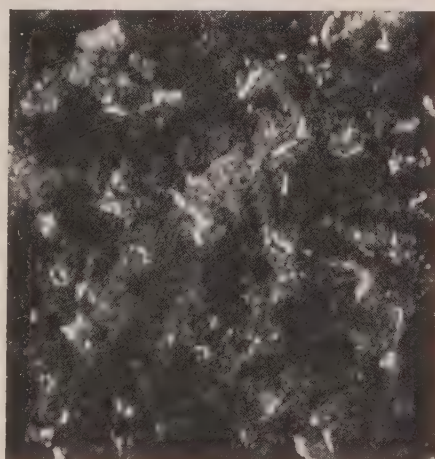
A



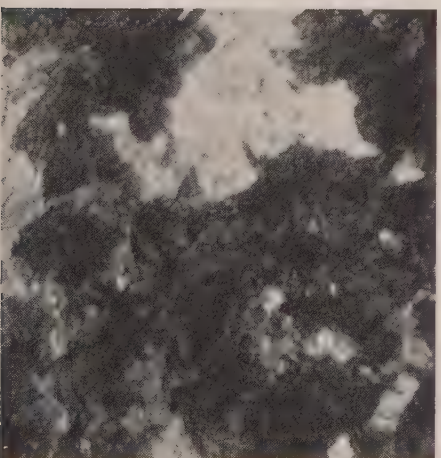
B



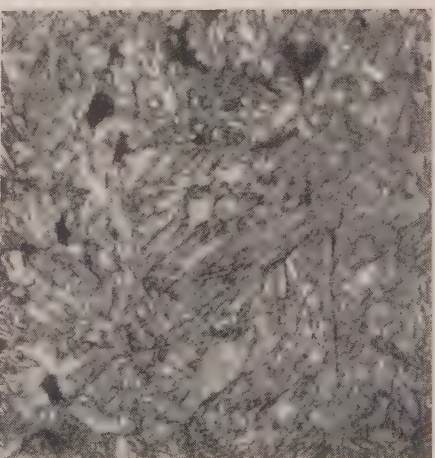
C



D



E



F

Heat treatment of a carbon steel containing carbon 0.33 per cent., manganese 0.54 per cent.

Critical points on heating $\begin{cases} A_{c1} \text{ max. } 732^{\circ} \text{ C.} \\ A_{c3} \text{ ends } 814^{\circ} \text{ C.} \end{cases}$

All etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 250 diameters.

- A. Slowly cooled from 900° C. Ferrite, and fine lamellar pearlite. Brinell hardness 136.
- B. The steel of A heated to 775° C. and quenched in oil. At A_{c1} the ferrite and carbide of the pearlite pass into solid solution which subsequently absorbs some of the ferrite, but however long the steel is held at 775° C. (below A_{c3}) some ferrite must remain unabsorbed. After cooling in oil the structure consists of ferrite and sorbitic pearlite. Brinell hardness 210.
- C. The steel of A heated to 900° C. and quenched in water. At this temperature (above A_{c3}) solution of ferrite is complete, and the structure of the small quenched specimen shows martensite and troostite. Brinell hardness 390.
- D. The steel of C heated to 730° C. and slowly cooled. Heating to this temperature (immediately below A_{c1}) results in a coarse sorbitic structure consisting of particles of carbide in a groundmass of ferrite. Brinell hardness 170.
- E. The steel of D heated to 745° C. and slowly cooled. Above A_{c1} solid solution is again formed round the coalesced carbide particles, and some pearlite is formed from this on cooling, but the separation of pearlite into compact areas is not complete. Brinell hardness 142.
- F. The steel of E heated to 830° C. and slowly cooled. The uniform solid solution formed above A_{c3} , on cooling deposits ferrite between A_{r3} and A_{r1} , and finally passes into lamellar pearlite at A_{r1} , giving a structure of ferrite and pearlite of smaller grain size than that of the original specimen (A) cooled from 900° C. Brinell hardness 136.



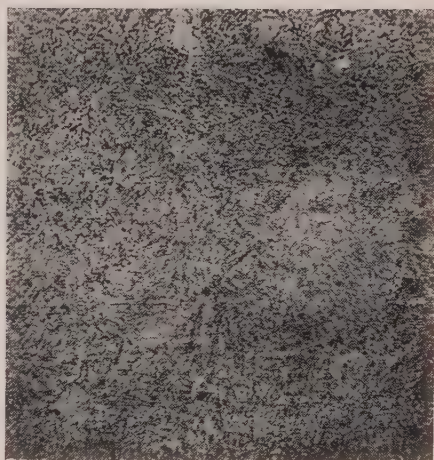
A



B



C



D



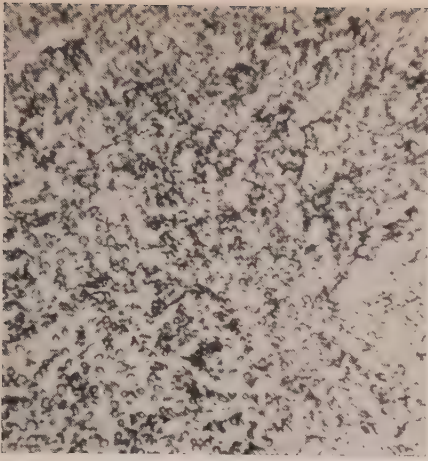
E



F

All etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

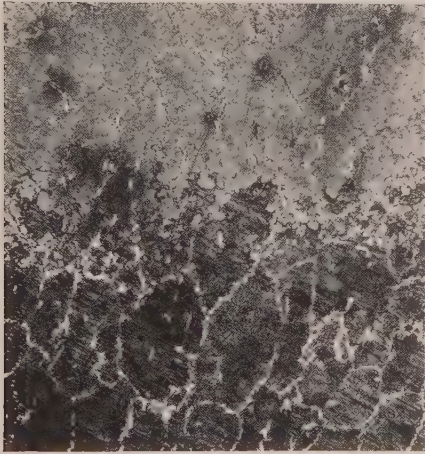
- A. Steel containing 0.4 per cent. of carbon, oil-hardened, reheated to Ac_1 and slowly cooled, showing coarse coalesced carbide in a groundmass of ferrite. × 1000.
- B. Massive cementite in a 0.1 per cent. carbon steel which has been cold-worked, then heated just above Ac_1 and cooled very slowly through Ar_1 . The steel is mainly pure ferrite, with some scattered regions (such as that shown) into which the carbide has coalesced. × 1000.
- C. Steel containing 0.6 per cent. of carbon locally hardened by a blowpipe flame, showing the junction between the hardened and unhardened region. Ferrite network enclosing grains of pearlite below: fine martensite with some undissolved ferrite above. × 100.
- D. Steel containing 0.4 per cent. of carbon, locally hardened. Undissolved ferrite remaining in the hardened region, which consists of slowly etching martensite above : ferrite and granular pearlite below. × 250.
- E. Case-hardened mild steel, heat-treated, showing an outer skin of slowly etching martensite, succeeded by a band of troostite, with a central core showing a sorbitic structure. × 50.
- F. Mild steel, case-hardened and heat-treated, but decarburized during the treatment. The outer skin now consists of ferrite, with a few troostitic regions, and is softer than the sorbitic steel below. × 50.



A



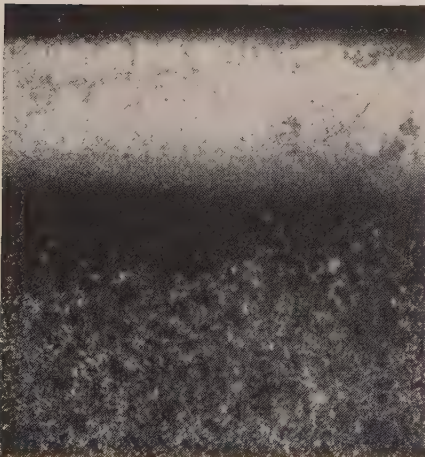
B



C



D



E



F

NORMALIZED AND ANNEALED CARBON STEELS

microsection when parted into two. All scale is removed from the specimen either by filing or grinding. The sample is packed in a box containing good carburizing compound ("Hardenite" is recommended). It is important that the box should be adequately sealed, as otherwise carburizing gases will escape and prevent the formation of a hyper-eutectoid zone. The box and contents are heated in two hours to, and soaked for six hours at, 927°C . (1700°F .), and then allowed to cool slowly down to 400°C . or less before emptying. The temperature should be regular within $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$. A section is cut from the sample, polished on the cut face and etched with boiling alkaline sodium picrate solution. The carburized case has then a clearly defined grain size, which is examined on a projection microscope at a magnification of 100 diameters. Comparison of the projected field with those given on a standard chart which shows typical fields for each grain size, enables the inherent size to be assessed. There is considerable latitude as regards time at carburizing temperature, temperature to which the specimens are cooled before withdrawal from the furnace and carburizing temperature, within which there is no significant difference in the resulting grain-size value. It is, however, desirable to maintain standard conditions as far as possible.

If n = number of grains per sq. in. at a magnification of 100, and N = grain-size index then $n = 2^{N-1}$.

Thus, for—

grain-size 2, $n = 2^1 = 2$; limits, 1.5 to 3 grains per sq. in.

„ 7, $n = 2^6 = 64$; „ 48 to 96 grains per sq. in.

CHAPTER VIII

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

WHEN steel is heated to a temperature above the upper limit of its critical range, and is then rapidly cooled in a suitable medium such as water or oil, it is *hardened*. An increase in hardness is observable even when the carbon percentage is low, and this increase is greater the more rapid the cooling. The yield point and toughness of mild steel containing about 0.10 to 0.15 per cent. of carbon are greatly improved by water quenching from the normalizing temperature instead of cooling in air. If the carbon is more than 0.3 per cent., the increase in hardness is very appreciable, and with identical rates of cooling the hardness increases with increase of carbon, at any rate up to 1 per cent., but it is accompanied by increasing brittleness.

The hardened article is usually too brittle for use, and is therefore tempered in order to reduce its hardness and increase its toughness.

By *tempering* is meant reheating a steel (however previously treated) to a temperature not exceeding the lower limit of its critical range, followed by either rapid or slow cooling.

The higher the temperature of tempering, the more does the treated steel approach its condition of minimum hardness, but after identical hardening and tempering treatment, the higher the carbon content the greater is the final degree of hardness of the steel.

With the aid of the constitutional diagram of the iron-carbon alloys (Fig. 30) it is possible to trace and interpret the changes which occur in the microstructure of the steel during the treatment outlined above.

Uniform Slow Heating to a High Temperature

Annealed steels, consisting of grains of pearlite enclosed in a ferrite or cementite network, do not change in constitution until a temperature is reached at which the constituents of the pearlite

HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

mutually dissolve to form a solid solution containing 0.9 per cent. of carbon, leaving the free ferrite or cementite intact. This change occurs with an absorption of heat, which is greater the higher the carbon content, causing an arrest Ac_1 in the heating curve, which takes place at approximately the same temperature for all pure carbon steels. As the temperature is raised the free ferrite or cementite is progressively absorbed into solid solution. Solution of the ferrite network in hypo-eutectoid steels cannot be complete until Ac_3 , the upper limit of the critical range, is reached. The temperature required will therefore be higher for the 0.3 than for the 0.5 per cent. carbon steel, and in the former case the ferrite undissolved at the temperature Ac_2 will change to the non-magnetic condition before completely passing into solution. Above Ac_3 (provided equilibrium has been attained) the steel consists entirely of solid solution of carbon in γ -iron and is in a condition suitable for hardening, but an appreciable time must be allowed to effect complete solution of the ferrite network or to obtain equilibrium conditions in large masses. Similarly a steel of higher carbon content is in a condition suitable for hardening after the complete mutual solution of ferrite and carbide has been attained.

Rapid Cooling from a High Temperature

Very rapid cooling by quenching from any given temperature tends to retain the steel in the structural condition in which it existed at that temperature. The less drastic the quenching and consequently the slower the rate of cooling the greater is the possibility of change. In carbon steels, the γ to α change always occurs, however drastic the quenching, and the microscopical constituents observed in the quenched steels are more or less advanced decomposition products of the original solid solution.

Austenite (Pl. 28A)

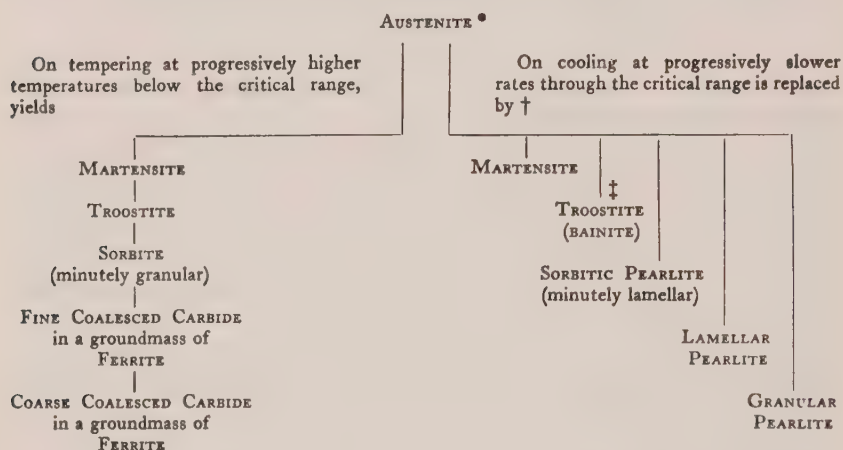
Study of various alloy steels leads to the conclusion that the micrographical structure corresponding to the solid solution which exists at high temperatures is that known as austenite, a structure which cannot be retained by even the most rapid quenching of carbon steels. When obtained in a homogeneous form in alloy steels it consists of polyhedral grains frequently showing twinning. It has never been obtained in a pure iron-carbon alloy. The presence of about 1.5 per cent. of manganese

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

together with high carbon renders it possible to obtain a mixture of austenite and martensite by very rapid cooling.

The generally recognized stages of decomposition of austenite in carbon steels are given in the following table.

STAGES OF DECOMPOSITION OF THE γ -IRON-CARBON SOLID SOLUTION



* The pure γ -iron-carbon solid solution has never been obtained at atmospheric temperatures.

† Together with a progressively more complete separation of free ferrite or free cementite according as the carbon is less or more than the eutectoid composition.

‡ The name bainite, which covers a variety of structures obtained by isothermal transformation of austenite, is also frequently given to a range of structures obtained by continuous cooling.

When carbon steel of eutectoid composition is slowly cooled from above A_{c1} , relatively coarse pearlite is formed. With increased rate of cooling, the temperature of transformation is lowered and the pearlite lamellæ become finer. When the transformation temperature is depressed to about 550°C. , the structure of the product is irresolvable by the optical microscope. At slightly greater rates of cooling, only a partial transformation occurs at about 550°C. and some austenite remains to be transformed at lower temperature. Finally, if the cooling rate exceeds the "critical rate of cooling," no change occurs until the solid solution begins to transform into martensite. The temperature at which this transformation begins (about 400°C. in 0.3 per cent. carbon steel) falls with increase in carbon content. In pure carbon steels, all the austenite is transformed within a small range of temperature. When the austenite contains alloying elements, completion of the transformation is retarded. Isothermal transformation of austenite and the effect of alloy additions are discussed in the following chapter.

HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

The Products of Quenching

Martensite (Pl. 28B to E, 29F, and 30C) is the most important constituent of hardened (untempered) steel. In steel of any given composition it is the hardest of the possible constituents obtained by heat treatment. In its formation the allotropic change γ - to α -iron has been completed, but the carbon (or carbide) remains in almost as highly dispersed a condition as in the solid solution, austenite. A characteristic feature of the structure is that it may be resolved under high powers into intersecting systems of straight parallel lines, marking the cleavage or gliding planes of the original solid solution. When the rate of cooling is somewhat less than is required to produce martensite, there may occur a range of transformation structures varying widely in appearance and often known, on analogy with the products of isothermal transformations, as upper and lower **bainite**. The structure known as upper bainite may still conveniently be referred to by its older name of troostite.

Troostite (or "upper bainite") is a black-etching structure in which the carbide, though still irresolvable, is less highly dispersed than in martensite. Steel quenched from Ac_1 , while the change is in progress, consists of troostite, either alone or with ferrite or cementite according to composition (Pl. 29C, D, E). When quenching from a higher temperature has been sufficiently rapid to obtain martensite, there may still be some separation of ferrite or carbide if the carbon content is far removed from that of the eutectoid. A ring of troostite may surround any small particles of ferrite or carbide which have separated under such conditions or have remained undissolved at the hardening temperature. Troostite may occur as very fine needles outlining an acicular structure similar to that of martensite (troosto-martensite or "lower bainite," Pl. 28C and 34A). It may also occur in larger masses in the martensite (Pl. 28D and 29E), or as an incipient grain boundary (Pl. 30C). With less severe quenching, a structure intermediate between troostite and sorbitic pearlite is formed (Pl. 28E). This, when resolved, frequently shows a nodular formation of very fine lamellæ of ferrite and cementite radiating from a nucleus.

If the rate of cooling is still slower (as, for example, that of large masses in oil, or of smaller specimens in hot water, or in an air blast) opportunity is afforded for the separation of more ferrite or cementite from the solid solution, though the final separation

of the eutectoid, pearlite, is partially suppressed. The lamellar pearlite formed on slow cooling is replaced by grains of **sorbitic pearlite** (Pl. 28F and 29A).

In a hypo-eutectoid steel, owing to the partial suppression of the separation of ferrite on cooling, these grains occupy a far larger area than the pearlite grains in the slowly cooled steel. Sorbitic pearlite, if resolvable, has an exceedingly fine lamellar structure, but it is often irresolvable under the microscope and frequently etches dark very rapidly, in which case it is known as troosto-sorbite. It is possible for lamellar and sorbitic pearlite and troosto-sorbite to occur together in the same steel cooled at a rate not sufficiently slow to give lamellar pearlite only.

The Products of Tempering

A mild tempering of some alloy steels obtained in the austenitic condition by quenching gives **martensite**, structurally similar to that produced by quenching. The change is accompanied by an increase in hardness.

A mild tempering of quenched martensitic carbon or alloy steels gives rise to **troostite** structurally similar to that obtained by rapid quenching, but the nodular (radially laminated) form of troostite cannot be formed by tempering. The change from martensite to troostite is accompanied by a slight fall of hardness and an increase in toughness. Troostite is found in properly hardened and tempered cutting tools, chisels, knives, etc.

Sorbite is the essential constituent of hardened and tempered steels intended for constructional purposes. The sorbite in this case is not sorbitic pearlite: its structure when resolvable is minutely granular, and not lamellar. It is formed by the gradual breakdown of martensite resulting in a uniform distribution of minute particles of carbide in a groundmass of ferrite (Pl. 29B, 30D, 34E and 35D). If tempering is carried on at a temperature too near to the critical point, or if the steel is soaked for too long a time, coalescence of the carbide continues until relatively large particles are formed (Pl. 31A). Free ferrite or carbide in the form of a network can never be formed on tempering. If found in hardened and tempered steel it must have survived through, or been formed during, the hardening operation.

Heat-treated Medium-Carbon Steels (0.3 to 0.75 per cent. carbon)

The uses to which these steels are put include:

HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

Carbon per cent.	Uses.
0.3-0.4	Propeller shafts, axles, crankshafts.
0.5-0.7	Gears, laminated springs.
0.7-0.75	Dies, mining drills.

The practical limits of temperature of heat treatment are fixed by two points on the heating curve of the steel, the beginning of Ac_1 and the end of Ac_3 . In heating for hardening, Ac_3 must be exceeded by a reasonable margin; in heating for tempering, Ac_1 must not be too closely approached. Treatment at any temperature between these limits is detrimental to the mechanical properties and must be avoided.

Steel is not in a condition suitable for hardening until complete solution of the ferrite and carbide has been attained. In some cases of large forgings of medium-carbon steel, a preliminary normalizing or annealing is necessary to refine the coarse forging structure, and bring the ferrite into a condition in which it will more readily pass into solution. The temperature of hardening should be well above the critical range, to ensure that no part of the article is below Ac_3 , otherwise the ferrite will not be wholly dissolved (Pl. 30B). On the other hand, hardening from a very high temperature induces a coarse structure and associated brittleness, and may also reduce the rate of cooling through the critical range.

For successful hardening, the rate of cooling through the critical range should be sufficiently rapid to lower Ar_1 and prevent the formation of pearlite. Heat is only abstracted by the quenching medium from the surface of the steel. The rate of cooling of the interior is dependent on the rate of diffusion of heat to the surface. Hence large forgings are, whenever possible, bored before treatment to reduce the thickness of metal in relation to its surface area. With large masses of medium-carbon steel no attainable rate of cooling will prevent separation of a large amount of ferrite, and it is preferable to employ alloy steels in which separation of ferrite is suppressed even at relatively slow rates of cooling.

The tempering temperature is chosen to effect within a reasonable time the change in properties desired. For low-temperature tempering, use is frequently made of the appearance of the surface of the hardened steel when slowly heated in the air. Owing to the formation of a thin film of oxide a bright, clean surface takes on temper colours, varying with the composition and the temperature of the piece, thus:

Temper colour.	For carbon steels.	For stainless steels. (See p. 121.)
Straw-yellow indicates	230° C.	340° C.
Brown-purple "	265° C.	390° C.
Blue "	300° C.	530° C.

The same colour can be attained by more prolonged heating at a lower temperature than that indicated, but the tempering action is simultaneously prolonged, and therefore for a given steel a phrase like "tempered to a brown-purple" has some approach to a definite meaning. However, the use of liquid baths (oil, fused nitrates, tin-lead alloy or lead) for tempering at low temperatures renders it possible to exercise better control over time and temperature of treatment.

The character of the changes in microstructure accompanying increase in tempering temperature have already been indicated, and tempering treatments at temperatures up to 650° C. call for no further comment.

As the temperature employed approaches A_{c1} the effects of tempering may involve serious injury to the steel. A tempering temperature above A_{c1} has the effect of practically obliterating the effect of hardening, and the properties of the steel after such treatment will be largely dependent on the rate of cooling from this temperature, i.e. the rate of cooling through the A_{r1} range (Pl. 30E).

Without actually exceeding the A_{c1} point certain undesirable features may be introduced into the structure and properties of a steel by tempering at within about 30° of that temperature. For example, the minutely granular structure of sorbite becomes coarser by coalescence of the carbide particles (Pl. 31A). This structure is associated with a low elastic limit and yield point, and may also in carbon steels result in a low impact figure. It is advisable never to exceed 690° C. in tempering carbon steel.

The approximate effect on the properties of a water-hardened steel containing 0.45 per cent. of carbon, of tempering for half hour at different temperatures is shown in Fig. 32. The chief microscopical constituents of such a steel heated to temperatures up to 400° are martensite and troostite, or troosto-sorbite. With the appearance of sorbite in the microstructure considerable softening and toughening result. Except in specimens of small dimensions, free ferrite in the form of a network will accompany

HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

these constituents. In steels of this class, the absence of free ferrite is an indication of the most efficient hardening, while a perfectly uniform sorbitic structure is associated with the finest combination of mechanical properties for constructional purposes.

Heat-treated High-Carbon Steels (0.9 to 1.5 per cent. carbon)

The high-carbon steels are used mainly for cutting tools, for example:

Carbon per cent.	Uses.
About 0.9	Shears, saws, cutlery and springs.
1.0	Chisels, axes.
1.2	Drills and turning tools.
1.4	Razors and surgical instruments.

A preliminary annealing is necessary to refine the structure. The carbide is then enabled to pass more readily into solution on heating for hardening, which may thus be carried out from the lowest temperature at which a homogeneous solution can be obtained. A coarse grain size indicates that the preliminary annealing has been omitted or that overheating has occurred on hardening. Such a structure renders the steel very liable to crack on quenching.

To reduce brittleness the steels are tempered, usually at comparatively low temperatures. A possible source of brittleness (which cannot be removed by tempering) is the presence of an excess of massive cementite, due to an insufficient refining or hardening temperature, or possibly to the use of steel with too high a carbon content. Free cementite in masses of considerable size should not occur in cutting tools which have to withstand any degree of rough usage. The essential micro-constituents of such steels are martensite, troosto-martensite, and troostite, increasing in proportion in the order given as the amount of rough usage to be endured increases.

Local Hardening

Machine parts which have to withstand wear are sometimes made of medium-carbon steel locally hardened or surface-hardened by means of the oxy-acetylene flame or by induction heating.

Except in the case of perfectly smooth surfaces, spot-hardened, the article is usually tempered to a straw colour to avoid excessive brittleness of the hardened portion. Microscopical examination of

the border-line between the hardened and unhardened regions generally yields interesting results. The ferrite network present in the unhardened region persists in a fragmentary form for some distance into the hardened steel, although the enclosed grains of pearlite have been transformed into solid solution (Pl. 31C, D). Regions which have attained a temperature above A_{c1} and below

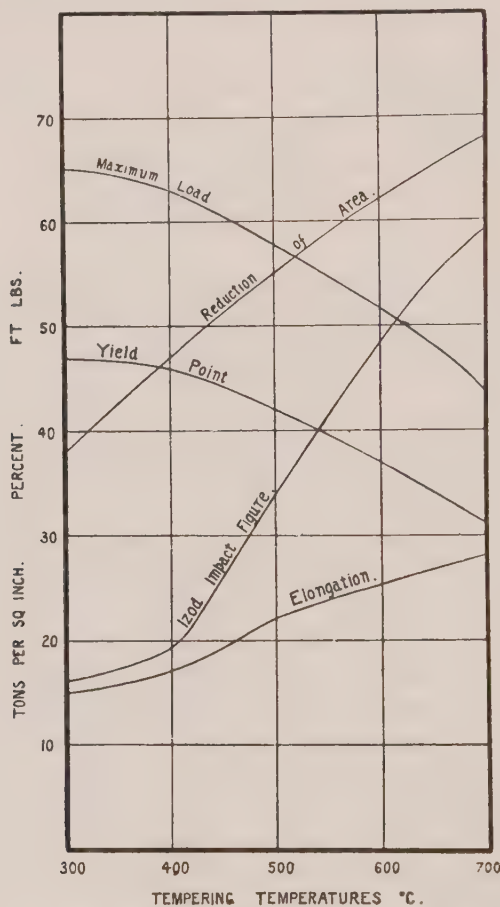


FIG. 32. Mechanical Properties of a 0.45 per cent. Carbon Steel, Water-hardened from 870°C . in the form of $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. Diameter Bars, and Tempered for half hour at Various Temperatures. (Institution of Automobile Engineers, Steel Research Committee.)

A_{c3} still contain ferrite. The effect is more pronounced in lower carbon steels, since the thicker ferrite network requires a longer time above A_{c3} to pass completely into solution.

Case Hardening

The object of case hardening is the production of a hard skin on a tough mild steel core. It is an adaptation of the old cement-

HARDENED AND TEMPERED CARBON STEELS

ation method of steel making in which carburization of iron was effected by prolonged heating in contact with carbonaceous material. Diffusion of carbide occurs on heating under these conditions at temperatures above 900°C ., and the resulting material may show a gradation of carbon content from, say, 1 per cent. at the skin to the original figure of 0.1 or 0.2 per cent. at the core, revealed in the microstructure of the untreated material as:

A decreasing amount of cementite, } Pearlite { Pearlite with an increasing amount
with pearlite. of ferrite.

To obtain the best properties the steel is then hardened. A temperature of less than 800°C . must be used to harden the high-carbon steel case, or its grain size will be too coarse; but this is below that needed to refine the structure of the mild steel core. A double treatment is therefore necessary: heating to 900°C . or 950°C . and air-cooling or quenching to refine and toughen the core, followed by heating to 750°C . or 800°C . and quenching to harden the case. This treatment results in the following structure (Pl. 31E):

Core :—Fine-grain ferrite, and troostite.
An intermediate layer of troostite.
Case :—Martensite, and possibly cementite.

Free cementite in large amounts or in a continuous network is a source of weakness giving rise to surface cracks, flaking, etc.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The usual method finishing with alumina, wet. With hard steels there is less danger of scratching the surface during polishing, and a plentiful supply of polishing powder should be used. In the grinding operations very great care is required to prevent heating of the specimen which may affect the structure. Taper grinding (p. 18) may usefully be employed in examining sections through case-hardened surfaces.

Etching

A 1 or 2 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol or a 5 per cent. solution of picric acid in alcohol.

The time of etching varies because the rate of attack depends very largely on the condition of the steel as regards tempering. Troostitic steels on etching become covered with a velvety deposit of carbon. It is advisable to remove this by lightly rubbing

on a pad, and to re-etch for about two seconds, when a sharper structure is obtained. A light repolishing and re-etching is often advantageous in revealing the structure of sorbitic and other steels.

Detection of Regions of Local Hardening

Clean and roughly polish the surface of the steel with emery paper. Immerse in 5 per cent. aqueous or 10 per cent. alcoholic solution of nitric acid for two minutes, wipe off the deposit, and immerse again; wash with water, and dry with alcohol or acetone, without wiping. The line of demarcation between hardened and unhardened regions is clearly visible, the former being blackened and the latter etched dull grey. The black deposit takes some time to form on a fully hardened steel, but shows most quickly on a slightly tempered steel. The second etching generally gives a sharper result, and a better contrast can also be obtained by adding a little ammonium persulphate to the solution. Large components, welded structures or castings repaired by welding can be similarly examined by swabbing with the solutions.

If it is desired to reveal the microstructure as well as the extent of the heat-affected region, advantage may be taken of the combined chemical polishing and etching effect of the oxalic acid-hydrogen peroxide solution described on p. 136.

CHAPTER IX

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS, AND THE EFFECT OF HEAT TREATMENT

SPECIAL elements are intentionally added to carbon steels in order to modify their physical, chemical or mechanical properties and render them suitable for special purposes.

The same structural constituents are found in alloy steels as in carbon steel, but their composition is modified by the presence of the alloying element, and their limits of existence, both as regards composition and temperature, are affected by the modification of the critical range which the alloying element introduces. They may be classified from the microscopical standpoint according as the most important constituent of the slowly cooled steel is pearlite, martensite, austenite, or free carbide. The structure depends not only on the amount of special element, but on the percentage of carbon present: in the following table the approximate figures given for the limits of composition of the different micro structural groups are based on the work of Guillet.

Principal carbon-containing micro-constituent in the slowly cooled steel.	Nickel Steels.		Manganese Steels.		Chromium Steels.	
	Nickel per cent.		Manganese per cent.		Chromium per cent.	
<i>Percentage of carbon</i>	0.2	0.8	0.2	0.8	0.2	0.8
Pearlite . . .	0 to 8	0 to 5	0 to 5	0 to 3	0 to 7	0 to 3
Martensite . . .	8 „ 26	5 „ 15	5 „ 12	3 „ 7	7 „ 15	3 „ 10
Austenite . . .	>26	>15	>12	>7	—	—
Free carbide . .	—	—	—	—	>15	>10

There is no sharp demarcation between the pearlitic and martensitic groups, which merge into one another through the usual transition products, sorbitic pearlite, troostite, etc.

Steels which after slow cooling are martensitic or show much free carbide are hard and brittle, but some of them after treatment are employed as tool steels. By quenching such steels become austenitic and their hardness is reduced, but it is restored by

tempering. Some austenitic steels have important commercial uses: they are softer than martensitic steels and have a low elastic limit; after quenching they remain austenitic, and if originally free from separated carbide are unaffected in hardness.

The steels most frequently used are the pearlitic steels containing relatively small amounts of the alloying element, but after slow cooling their properties are not remarkably better than those of carbon steels. To get full advantage of the use of the alloying element, they are almost invariably heat-treated. The pearlitic steels are all hardened by quenching, and show similar characteristic types of microstructure to those shown by carbon steels. The constitutional diagrams of many ternary and some more complex systems have been determined but for the pearlitic alloy steels the iron-carbon constitutional diagram may be used provisionally as a guide to heat treatment, provided that allowance is made for the change in critical ranges and account is taken of the accompanying effect of alteration of the eutectoid composition.

Effect of Rate of Cooling on the Temperature of the Austenite Transformation

The temperature of the austenite transformation, which occurs at A_{r1} on cooling slowly, is lowered to temperatures referred to as A_r' , A_r'' and A_r''' as the rate of continuous cooling is increased. A_r' occurs at 690°C. to 540°C. according to composition and rate of cooling, and the austenite changes to lamellar, sorbitic or troostitic pearlite according to the temperature of transformation within this range. A_r'' occurs at about 460°C. , when the austenite breaks down, giving an acicular structure resembling martensite but not so hard. A_r''' refers to the temperature (about 300°C. or below according to composition) at which austenite transforms to martensite. In carbon steels and steels containing a few per cent. of nickel, the transformation may occur at A_r' or A_r''' but not at intermediate temperatures. The change at A_r'' is characteristic of certain alloy steels, especially those containing chromium, molybdenum, tungsten or vanadium.

Isothermal Transformation of Austenite

The reason for these discontinuities in the temperature of austenite transformation during continuous cooling is best recognized in the light of the behaviour of austenite when held at various temperatures below A_{c1} . This behaviour is represented in diagrams which show, for each temperature, the progress of

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

the transformation with time. They are known as isothermal transformation diagrams, or time-temperature-transformation (T-T-T) curves.

The diagram for 1 per cent. nickel steel is shown in Fig. 33. Just below Ac_1 decomposition of the austenite is slow to start; there is a long period of incubation; but at lower temperatures it starts more quickly and at 550°C . transformation is complete in

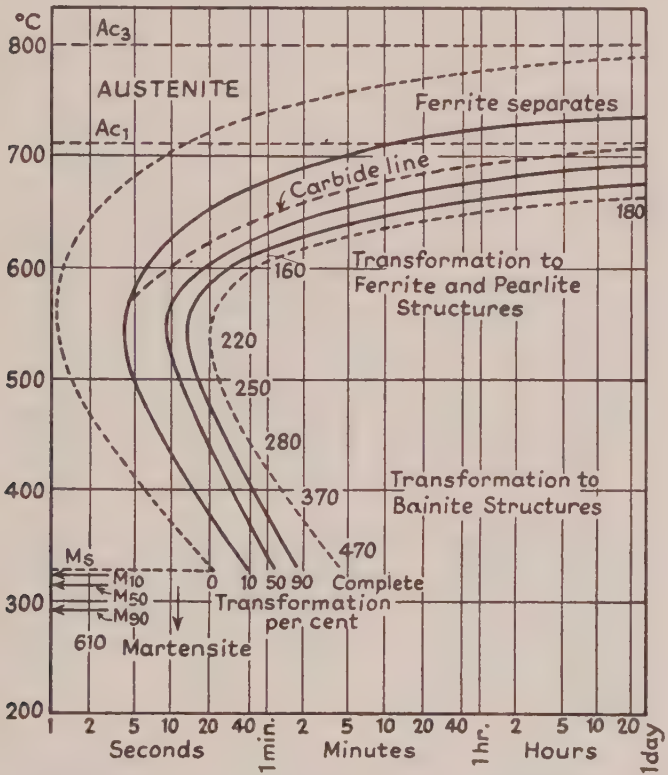


FIG. 33. Time-temperature-transformation Diagram for 1 per cent. Nickel Steel (En. 12).
(Mond Nickel Company: "Transformation Characteristics of Nickel Steels").

about twenty seconds. At lower temperatures, the incubation period increases again until the temperature of martensite formation is reached, when the start of the change becomes instantaneous. This diagram does not indicate the arrest points on a cooling curve, or the temperatures at which transformation is most rapid in continuous cooling, because the times represented are those at a given temperature, whereas the time at higher temperatures contributes to the incubation period during continuous cooling.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

The isothermal transformation diagrams for steels containing chromium or molybdenum differ from those of carbon steels and low-nickel steels in showing a second bend before reaching the horizontal line which represents the beginning of the martensite transformation. A diagram for 3 per cent. nickel-chromium steel (and typical also of $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. nickel-chromium-molybdenum

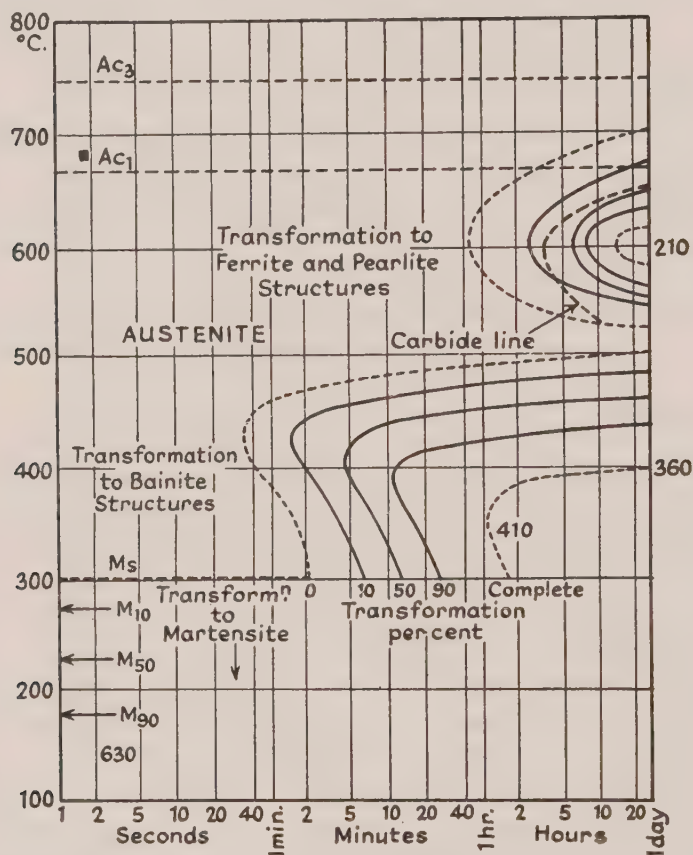


FIG. 34. Time-temperature-transformation Diagram for 3 per cent. Nickel-chromium Steel (En 23). (Mond Nickel Company: "Transformation Characteristics of Nickel Steels").

steel) is shown in Fig. 34, and photomicrographs illustrating the isothermal transformation of these steels are reproduced in Pl. 32 and 33. The product of the isothermal transformation at the lower bend, or "knee" of the curve, is known as bainite. The name covers a series of intermediate structures varying from coalesced carbide in an acicular ferritic groundmass to dark-etching troostomartensite. Bainite differs considerably in appearance according to the temperature at which it is formed, and to make a distinction

PLATES

32 - 38

Isothermal transformation of nickel–chromium steel at 320° C.

Carbon 0.35, silicon 0.28, manganese 0.64, nickel 3.40, chromium 0.74 per cent.

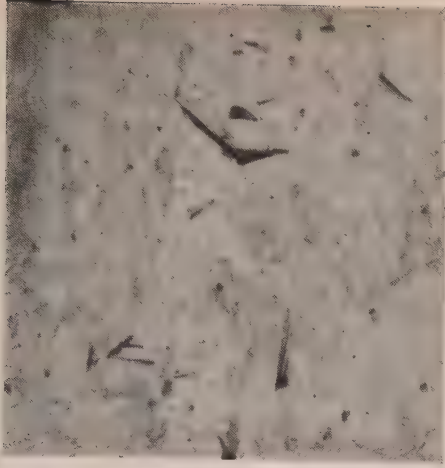
Etched in saturated picric acid in alcohol with 0.5 per cent. of nitric acid. Magnification 750 diameters.

The specimens were heated for thirty minutes at 835° C. to convert them into homogeneous austenite, immersed in a bath at 320° C. for progressively increasing times, and then quenched in water. When polished and etched, the product of transformation is clearly seen. The austenite which remains untransformed at 320° C. is converted into martensite and appears as a martensitic matrix.

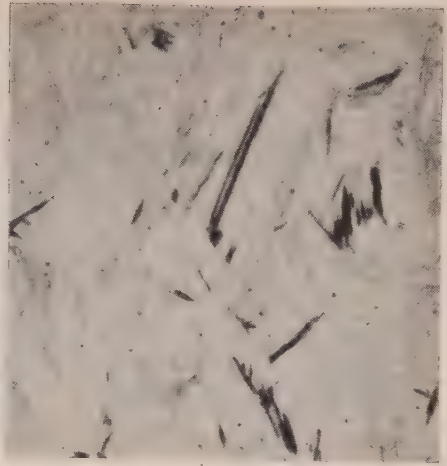
A. Isothermally transformed at 320° C. for 60 seconds.						
B.	”	”	”	”	” 100	”
C.	”	”	”	”	” 180	”
D.	”	”	”	”	” 210	”
E.	”	”	”	”	” 360	”
F.	”	”	”	”	” 600	”

In this steel at 320° C. there is a simultaneous separation of ferrite and carbide giving a dark-etching acicular structure of lower bainite, sometimes on account of its appearance referred to as troosto–martensite.

(Photomicrographs supplied by the Mond Nickel Company Ltd.)



A



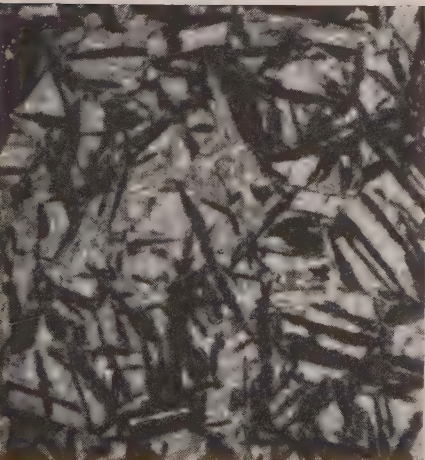
B



C



D



E



F

Isothermal transformation of nickel–chromium–molybdenum steel (B.S. En. 24) at various temperatures, after austenitizing at 835° C.

Carbon 0·36, silicon 0·20, manganese 0·61, nickel 1·32, chromium 1·00, molybdenum 0·24 per cent.

Etching reagents : A, B and D—0·5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. C, E and F—saturated picric acid in alcohol with 0·5 per cent. nitric acid. Magnification 500 diameters.

	Diamond Pyramid Hardness	
	Transformation Complete.	Incomplete.
A. Isothermally transformed for twenty-four hours at 700° C. and water quenched. Isothermal transformation incomplete Ferrite with coarse lamellar and some granular pearlite.	—	233
B. Isothermally transformed at 650° C. and water quenched. Isothermal transformation complete Ferrite and fine lamellar and sorbitic pearlite.	202	—
C. Isothermally transformed at 600° C. and water quenched. Isothermal transformation complete Ferrite and fine lamellar or irresolvable pearlite.	242	—
D. Isothermally transformed at 500° C. for twenty-four hours and water quenched. Isothermal transformation incomplete Upper bainite in a matrix of martensite formed from the austenite remaining after twenty-four hours at 500° C.	—	610
E. Isothermally transformed at 450° C. for twenty-four hours and water quenched. Isothermal transformation substantially complete Lower bainite (or troosto-martensite).	326	—
F. Isothermally transformed at 400° C. and water quenched. Isothermal transformation complete Lower bainite (or troosto-martensite).	346	—

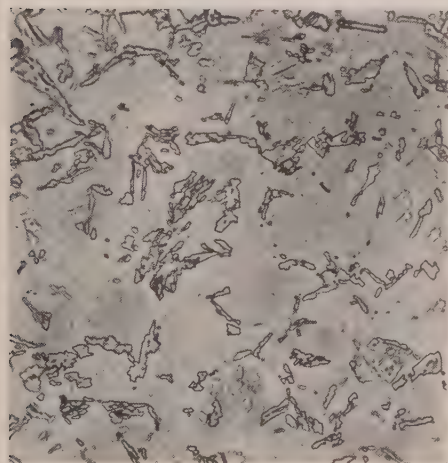
(Photomicrographs supplied by the Mond Nickel Company Ltd.)



A



B



C



D



E



F

- A. Nickel steel, containing carbon 0.16 per cent., manganese 0.54 per cent., and nickel 9.1 per cent., and showing a troosto-martensitic structure after slow cooling.

Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 500.

Heat treatment of a nickel steel containing carbon 0.35 per cent., manganese 0.65 per cent. nickel 3.76 per cent.

Critical points on heating $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A_{c1} \text{ max. } 696^{\circ} \text{ C.} \\ A_{c3} \text{ ends } 743^{\circ} \text{ C.} \end{array} \right.$

All etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 250 diameters.

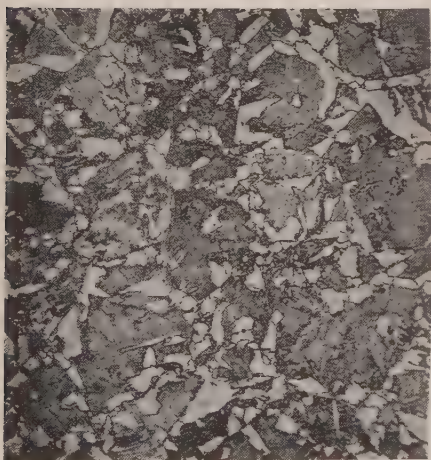
- B. Slowly cooled from 900° C. Ferrite network enclosing grains of lamellar pearlite. Brinell hardness 199.
- C. The steel of B heated to 692° C. (A_{c1}) and cooled in oil. The ferrite and carbide of the pearlite, which have passed into solid solution, are retained as fine martensite on quenching in oil, the ferrite network remaining almost intact. Brinell hardness 250.
- D. The steel of B heated to 900° C. and quenched in water. A uniform solid solution having been obtained above A_{c3} the structure is wholly martensitic on quenching. Brinell hardness 484.
- E. The steel of D heated for two hours at 630° C. The martensite has broken down to form sorbite or fine coalesced carbide in a groundmass of ferrite. Brinell hardness 242. Although the hardness of this structure is similar to that of the structure shown in C, its yield point and impact figure are very much higher.
- F. The steel of E heated to 743° C. (end of A_{c3}) and cooled slowly. The structure has reverted to ferrite and lamellar pearlite, only differing from the original (B) in grain size. Brinell hardness 196.



A



B



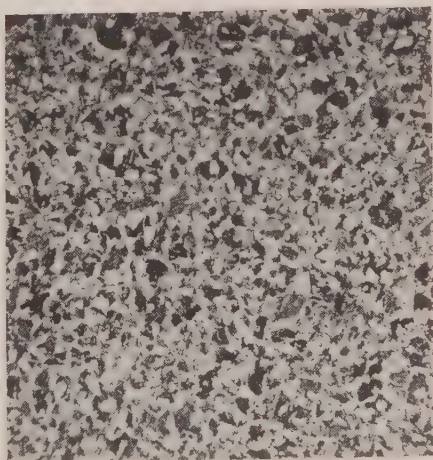
C



D



E



F

Alloy steels.

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

- A. Steel containing carbon 0.43 per cent., chromium 3.0 per cent., air-cooled from 900° C. Troostomartensite. Brinell hardness 372. × 250.
- B. The same steel as in A slowly cooled from 900° C. (cooled through the critical range at 0.7° C. per minute). Pearlite. Brinell hardness 180. × 1000.
- C. Low-carbon nickel-chromium steel forging (carbon 0.2 per cent., nickel 3.5 per cent., chromium 0.6 per cent.), oil-hardened and tempered. Fine coalesced carbide in a groundmass of ferrite, the arrangement of the carbide preserving the acicular appearance of the hardened steel. × 250.
- D. Nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel forging (carbon 0.25, nickel 2.6, chromium 0.9, molybdenum 0.55 per cent.), oil-hardened and tempered. Sorbite.
The hardening temperature has been high, hence the large grain size, but the mechanical properties did not apparently suffer much deterioration on that account. × 1000.
- E. Medium-carbon nickel-chromium steel (carbon 0.31 per cent., nickel 3.62 per cent., chromium 0.82 per cent.), slowly cooled from 900° C. Ferrite and sorbitic pearlite. × 100.
- F. Cold-drawn chromium-vanadium steel (carbon 0.42 per cent., chromium 1.11 per cent., vanadium 0.20 per cent.). Tensile strength 107 tons per sq. in. The original structure before drawing was fine coalesced carbide in a groundmass of ferrite: the carbide particles remain in the severely deformed groundmass.

There is no change in the appearance of the microstructure on annealing at temperatures of 250° C. to 300° C., a treatment which improves the elastic properties but impairs the ductility. On annealing above 300° C. softening sets in, but the micro-structure is not visibly affected until an annealing temperature of 500° C. to 600° C. is reached, when softening becomes very rapid and is accompanied by recrystallization of the ferrite and coalescence of the carbide. × 1000.



A



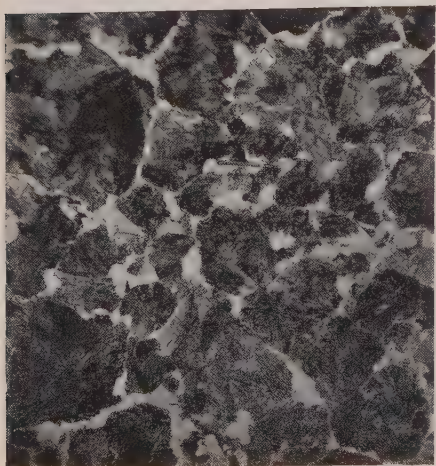
B



C



D



E



F

Effect of mass in the heat treatment of steels containing manganese, and the influence of molybdenum in reducing this effect.

Steels oil-hardened from 840° C.; tempered at 550° C. and cooled in air.

- A. Carbon 0.35 per cent., manganese 1.34 per cent. : $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. diameter bar.
- B. The same steel : centre of 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. diameter bar.
- C. Carbon 0.38 per cent., manganese 1.42 per cent., molybdenum 0.23 per cent. : $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. diameter bar.
- D. The same steel : centre of 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. diameter bar.

All etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
 × 250.

Mechanical Properties associated with the structures illustrated

	A.	B.	C.	D.
Elastic limit, tons per sq. in. .	37	23	55	31
Yield point, tons per sq. in. .	44.4	26.8	60.4	37.4
Maximum load, tons per sq. in. .	55.0	43.8	68.1	50.9
Ratio of yield point to max. load .	0.81	0.61	0.89	0.74
Elongation per cent. on 2 in. .	21	25	19	22
Reduction of area per cent. .	58	58	55	57
Izod impact figure, ft.-lb. .	73	26	57	31
Brinell hardness number .	254	220	327	242

- E. Steel containing carbon 0.4 per cent., manganese 5.0 per cent. slowly cooled from 900° C. Martensite. Brinell hardness 530.

Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
 × 250.

- F. Manganese steel (carbon 1.2 per cent., manganese 13.2 per cent.) quenched in water from 1000° C. Austenite, showing twinning.

Yield point 21 tons per sq. in.

Tensile strength 60 " "

Elongation 70 per cent. on 2 in.

Brinell hardness 210. The steel hardens very rapidly under the influence of any kind of deformation owing to the formation of martensite.

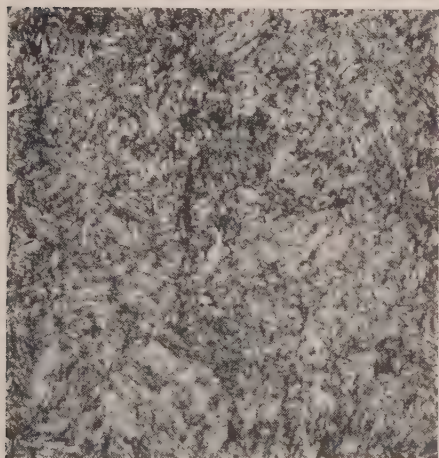
Etched with nitric acid in alcohol.
 × 50.



A



B



C



D



E



F

Structures of heat-treated forgings.

All etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 100 diameters.

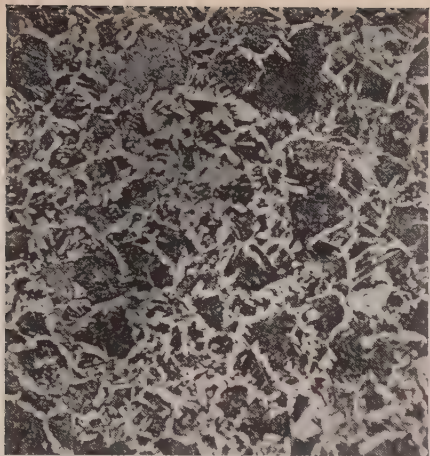
- A. Carbon steel forging, oil-hardened and tempered, showing a ferrite network enclosing grains of sorbite.
- B. Similar forging, water-hardened and tempered, showing decrease in the amount of free ferrite.
- C. Large nickel steel forging, oil-hardened and tempered. Ferrite network enclosing grains of sorbite.
- D. Small nickel steel forging, oil-hardened and tempered. Sorbite, with slight separation of free ferrite.
- E. Large nickel-chromium steel forging, oil-hardened and tempered. Sorbite with some separation of ferrite.
- F. Small nickel-chromium steel forging, oil-hardened and tempered. Uniform sorbite.

The best mechanical properties are shown by tempered martensite (F). The presence in the structure of the oil-hardened forging of ferrite and pearlite, or to a lesser extent of the products of an intermediate transformation, has an adverse effect on the properties of the tempered steel.

STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF HEAT-TREATED FORGINGS

Type of steel and treatment.	Composition.				Mechanical Tests.						Micro-graph.
	Carbon, per cent.	Manganese, per cent.	Nickel, per cent.	Chromium, per cent.	Elastic limit, tons per sq. in.	Yield point, tons per sq. in.	Maximum load, tons per sq. in.	Elongation, per cent. on 2 in.	Reduction of area, per cent.	Izod impact figure, ft.-lb.	
Carbon steel											
Medium-sized forging quenched in oil and tempered . . .	0.34	0.68	—	—	15	18.0	35.0	30	54	16	A
Similar forging (from same cast of steel) quenched in water and tempered . . .	0.34	0.68	—	—	18	24.8	39.5	20	42	15	B
Nickel steel											
Large forging, oil-hardened and tempered . . .	0.37	0.61	3.55	—	24	28	44.8	22	45	18	C
Small forging, oil-hardened and tempered . . .	0.36	0.55	3.65	—	29	32	46.0	20	30	26	D
Nickel-chromium steel											
Large forging, oil-hardened and tempered . . .	0.28	0.40	3.59	0.51	27	32.7	43.6	21.5	53	32	E
Small forging, oil-hardened and tempered . . .	0.26	0.66	3.53	0.84	31	38.8	48.7	21	56	59	F

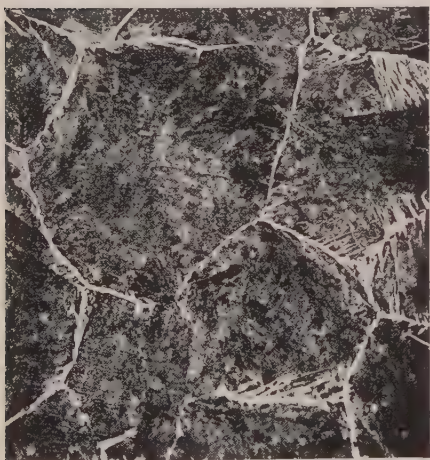
Note.—Hardening temperature of large nickel steel forging rather high, otherwise temperatures of treatment approximately the same throughout. Wall thickness of small forgings 2 in., of large forgings over 4 in. All tests taken transversely to the direction of forging.



A



B



C



D



E



F

Structure and properties of large heat-treated forgings.
Wall thickness, 8 in.

All etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
Magnification 250 diameters.

Nickel steel.

- A. Near outside surface. Ferrite and sorbitic pearlite.
- B. Middle of wall. Increased separation of ferrite.

Nickel steel containing 0.26 per cent. chromium.

- C. Near outside surface. Mainly sorbite.
- D. Middle of wall. Ferrite and sorbite.

Nickel-chromium steel.

- E. Near outside surface. Mainly sorbite.
- F. Middle of wall. Increased separation of ferrite.

Nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel.

- G. Near outside surface.
 - H. Middle of wall.
- } Uniform sorbite.

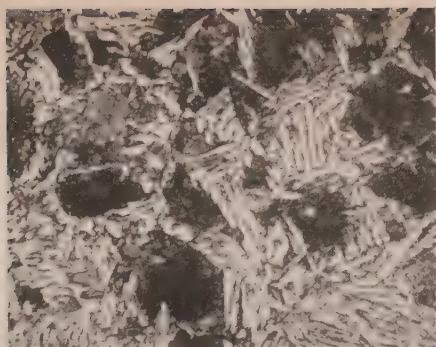
STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF LARGE HEAT-TREATED FORGINGS (a) NEAR OUTSIDE SURFACE; (b) AT MIDDLE OF 8-IN. WALL

Type of steel and treatment.	Composition.					Mechanical tests.							Micro-graph.
	Carbon, per cent.	Manganese, per cent.	Nickel, per cent.	Chromium, per cent.	Molybdenum, per cent.	Elastic limit, tons per sq. in.	Yield point, tons per sq. in.	Maximum load, tons per sq. in.	Elongation, per cent. on 2 in.	Reduction of area, per cent.	Izod impact figure, ft.-lb.		
Nickel O.H. 850°, T. 460°	0.33	0.66	3.82	Tr.	Nil	(a) 27 (b) 24	31.5 29.4	48.2 45.7	19 21	37 41	20 28	A B	
Nickel O.H. 835°, T. 540°	0.38	0.74	3.47	0.26	Nil	(a) 35 (b) 29	43.0 36.9	55.1 48.7	17 16	43 39	15 16	C D	
Nickel-chromium O.H. 850°, T. 620°	0.28	0.37	3.62	0.67	Nil	(a) 34 (b) 29	37.4 33.0	46.5 43.9	17 19	39 43	21 36	E F	
Nickel-chromium-molybdenum O.H. 835°, T. 650°	0.29	0.48	2.47	0.64	0.47	(a) 37 (b) 37	41.7 41.7	51.9 51.9	19 19	49 49	31 29	G H	

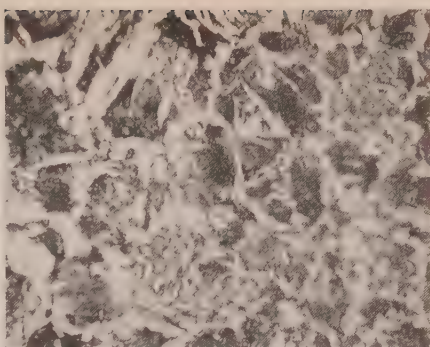
In very large forgings of carbon or nickel steels when the rate of cooling is not sufficient to depress the transformation to Ar''' (the martensite point) there is separation of ferrite in the form of a network and decomposition of the austenite occurs at Ar' (see p. 110) giving pearlite, sorbitic pearlite, or troostite which is subsequently tempered to sorbite.

In very large forgings of nickel-chromium and nickel-chromium-molybdenum steels, when the rate of cooling is not sufficient to depress the transformation to Ar''', most of the change will occur at the intermediate position Ar'' giving bainite with an acicular microstructure which persists on tempering.

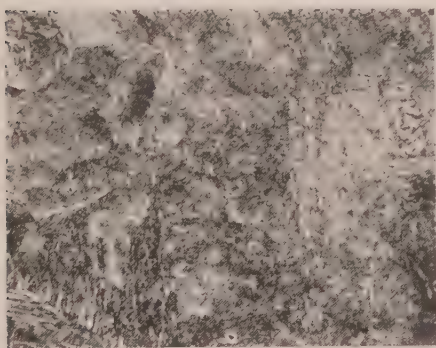
In this connection see W. T. Griffiths, L. B. Pfeil and N. P. Allen, "The Intermediate Transformation in Alloy Steels," *Iron and Steel Institute, Second Alloy Steels Report*, 1939, p. 343.



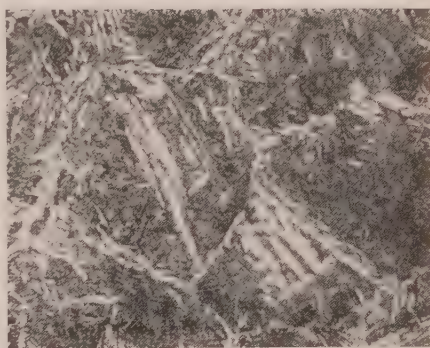
A



B



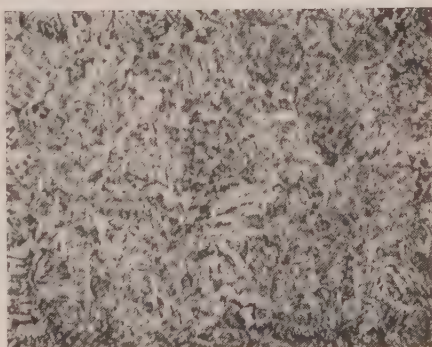
C



D



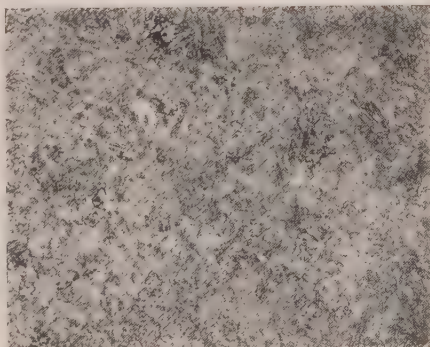
E



F



G



H

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

the terms "upper bainite" and "lower bainite" have been introduced. The acicular microstructure persists on tempering, but carbide particles are larger than in sorbite obtained by tempering martensite and the mechanical properties of tempered bainite are inferior to those of tempered martensite.

Nickel Steels

In the pearlitic steels the nickel passes mainly into solid solution in the ferrite, a small proportion being associated as Ni_3C with the Fe_3C of the cementite. The principal pearlitic nickel steels in commercial use are those containing 0.25 to 0.40 per cent. of carbon, with 3 to 3.75 per cent. of nickel. They are used in the heat-treated condition for crankshafts, axles, connecting rods, etc., as well as for components of ordnance. Some changes in their structure on heat treatment are illustrated in Pl. 34. The critical temperatures A_{r3} and A_{r1} are much lower than in carbon steels, and for a given rate of cooling the separation of ferrite and formation of pearlite take place less readily. The presence of 3 per cent. of nickel lowers A_{c1} by over 30°C . and the maximum tempering temperature which may safely be applied must be correspondingly lower than that permissible for carbon steel (see p. 104). The A_{c3} point is lowered still more and a lower hardening temperature than for carbon steel is permissible. On the other hand, there is a wider range of hardening temperatures above A_{c3} , resulting in no deterioration in properties, so that there is no danger in exceeding A_{c3} by a good margin. Three per cent. of nickel reduces the carbon content of the eutectoid to about 0.75 per cent., but a nickel steel containing such high carbon readily deposits graphite during annealing or hot rolling, and chromium or manganese must be added to keep the carbon in the combined state.

Nickel steels containing about 0.1 per cent. of carbon, and 2 to 5 per cent. of nickel are used for case hardening. If the surface of a 5 per cent. nickel steel is carburized to about 0.9 per cent. of carbon it will be martensitic after comparatively slow cooling; and a structure is thus produced to obtain which carburizing and quenching would be necessary in a case-hardened mild steel. A 2 per cent. nickel steel similarly carburized and slowly cooled would be troostitic. Pl. 34A shows a steel containing 9.1 per cent. of nickel and 0.16 per cent. of carbon, very slowly cooled, and illustrates the structure of the martensitic steels.

Of the other nickel steels, the austenitic steels (Pl. 28A), con-

taining 25 to 35 per cent. of nickel with about 0.2 per cent. of carbon, have been used for gas-engine valves, turbine blading, etc.; those containing 36 per cent. of nickel with low carbon (known as "invar" on account of their exceedingly small coefficient of dilatation between 0° C. and 350° C.) are used for clocks, geodetic and similar instruments, etc.

Manganese Steels

All commercial steels contain manganese, added to reduce oxides and to counteract the harmful influence of sulphide of iron by converting the sulphur into the comparatively harmless manganese sulphide. Any manganese in excess partly passes into solution in the iron, and partly combines with the carbon to give Mn_3C , which occurs in association with Fe_3C in the cementite.

Manganese lowers the critical ranges Ar_3 and Ar_1 in a marked degree. A small quantity of manganese tends to suppress the formation of lamellar pearlite; typical manganiferous pearlite is sorbitic (Pl. 22F), and of high tensile strength.

Pearlitic manganese steels are used as structural steels (p. 95), and steels with 1.5 to 2.0 per cent. manganese have excellent properties when suitably heat-treated (Pl. 36A, B). Heat-treated silicon-manganese steels containing 1.5 to 2 per cent. of silicon are used for springs. Pl. 36E illustrates the structure of slowly cooled manganese steels of the martensitic class, which are of no industrial importance between 5 and 12 per cent. of manganese.

The important commercial manganese steel is Hadfield's, containing 12 to 14 per cent. of manganese, and about 1.5 per cent. of carbon. It is used for railway points and crossings, rock drills, stone crushers, armour, etc.; it possesses great resistance to wear and is austenitic in structure as used in the water-quenched condition, but any deformation undergone hardens the steel by the formation of martensite. In this, as in some other austenitic steels in which martensite or free carbide may be formed on slow cooling, such a change is suppressed and the properties improved by water-toughening, i.e. heating to 1000° C. and quenching in water (Pl. 36F).

Chromium Steels

The chromium in pearlitic steel occurs partly in solution in the ferrite, but chiefly as carbide. When chromium is below 2 per cent., the carbide is $(\text{Fe}, \text{Cr})_3\text{C}$. At about 2 per cent. chromium this is replaced by $(\text{Cr}, \text{Fe})_7\text{C}_3$. With more than 10 per cent.

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

chromium, the carbide is Cr_4C (with some chromium replaced by iron). Chromium raises the critical range (Ac_1 and Ac_3) on heating: the Ac_2 point is unchanged. It first lowers Ar_3 , but raises Ar_1 while at the same time tending to prevent the formation of pearlite on cooling. Chromium steels are very sensitive to rate of cooling; a small increase in the rate may cause almost entire suppression of the formation of pearlite. The maximum temperature from which cooling takes place has also a marked effect, and this is especially so for steels with high chromium content. A high initial temperature, like a quick rate of cooling, tends to lower the temperature of Ar_1 , and to suppress more completely the formation of pearlite. Small quantities of chromium (0.5 to 1.0 per cent.) improve the properties of heat-treated carbon steels, and diminish the rate at which tempering occurs. Such steels with 0.55 to 0.65 per cent. carbon are used for automobile springs and gear wheels, and with higher carbon for tools such as axes, chisels, files, etc. Ball bearings are made from steels containing 1.25 to 1.75 per cent. of chromium and 1 per cent. of carbon. These and other hyper-eutectoid chromium steels should receive a preliminary treatment before hardening to dissolve massive carbide and precipitate it in a finely divided form, so putting it into a condition in which solution readily occurs at the hardening temperature. Steels with 2 per cent. chromium and 0.8 to 1.8 per cent. carbon are intensely hard after treatment, and have been used for rock crushers, and also, welded in alternate layers with wrought iron, for safes. Steel with 3 per cent. chromium is shown in Pl. 35A, B. Low-carbon 6 per cent. chromium steels, on account of their superior resistance to corrosion, are used for tubes, valves and fittings of oil-cracking plant. With about 0.6 per cent. of carbon and 1.5 per cent. of silicon, or with about 8.5 per cent. of chromium, 0.45 per cent. of carbon and 3.0 per cent. of silicon, they are used for exhaust valves of internal combustion engines. On account of the high silicon, the hardening temperature must be high (1000°C . to 1050°C . for the 3 per cent. silicon steel). At the same time, the high chromium content permits the use of a higher tempering temperature (up to 850°C .). Corrosion- and heat-resisting steels containing chromium are dealt with in a later section.

Nickel-Chromium Steels

A great variety of these steels has been used for automobile and aeroplane parts, and also for guns, projectiles and armour plate. All such steels are pearlitic in the slowly cooled condition. They

give a wide range of properties depending on composition and tempering temperature. For thin sections required to give the highest possible tensile strength, a range of tempering temperatures between about 250°C. and 450°C. , depending on composition, should be avoided as likely to result in a poor notched-bar impact value. For forgings, the composition should be chosen to give the required properties in the section to be treated after tempering at a temperature not below 550°C. (or preferably 600°C.) to ensure removal of quenching stresses. Structures of the steel containing about 3.5 per cent. of nickel and 0.5 per cent. chromium are shown in Pl. 35c, E and 37E, F. In this steel, Ac_1 occurs at about 720°C. The position of Ar_1 depends on the initial temperature and the rate of cooling. Broadly speaking, if the steel is cooled fairly slowly from a temperature just above Ac_3 the carbide change occurs at about 600°C. , while with the same rate of cooling from a higher initial temperature the change at 600° (Ar') will be first partially and (as the initial temperature rises) almost totally suppressed and will be completed at 460° (Ar''). Air-cooling has a pronounced effect on most nickel-chromium steels in lowering the change point and suppressing the formation of pearlite with consequent partial hardening.

The true air-hardening steels are martensitic after air-cooling: their properties (especially as regards impact figure) are considerably improved without much loss of hardness, and with no change in microstructure, by tempering at 300° after air-hardening, or they may be tempered at 600°C. to 650°C. giving uniform sorbitic structures without free ferrite, and properties similar to those of oil-hardened and tempered nickel-chromium steel of lower chromium content.

Nickel-chromium steels are susceptible to temper brittleness. When slowly cooled from the tempering temperature they may have a low notched-bar impact value though ductility in the tensile test is not adversely affected. The impact value is also impaired if the hardened and tempered steel is reheated to 520°C. for a short time or held for a long time at a temperature of about 450°C. The transition temperature of tough to brittle fracture is raised by these treatments. The impact value may be restored if the steel is reheated to about 600°C. and cooled rapidly. Air-cooling may not be sufficiently rapid for forgings of large section, and oil- or water-cooling may be necessary to obtain a high impact figure. Such treatment may introduce harmful internal stresses in some types of forging and it is therefore fortunate that suscepti-

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

bility to temper brittleness is greatly reduced or eliminated by the presence of molybdenum. Nearly all nickel–chromium steels are now made to contain a small percentage of molybdenum. By a suitable etching technique the temper-brittle condition can be recognized in the microstructure. Temper brittleness is not confined to nickel–chromium steel. Chromium–manganese steels are also susceptible and the effect is intensified by a high phosphorus content.

Molybdenum Steels

Low-carbon 0.5 per cent. molybdenum steel has been widely used for high-temperature steam pipes, but carbon-molybdenum steels are rarely employed except to secure increased strength at raised temperatures. Molybdenum is, however, a valuable addition to other alloy steels, one point of interest being the small percentage which effects the maximum improvement. Molybdenum, when present in small quantities in the annealed steel, is partly combined with carbon to form a complex carbide of iron and molybdenum and is partly in solid solution in the ferrite.

The properties of a steel containing about 0.35 to 0.4 per cent. of carbon and 1.6 to 1.8 per cent. of manganese are greatly improved by the addition of 0.2 to 0.3 per cent. of molybdenum, which also reduces its susceptibility to temper-brittleness (Pl. 36A to D). The improvement of the properties is associated with the suppression of the separation of ferrite even at moderate rates of cooling.

Molybdenum improves the hardenability of alloy steels as a result of the marked lowering of the critical range on cooling which is a characteristic effect of the addition of molybdenum. For example, in nickel–chromium–molybdenum steels the Ar point can only be induced to occur at the upper or Ar' position (about 600° C.) when cooling is very slow indeed. With ordinary slow cooling, it occurs wholly at Ar'' (460° C.).

Of all the steels containing molybdenum, the nickel–chromium–molybdenum steels provide the best all-round combination of properties, and are extensively used for crankshafts, gears, dies for drop stampings, die-casting moulds, forgings and stampings for general engineering purposes. They find their most important applications where the use of large masses of metal is involved, e.g. for ordnance, turbine rotors and rotor discs (Pl. 35D, 38G, H).

In addition both nickel and chromium steels containing

molybdenum are widely used. Steels with 1 per cent. of chromium and 0.25 per cent. of molybdenum have many applications in the form of tubes, bars and forgings for aircraft and automobile components on account of their favourable mechanical properties and good weldability. Chromium-molybdenum steels containing 3 per cent. of chromium and 0.6 per cent. of molybdenum show a very good combination and range of properties for constructional engineering purposes: with 6 per cent. of chromium and 0.4 per cent. of molybdenum they are used for chemical high-pressure vessels. Chromium-molybdenum steels are distinguished by a high notched-bar impact figure, though the elastic limit and yield point are slightly lower than those of nickel-chromium-molybdenum steels of the same hardness. Nickel-molybdenum steels, on the other hand, show higher yield ratios with considerably lower impact figures than nickel-chromium-molybdenum steels, and when their tensile strength exceeds 60 tons per sq. in. they are more difficult to machine than chromium-molybdenum or nickel-chromium-molybdenum steels of the same hardness.

Vanadium Steels

In the pearlitic steels vanadium replaces iron in the cementite which, when the vanadium content reaches 5 per cent., consists entirely of V_4C_3 . Vanadium has a powerful effect on the mechanical properties of steel, and apart from its use in tool steel which may contain as much as 2.5 per cent. of vanadium it is rarely added in amounts exceeding 0.5 per cent.

Carbon-vanadium steels containing carbon 0.5 per cent., vanadium 0.2 per cent., are occasionally used, but the most commonly employed steel is the 1 per cent. chromium-vanadium steel used for case-hardened parts, such as gears, for small stampings and forgings, and with a higher carbon content, for springs (Pl. 39c). Nickel-vanadium steels and nickel-chromium-vanadium steels containing 0.1 to 0.3 per cent. of vanadium are sometimes employed to replace nickel-chromium steels, which they closely resemble in properties.

The effect of tempering on steels containing vanadium, hardened in sections of small or moderate size, differs from that of the corresponding steels without vanadium in that the regular fall in hardness is interrupted at temperatures between 500° C. and 600° C., though it sets in at an increased rate on tempering at higher temperatures. Thus, improved regularity of properties in routine tests can be achieved if the composition of the steel is so

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

adjusted as to make the required tests correspond to the flat part of the tempering curve.

The microstructure does not give any indication as to whether tempering has been carried out at or above this temperature range. Approximately constant hardness in spite of increasing tempering temperature appears to be the result of a superimposed temper-hardening effect due to the decomposition of a super-saturated solution of vanadium carbide in α -iron, probably formed by rapid cooling of the γ solid solution.

Use of Alloy Steels to increase the Efficiency of Hardening of Large Masses

An advantage of the use of alloy steels is that they enable mechanical properties of a high order to be obtained, by heat treatment, in large masses of steel. With large masses of carbon steel it is impossible to obtain, by oil-quenching, or even by water-quenching, a sufficiently fast rate of cooling to prevent the formation of a structure of ferrite and pearlite; but the addition of special elements which lower the critical range on cooling or suppress the separation of ferrite enables a slower rate of cooling to be successfully employed. The table in Pl. 37 illustrates the partial compensation of the effect of mass, (1) by more rapid quenching of carbon steel, (2) by the use of a nickel steel in which, however, the effect is still pronounced, but still better (3) by employing a nickel-chromium steel of suitable composition.

The properties of very large forgings can only be substantially improved by heat treatment when an alloy steel is used in which hardening is secured at the comparatively slow rates of cooling which are characteristic of the centre of a large mass of steel, quenched in oil. More drastic quenching may be employed when suitable precautions are taken against the danger of distortion and cracking; for example, interrupted water quenching may be used whereby the forging is rapidly cooled to a temperature below the "knee" of the T-T-T curve and then cooled more slowly.

If the average rate of cooling of the forging is near to the "critical rate of cooling" of the steel, that is, to the rate of cooling which will just produce efficient hardening, the material adjacent to the surface and to the ends is hardened much more than that at the centre, and the difference in properties persists, though to a reduced extent, after tempering.

On the other hand, the variation in properties from place to place in the forging after tempering is small if hardening is in-

efficient, so that no part is properly hardened, or if it is quite efficient, so that the forging is hardened throughout; but in the first instance the ratio of yield point to tensile strength is low and in the second instance it is high.

Of the steels illustrated in Pl. 38 it will be seen that the nickel-chromium-molybdenum steels was most uniform in properties. A comparison of the microstructures (Pl. 38) will show that the nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel forging was uniformly sorbitic throughout, but examination of the wall of the other forgings showed more ferrite at the centre than at the outside, though on account of the large separation of ferrite at the outside of the nickel steel forging the difference in structure was only slight.

The effect of a wide variation in composition on the structure and properties of nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel forgings is shown by comparing Pl. 39A and B.

Use of Alloy Steels to increase the Stability of the Hardened Condition at High Temperatures

Only carbon steels (usually containing over 0.9 per cent. of carbon) were used for cutting purposes up to the time of the discovery of the properties of tungsten steel by Mushet. Mushet's steel contained about 5 per cent. of tungsten, over 2 per cent. of carbon with high manganese and silicon, and had the property of self-hardening (i.e. the martensitic condition was retained after comparatively slow cooling in air). Hardened alloy steels in general do not soften so readily on tempering as carbon steels, and tungsten steel exhibits the property of retaining its hardness to a marked degree. Hence tools of this material were found to work at higher speeds than carbon tool-steel without damage due to heating.

Tool-steels were still further improved about 1900 by increasing the tungsten content to about 8 per cent. and adding about 4 per cent. of chromium; and later, modern high-speed tool-steels were introduced containing, on an average, carbon 0.6 to 0.7 per cent., tungsten 12 to 18 per cent., chromium 3 to 4 per cent., vanadium 0.25 to 1.0 per cent. (Pl. 39D, E, F). In other varieties, 5 to 12 per cent. of cobalt is added, or part of the tungsten is replaced by 4 to 8 per cent. of molybdenum or by molybdenum and cobalt. The high-tungsten steels are hardened by heating to about 1300° C. and cooling in air. Those containing cobalt require a higher hardening temperature, but a slightly lower temperature is used for the molybdenum steels. The soft

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

steel (slowly cooled from 800°C.) consists of globules of carbide in a groundmass of sorbitic pearlite; the hardened steel shows a complex carbide (probably $\text{Fe}_3\text{W}_3\text{C}$) in a martensite-austenite matrix. Whereas hardened carbon steel is appreciably softened by heating, say, to 250°C. , and rapidly loses its hardness at higher temperatures, these high chromium-tungsten steels show no progressive softening until the temperature reaches about 700°C. As the tempering temperature is raised from 300°C. to 650°C. they actually become harder, the austenite being converted into martensite. Heating to 500°C. to 600°C. according to composition therefore constitutes a secondary hardening.

Super-hard cutting tools are produced by brazing a sintered carbide tip on to a suitable tool body. The hard carbides frequently used are those of tungsten and titanium bonded together by cobalt (Pl. 40A).

Corrosion-resisting Steels

Stainless steel for cutlery contains about 12.5 to 14.5 per cent. of chromium and 0.3 to 0.4 per cent. of carbon. On account of the raising of the critical range, already referred to as an effect of chromium, it requires hardening from a temperature of 950°C. to 1000°C. Knife-blades are often quenched in an oil-bath at about 180°C. to 200°C. , or tempered at a similar temperature after quenching to give a Brinell hardness of about 550, or a tensile strength of about 110 tons per sq. in.

For general engineering purposes such as steam-turbine blades, pump rods, valves and machinery parts, a similar steel containing as a rule not more than 0.3 per cent. of carbon is used. The hardened steel may be tempered at temperatures between 550° and 700°C. to give a sorbitic structure (Pl. 41B), and a wide range of mechanical properties may be obtained by varying the composition and heat treatment. Thus, a low-carbon corrosion-resisting steel, commercially known as stainless iron, contains about 12 per cent. of chromium and under 0.1 per cent. of carbon, and when heat-treated develops less strength but greater ductility than ordinary stainless steel. Its structure as treated is often identical with that of the steels containing higher carbon, though if its hardening temperature has not been sufficiently high it may contain free chromiferous ferrite. With 12 per cent. of chromium the carbon content of the eutectoid is only 0.3 per cent., so that heat-treated steels with higher carbon tend to show free carbide, and those with lower carbon, free ferrite if complete

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

solution is not attained before quenching. It can be worked more readily than the steel with 0.3 per cent. carbon, and its lower carbon content makes it more resistant to some corrosive influences. It might therefore have a wide application except for the fact that, when great strength is not required, materials of far greater resistance are available in the austenitic corrosion-resisting steels.

Resistance to corrosion increases with the chromium content. It is therefore desirable for chromium to be as high as possible. When chromium reaches about 12 per cent. in the pure carbon-free chromium-iron alloy and about 18 per cent. in the alloy containing 0.25 per cent. carbon, the transformation of α to γ on heating ceases to take place and the alloy becomes unhardenable. In the presence of 2 per cent. of nickel the possibility of obtaining martensite on quenching is restored, but in a steel containing carbon 0.25, chromium 18 and nickel 2 per cent. tempering will not reduce the Brinell hardness to less than 240. Thus the 18 per cent. chromium steel has the highest resistance to corrosion obtainable in a heat-treatable steel. The addition of more than 2 per cent. of nickel results in steels containing more and more austenite after quenching and a more stable martensitic structure after tempering (with consequent hardness and brittleness), until with 8 per cent. of nickel the change in the constitution of the steels is complete and they then consist of stable austenite unaffected by heat treatment.

The 18 : 8 chromium-nickel type of steel (Pl. 41c) has very great advantages in exhibiting a high resistance to corrosion, coupled with a capacity for welding, hot-pressing and undergoing a considerable amount of cold-working; and such steels are therefore widely used for all kinds of corrosion-resisting fittings, chemical plant and domestic ware. They all possess a very low elastic limit and yield point, and their inferior strength cannot be improved by heat treatment, though it can be increased to a marked degree by cold-work followed by tempering. As regards corrosion resistance, the temperature of this tempering is of great importance. If an 18 : 8 chromium-nickel steel is heated within the range 500° C. to 700° C. precipitation of carbide occurs in the grain boundaries and it becomes liable to intercrystalline attack (Pl. 42A, B). This type of failure is sometimes known as "weld decay," since it was first observed in material adjacent to a weld which had been raised to the dangerous range of temperature during the welding operation.

Reheating to 950° C. to 1000° C. and air-cooling or quenching

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

will eliminate the defect, but such treatment is frequently inconvenient or impossible to carry out. It is therefore fortunate that the addition of niobium or of titanium (usually in the presence of tungsten also) has been found very greatly to reduce liability to weld decay, and steels of the 18 : 8 type of modern manufacture contain the necessary additions of these elements, which do not affect the normal structure or mechanical properties of the steel.

As a test for susceptibility to this intercrystalline corrosion, strips of steel (about $3 \times 1 \times \frac{1}{8}$ in.) may be immersed in a solution of 10 per cent. of copper sulphate and 10 per cent. of sulphuric acid in distilled water, contained in a flask fitted with a reflux condenser, and maintained at the boiling point for at least twenty-four hours. Under this treatment pure austenitic grains develop no weakness, but the intergranular films are attacked. The strips are subsequently bent over a radius equal to their own thickness and, in the absence of intergranular attack, should not crack. A steel which will withstand the action of this solution for seventy-two hours after having first been heated to 650° C. for half-hour may be regarded as immune from liability to weld decay.

Steels for High-temperature Service

In the choice of steels for operating at temperatures above 400° C. (up to which carbon steels are satisfactory) the most important factor is resistance to creep. Starting with carbon-molybdenum steels containing 0.5 per cent. of molybdenum, successive improvements have been achieved by adding to the 0.5 per cent. molybdenum steel 1 per cent. or more of chromium, or 0.25 per cent. of vanadium or 0.25 per cent. of vanadium plus 0.2 per cent. of titanium. The last of these can be used up to 560° C. Beyond this, resistance to oxidation and corrosion must also be provided, and high chromium alloys become important. These may be either the ferritic (Pl. 41B) or the austenitic type (Pl. 41D). Examples of the former are the 12 per cent. chromium steel with small additions of molybdenum, vanadium, tungsten or niobium, and the 25 per cent. chromium steel (Pl. 41E). A large number of austenitic steels are in use or in course of development with chromium : nickel ratios of 18 : 8 (or 13 : 13) to 25 : 22, and with the addition of molybdenum, niobium, titanium, tungsten or cobalt. Many of these additions endow the steel with precipitation-hardening properties. Some are strongly ferrite-forming, and compositions which are not wholly austenitic, when held at 600° C. to 850° C. for prolonged periods, undergo a structural

change with the separation of the σ phase (FeCr). This makes the steel brittle at room temperature and lowers its resistance to corrosion. Even at high temperatures it is not a desirable hardening constituent. Increase in the nickel or cobalt content tends to stabilize the austenite and so prevent the formation of the σ phase.

At temperatures for which these austenitic steels are suitable, they come into competition with the nickel-chromium base alloys of the Nimonic series (p. 179) developed to give good high-temperature properties in the cast and wrought condition combined with good resistance to oxidation and corrosion.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The usual methods of polishing are employed; grinding must be carried out with great care to avoid heating the specimen. Heating of a thin skin as a result of excessive pressure in grinding, followed by rapid conduction of the heat into the mass of the specimen, may even produce martensitic patches on the surface of some unhardened alloy steels.

Both carbon and alloy steels may be electrolytically polished in a solution of acetic anhydride and perchloric acid. The solution must be carefully made by pouring very slowly and little by little 785 c.c. of acetic anhydride into 215 c.c. of an aqueous solution of perchloric acid (density 1.45), the liquid being kept cool continuously. The solution should stand for twenty-four hours before use. A specimen prepared on 000 emery requires about five minutes at a current density of 4–6 amp. per sq. decimetre. An external voltage of about 50 volts is required. The solution must not be allowed to heat up to above 30° C. during the operation.*

High-alloy stainless and heat-resisting steels may be electrolytically polished in a 1 : 4 perchloric acid-methyl alcohol solution with an austenitic steel sheet as cathode.

It is dangerous to use a bakelite or bismuth-alloy (Wood's metal) mounting for specimens to be electrolytically polished in a perchloric acid solution.

Sintered carbide products, after being ground flat on a resinoid or metal bonded diamond wheel (or green grit wheel, e.g. 162 D or 100 G) are lapped on a cast-iron or copper lap with two successive grades of diamond dust (Grade A and 6–12 μ), and then

* See also H. J. Merchant: "Application of Electrolytic Polishing to Ferrous Metallography," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1947 (1), vol. 155, p. 179.

STRUCTURE & PROPERTIES OF ALLOY STEELS

polished by using 0–2 μ diamond dust moistened with a thin machine oil on a polishing wheel covered with a tough paper.

Etching

For pearlitic and martensitic steels of low alloy content the same reagents as for carbon steels are suitable.

Transformer steels containing about 4 per cent. silicon can be etched with 10 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

Austenitic manganese steels and some austenitic nickel steels etch readily with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. Other reagents suitable for austenitic manganese and nickel steels are a 5 per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid (sp. gr. 1.19) in alcohol, a saturated alcoholic solution of picric acid, or an acid solution of ferric chloride containing 5 gm. of ferric chloride and 50 c.c. hydrochloric acid in 100 c.c. water.

Stainless steels may be etched with a 10 per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid in alcohol. Its action is slow, the time of etching required being about five minutes for the full softened and thirty minutes for the hardened steel. The reagent specially recommended is an aqueous solution containing 10 per cent. by volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid and 10 per cent. by weight of ammonium persulphate.* This solution must be freshly made. If the material to be etched is very resistant, a stronger solution may be employed. Aqua regia alone should not be used, as it causes pitting, and its action, though rapid, is very irregular. A mixture of one part of nitric acid and two parts of hydrochloric in two parts of glycerol (Vilella's reagent) gives better results. The specimen should be warmed in hot water before immersion in this etching reagent. It is suitable for high-silicon alloys, high-carbon iron-chromium alloys, and high-speed tool-steel. For low-carbon iron-chromium alloys, nickel-chromium alloys and austenitic steels high in chromium, the amount of hydrochloric acid may be doubled and if necessary a little hydrogen peroxide added.

Electrolytic etching in a 10 per cent. aqueous solution of oxalic acid gives good results on austenitic heat-resisting steels. Carbide particles are shown up before the general structure is seen.

Free carbide in alloy steels is revealed by etching in alkaline sodium picrate, but its action is slower than on carbon steels and it does not blacken the carbides in chromium or tungsten steels.

* The use in an open room of reagents containing strong acids, and especially those which generate free chlorine, involves risk of damage to instruments and apparatus.

For distinguishing carbides in chromium steels an alkaline solution of potassium ferricyanide has been used containing 10 gm. of potassium ferricyanide and 10 gm. of potassium hydroxide in 100 c.c. water (Murakami's reagent), or the amount of ferricyanide may be doubled (Daeves's reagent). The cold solution etches carbides in chromium steels and tungstides in high-speed tool-steel in about twenty seconds, but about five minutes are required in the boiling solution to colour pure cementite (Fe_3C). These reagents are also useful for hard metal tools. Heat tinting after etching helps to identify the constituents. After the specimen has been heated to about 450°C . in air, tungsten carbide appears grey, tantalum carbide yellow, titanium carbide (containing tungsten carbide in solution) light brown and cobalt blue.*

For detecting the temper-brittle condition in alloy steels, a specimen of steel which has been subjected to an embrittling treatment may be etched with a solution of 20 gm. of picric acid and 1 gm. of cetyl trimethyl ammonium bromide in 100 c.c. ether and 100 c.c. water (McLean and Northcott).† This solution, which is a modification of the picric acid—"Zephiran chloride" reagent,‡ attacks the grain boundaries of embrittled steels, but not of steels in the tough condition or not susceptible to temper-brittleness.

* Photomicrographs in colour were published by J. H. Powers and W. J. Loach, *Steel*, October 19, 1953, p. 93.

† *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1948 (1), vol. 158, p. 169.

‡ *Trans. American Society for Metals*, 1947, vol. 39, p. 109.

CHAPTER X

NON-METALLIC INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

THE microscopical examination of defects in steel forms an essential part of steelworks inspection and control of the quality of output; and the metallographist should work in close co-operation with the production departments concerned so that any abnormal occurrence may be immediately studied and quickly set right. The metallurgist engaged in industrial work is also frequently called upon to investigate failures which have occurred in service. The cause of a failure cannot be learned merely by examining a microsection cut from some easily accessible corner of a failed part. In fact, it is not desirable to form an opinion on microscopical evidence alone without full knowledge of the circumstances in which the failure occurred. In selecting specimens for micro-examination it is therefore advisable to make a preliminary examination, which should be as extensive as possible. The damaged equipment should be viewed, the stresses, both designed and unforeseen, to which it may have been subjected studied, and the characteristics of any fracture which may have occurred noted.

It is often desirable to examine adjacent external surfaces; first, after cleaning, for evidence of deformation, and then, after treatment with macro-etching reagents, when seams, cracks, heterogeneity, excessive grain size or other defects may be revealed and the position of any welds or local hardening recognized. Examination of a suitably prepared surface with a microscope of the "works" type, which can be set up on the surface of a large piece of metal (Pl. 3B), will often provide a valuable method of checking the effectiveness of grain refinement of a large casting or forging. Material likely to be of value for examination in the laboratory can then be selected, arrangements being made to safeguard the surface of the fracture from rusting and damage. Facilities should be available for the examination of fractures under a low-power binocular microscope of the Greenough type. Sometimes slag adhering to the fracture may be observed. For distinguishing the grey-green of slag, diffuse daylight is preferable to artificial light. On receipt of material in the laboratory,

sections for more detailed macro-examination are prepared. From these, in turn, material for micro-examination is selected.*

Macro-examination usually includes sulphur printing and macro-etching. These may be supplemented, when necessary, by magnetic crack detection, exploration of the surface by hardness tests or more complete mechanical tests in certain cases. Sulphur prints are obtained by applying to the surface of the steel a photographic bromide paper soaked in dilute sulphuric acid. The sulphuric acid liberates sulphuretted hydrogen from the sulphide particles present in the steel, and this reacts with the silver bromide in the immediate vicinity producing dark-coloured spots of silver sulphide. The sulphur print is valuable in that it reveals in a graphic way the uneven distribution of sulphur in the steel, with which is usually associated an uneven distribution of other elements such as phosphorus; but it is not safe to estimate the sulphur content from the density of the print. Thus with the same percentage of sulphur a mild steel (carbon 0.2, manganese 0.3 per cent.) yields a lighter print than a rail steel (carbon 0.5, manganese 1.0 per cent.). Sulphur prints of high-chromium steels may be very misleading if taken as an indication of sulphur content. A stainless steel containing 0.08 per cent. of sulphur and 0.2 per cent. of manganese gives a much fainter print than one containing 0.03 per cent. of sulphur and 0.5 per cent. of manganese.

By etching the surface, both the crystalline character of the steel and any definite heterogeneity are revealed. Permanent records (macro-prints) of the structure of some steels can be obtained after etching with copper ammonium chloride solutions, the specimens being used as a printing plate. The solution acts by attacking the purer portions which solidified first with greater vigour than it does the impure portions which solidified later. The portions in relief, and thus the darker areas in the prints, therefore, represent the less pure material.

Many defects in steel are traceable to the ingot, and thus one of the most important applications of macroscopical examination is found in the investigation of ingot structures. It is impossible in a short space to deal with so large a subject: reference may be made to the Reports of the Iron and Steel Institute Committee on the Heterogeneity of Steel Ingots by those who have occasion to follow this matter up.†

* Two publications of the Institution of Metallurgists, "The Fracture of Metals" (1950) and "The Inspection and Testing of Metals" (1954), give much valuable advice on this subject, with interesting examples of actual investigations.

† *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1926 (1), p. 39; 1928 (1), p. 401; 1929 (1), p. 305, and Special Reports, Nos. 2, 4, 9, 16, 25 and 29.

PLATES

39 - 49

A. Low alloy steel forging (carbon 0.35, manganese 1.28, nickel 0.8, chromium 0.15, molybdenum 0.3 per cent.) oil-hardened from 870° C. and tempered at 620° C. Fine coalesced carbide in a groundmass of ferrite, the arrangement of the carbide preserving the acicular appearance of martensite or bainite of the hardened steel. × 500.

B. Nickel-chromium-molybdenum-vanadium steel forging (carbon 0.3, manganese 0.4, nickel 3.2, chromium 0.75, molybdenum 0.4, vanadium 0.07 per cent.) oil-hardened from 860° C. and tempered at 610° C. Sorbite. × 500.

Transverse tests of these forgings were :

	Yield point, tons per sq. in.	Maximum load, tons per sq. in.	Elongation per cent. on 2 in.	Reduction of area, per cent.	Izod impact figure.	Brinell hardness number.
A. . .	30	42	23	52	30	196
B. . .	58	65	16	42	40	315

C. Chromium-vanadium spring steel (carbon 0.45, chromium 1.0, vanadium 0.18 per cent.), oil-hardened from 900° C. and tempered at 550° C. Sorbite. × 1000.

The fatigue properties of spring steels are impaired by surface defects and also by surface decarburization, which, under similar conditions, occurs to a greater depth in silico-manganese steels than in chromium-vanadium steels.

A, B and C. Etched in 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

18 : 4 : 1 High-speed tool steel.

Carbon about 0.75, tungsten 18, chromium 4, vanadium 1 per cent. with about 0.2 per cent. silicon and 0.3 per cent. manganese.

D. As annealed, Carbides in a dark etching matrix of sorbitic or troostitic pearlite. × 500.
The Brinell hardness in this condition is about 225.

E. As hardened by quenching in warm oil or air from 1320° C.
Carbide in a structureless ground mass of martensite and retained austenite, resembling austenite in appearance but magnetic and very hard. × 500.
Vickers diamond hardness 790.

F. As hardened followed by one secondary hardening treatment at about 580° C Carbide in a martensitic matrix. × 500.
Vickers diamond hardness 850.

D, E and F. Etched in aqua regia-glycerol.

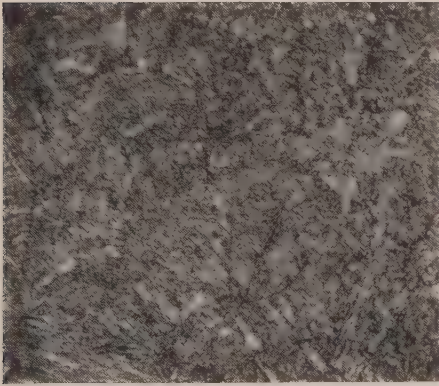
(Photomicrographs D, E and F supplied by Messrs. Edgar Allen & Co. Ltd.)



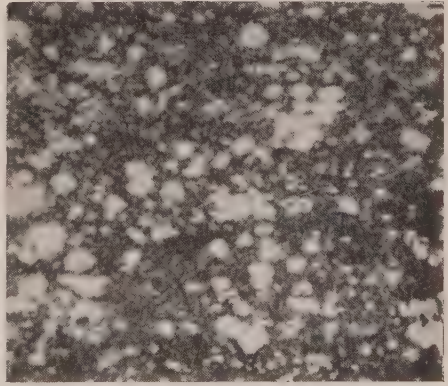
A



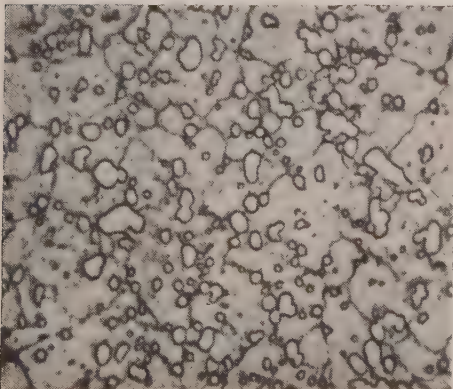
B



C



D



E



F

Powder Metallurgy Products.

Cemented carbides—"Hard metals."

- A. Sintered hard-metal tool alloy (tungsten carbide, WC, 78, titanium carbide, TiC, 12, cobalt 10 per cent.) showing sharp angular grains of WC, grey in colour; rounded grains of TiC with some WC in solid solution (brownish in colour), and cobalt (white).

Etched in a solution containing 10 per cent. potassium hydroxide and 10 per cent. potassium ferricyanide. × 1500.

This specimen shows a rather coarser grain than a typical tool alloy, but it is more difficult to observe the grain shapes in fine-grained alloys. The TiC-rich phase occupies more space than would be expected from a content of 12 per cent., but this is due to the high solubility of WC in TiC.

- B. Sintered titanium carbide-nickel alloy (titanium carbide, TiC, 50, nickel 50 per cent.) showing grey rounded grains of TiC in a matrix of nickel (white). The bond is strengthened by solution of some of the TiC.

Anodically etched in 8 per cent. solution of oxalic acid for five to ten seconds.

× 1500.

Alloys with 40 to 50 per cent. of binder are tougher at room temperature than those with only 20 to 30 per cent. and show better properties at 950° C. Cobalt affords a slightly stronger bond than nickel, but heat-resisting alloy bonds containing chromium and other metals give still better creep strength and resistance to scaling.

E. M. Trent and A. Carter: "Sintered Titanium Carbide Alloys," *Iron and Steel Institute, Special Report No. 58, 1956, p. 272.*

Tungsten-base alloys—"Heavy alloys."

- C. Sintered tungsten-base alloy (tungsten 90, nickel 7, iron 3 per cent.) showing rounded grains of γ -tungsten in a matrix of nickel-iron solid solution.

Etched in a solution containing two parts of 10 per cent. potassium ferricyanide and one part of 10 per cent. sodium hydroxide. — × 200.

- D. Sintered tungsten-base alloy (G.E.C. heavy alloy; tungsten 90, nickel 7.5, copper 2.5 per cent.) showing rounded grains of γ -tungsten in a matrix of nickel-copper solid solution.

Etching reagent as for C above. × 200.

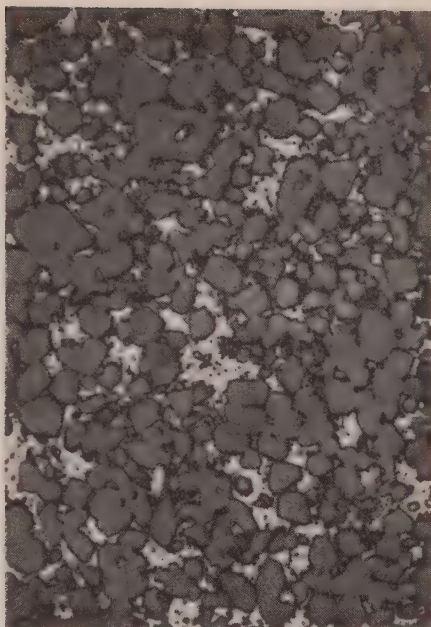
Specimens C and D were mounted in bakelite, polished by the standard method on emery papers and then nearly to completion on a selvyt cloth with alumina as the abrasive. Finally a short polish on a diamond wheel was given followed by a polish etch for about ten seconds to bring up the grain boundaries and then by etching in the usual way.

E. C. Green, D. J. Jones and W. R. Pitkin: "Developments of High-Density Alloys," *Iron and Steel Institute, Special Report No. 58, 1956, p. 253.*

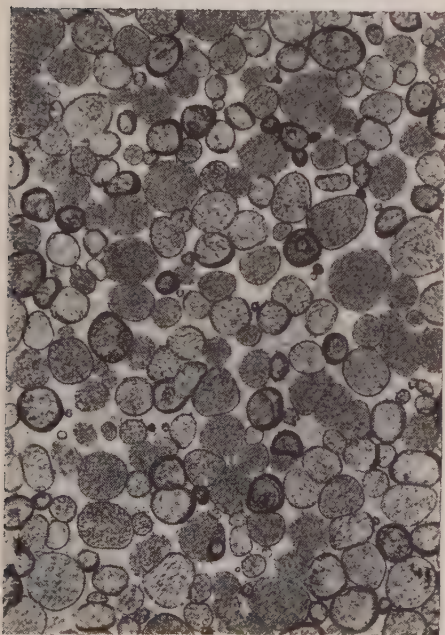
(Photomicrographs A and B supplied by Hard Metal Tools Ltd., and C and D by the General Electric Company Ltd.)



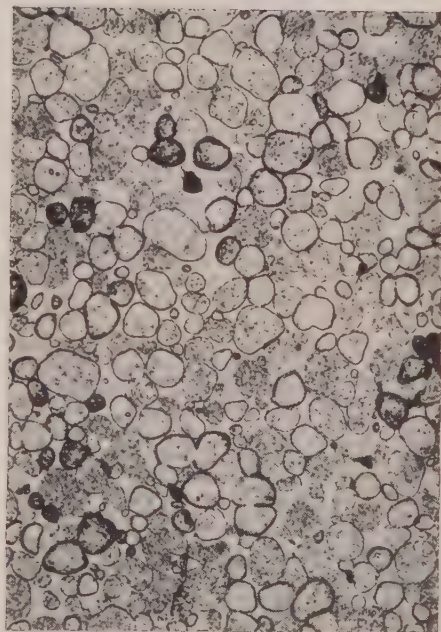
A



B



C



D

All (except F) etched with 10 per cent. ammonium persulphate in 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid.

A. Low-carbon stainless steel (carbon 0.18 per cent., chromium 13 per cent.) air-hardened from 1000° C., reheated to 750° C. and slowly cooled.

After this treatment the steel is in the soft condition consisting of globules of carbide in a groundmass of chromiferous ferrite. × 1000.

B. Stainless steel containing carbon 0.35 per cent. and chromium 13.5 per cent., oil-hardened and tempered. Sorbite. × 250.

C. Austenitic stainless steel (carbon 0.15 per cent., nickel 7.8 per cent., chromium 19.8 per cent.), rolled, annealed at 1000° C. and cooled in air, showing twinning of the γ -iron solid solution × 50.

D. Austenitic stainless and heat-resisting steel (carbon 0.43, manganese 1.57, nickel 36.2, chromium 11.0 per cent.), water-quenched from 1000° C. and reheated at 700° C. After water-quenching the steel consists of polyhedral grains of austenite : reheating causes a uniform precipitation of carbide which reduces elongation and notched-bar impact figure, but increases the hardness and tensile strength, in particular the strength at high temperatures. × 250.

E. Chromium-iron alloy (carbon 0.2 per cent., chromium 28 per cent.), heated to 1000° and cooled in air, consisting of large grains of chromiferous ferrite and coalesced particles of carbide. × 100.

F. Stellite. The composition of stellite varies : the original material contained cobalt 75 per cent., chromium 25 per cent. The specimen shown contains cobalt 45 per cent., chromium 30 per cent., tungsten 20 per cent., and other elements 5 per cent. The dendritic structure of the cast alloy is not modified, nor is the hardness affected by heat treatment at temperatures up to 1150° C. Crushing strength, 135 tons per sq. in.

Etched with aqua regia. × 100.

Mechanical Properties associated with the structures illustrated

	A.	B.	C.	E.
Yield point, tons per sq. in. .	35	46	13	20
Maximum load, tons per sq. in. .	42	54	43	36
Elongation, per cent. on 2 in. .	30	20	50	30
Reduction of area, per cent. .	65	50	60	50
Izod impact figure, ft.-lb. .	120	27	115	2
Brinell hardness number .	198	245	160	155



A



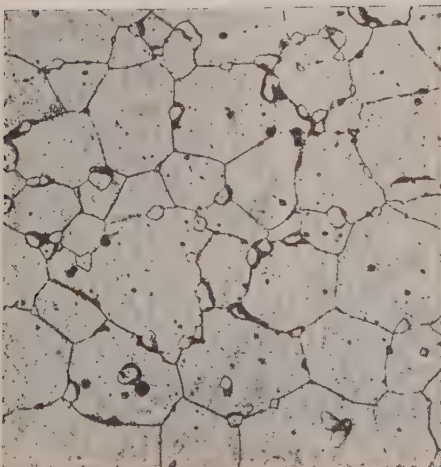
B



C



D



E



F

All (except B) etched in 10 per cent. ammonium persulphate in 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid.

- A. Radial section of an austenitic steel tube (carbon 0.18 per cent., nickel 10.5 per cent., chromium 16.2 per cent.). The section was taken near a welded flange. The separation of a carbide constituent has occurred at the grain boundaries throughout the wall thickness of the tube, and intergranular corrosion has taken place at the inner surface of the tube which was used for conveying acids.

Carbide in the grain boundaries can be removed by reheating to 1000° C. and cooling rapidly.

× 100.

- B. Inter-crystalline network of cracks at the inner wall of the same tube as shown in A.

Unetched.

× 50.

- C. Cold-rolled austenitic stainless steel (carbon 0.15, nickel 9.9, chromium 16.0, tungsten 1.0 per cent.).

Tensile strength, 76 tons per sq. in.

Elongation, 6 per cent.

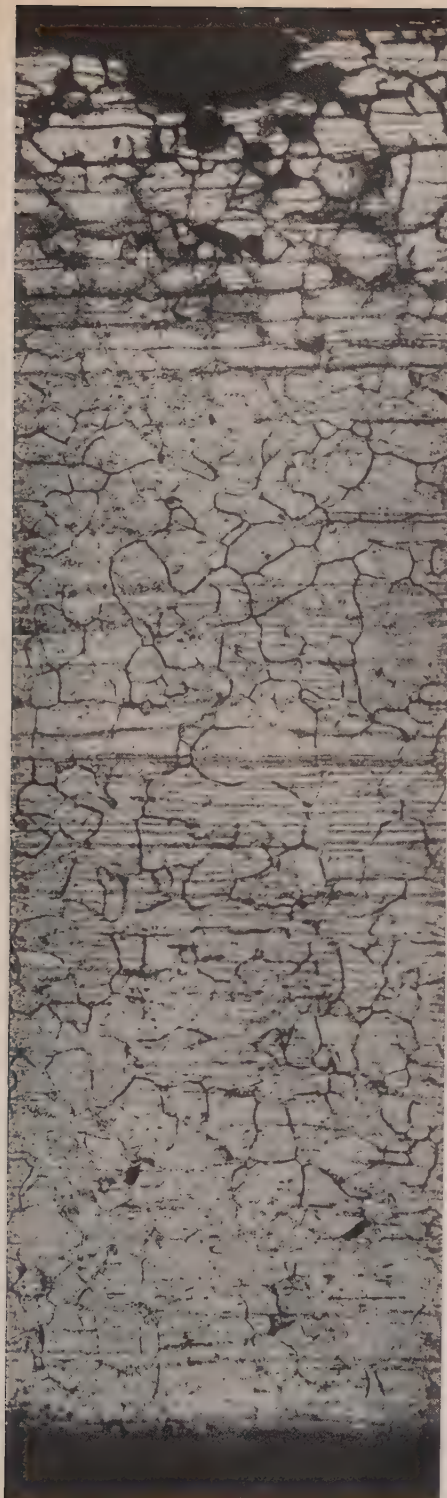
Brinell hardness number, 359.

No change in the microstructure or hardness occurs on heating to 450° C., but the elastic limit is raised by this treatment; above this temperature recrystallization and softening begin to set in. If, however, the cold-worked steel is heated at temperatures between 550° C. and 900° C., precipitation of carbide occurs both within and around the grains, with consequent risk of inter-crystalline corrosion. Hence a steel of this composition cannot be used in the partially softened condition. It must be used in the cold-worked condition (or reheated to not more than 500° C.) or in the softened condition after heating to 1000° C.

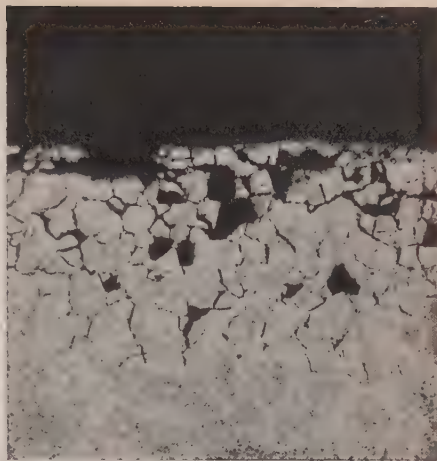
× 1000.

- D. Dendritic structure of the austenitic stainless steel shown in A, melted locally by the electric arc. Interdendritic carbide segregation so produced is very persistent, and cannot be removed as easily as the intergranular carbide shown in A.

× 100.



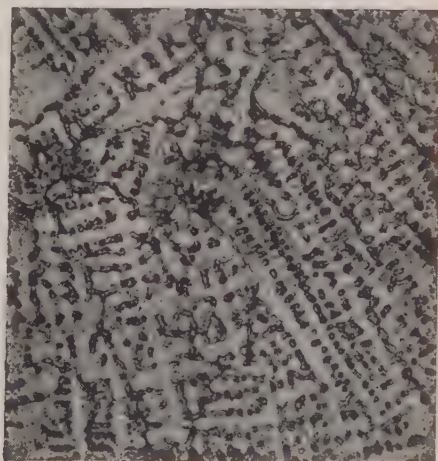
A



B



C



D

Macrostructure of a steel ingot.

Transverse sections from an 8-ton ingot of nickel-chromium steel.

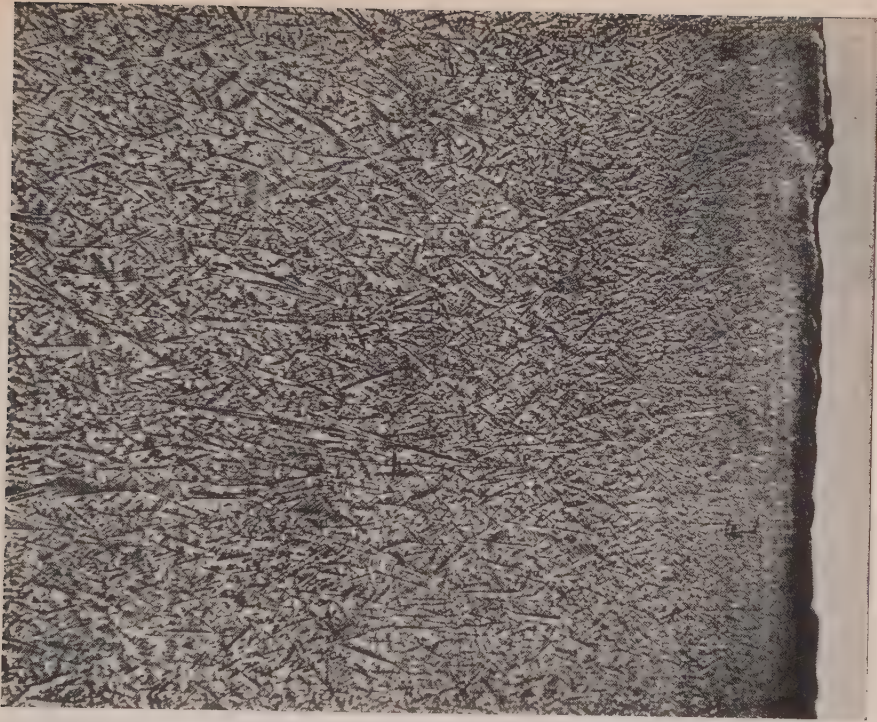
A. Outside.

B. Half-way between centre and outside.

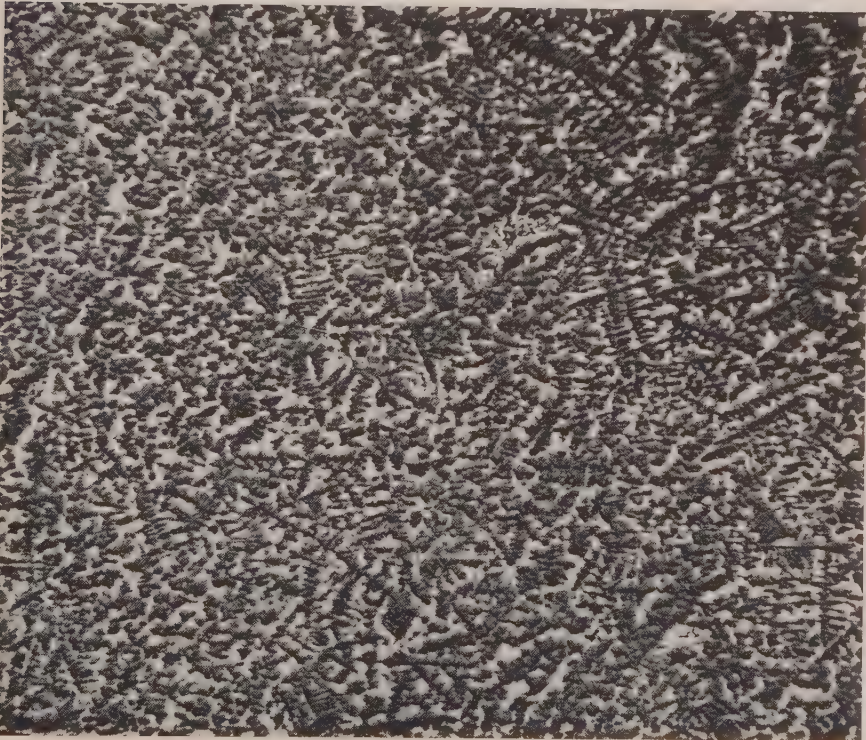
Etched with acid copper ammonium chloride solution.

× 5.

On account of the chilling action of the mould, small crystals known as chill crystals, are formed at the edge of the ingot. These are succeeded by columnar crystals which have grown at right angles to the ingot surface. Since the rate of their growth is quickest in the direction of the steepest temperature gradient, no crystal orientated in a different direction has any chance of survival. Within the ingot where the temperature gradient is small, dendrites show a more irregular orientation. Here also crystallization may start simultaneously from many different nuclei and equiaxial grains are produced.



A



B

Macrostructures of alloy steel forgings.

- A. Part of the transverse section of a forging about 17 in. square, forged from an octagonal ingot 26 in. across the flats. Coarse columnar crystals in the outer portion of the forging changing to equiaxial crystals in the central portion. Flaws in the form of hair-line cracks are visible on the left of the photograph. The dark etching line in the centre of the lower edge is not a crack but a line of high carbon content, originally a corner segregate in the ingot. The steel to right and left of this position came from adjacent sides of the octagonal ingot.

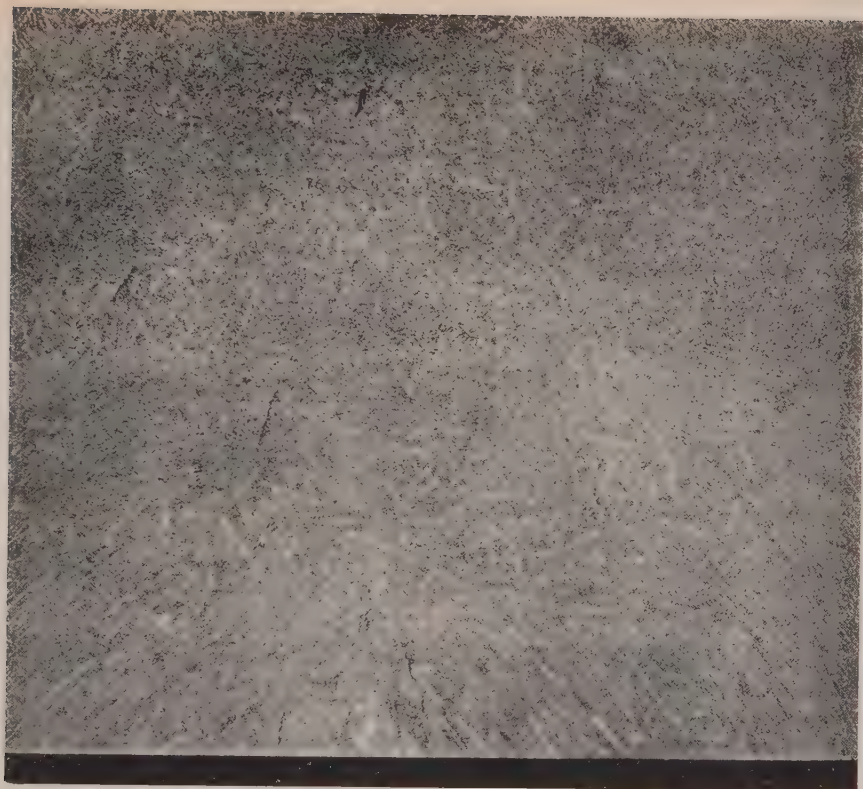
Etched with nitric acid in alcohol. Actual size

- B. Interdendritic segregation persisting after forging and heat treatment. The forging was similar to that from which A was taken, and had been annealed, oil-hardened and tempered. Diamond hardness tests (the impressions being visible in the photograph) showed differences as great as 36 in hardness between closely adjacent regions, the high-carbon dark-etching material being invariably harder than the purer light-etching material.

		Diamond hardness number.
Broad dark lines		270 and over
„ light regions		252 and under

The existence of such a degree of heterogeneity increases the risk of cracking during cooling after forging or during heat treatment, and indicates that the original dendritic segregation of the ingot must have been excessive.

Etched with ammonium persulphate solution. × 2.5.



A



B

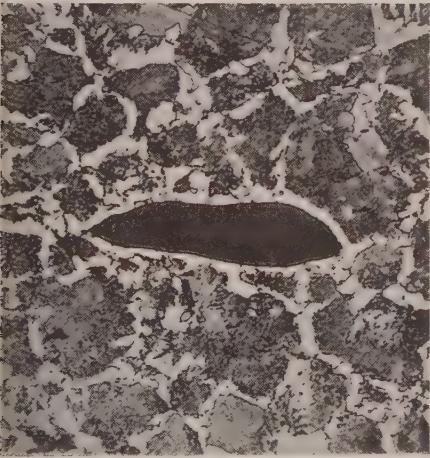
- A. Interdendritic segregation of carbide in the steel of which the macrostructure is shown in Pl. 44A. Air-hardened and tempered. Tensile test-pieces taken with their axes across these lines of segregation failed prematurely with very little elongation after the yield point was exceeded.
Etched with nitric acid in alcohol. × 50.
- B. Transverse section across the bottom of a pipe showing slag inclusion.
Unetched. × 100.
- C. Inclusion of manganese sulphide in a forging of 0.35 per cent. carbon steel, oil-hardened and tempered. The general structure consists of a ferrite network enclosing grains of coarse sorbite; the separation of ferrite round inclusions (as here shown) is commonly observed.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 250.
- D. Sulphide films (iron and manganese sulphides) in ferrite in a steel casting containing 0.4 per cent. carbon.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- E. Alumina in steel. Longitudinal section.
Unetched. × 100.
Fine particles, not elongated by hot-working but having the appearance of black specks; difficult to polish without scoring the surface.
- F. Manganese sulphide in steel. Longitudinal section.
Unetched. × 100.
Dove-grey. Not affected by ordinary etching in alcoholic nitric acid, but blackened by etching five minutes in boiling alkaline sodium picrate.



A



B



C



D



E



F

- A. Roke in steel bar, carbon 0.4 per cent. (ferrite and pearlite), showing decarburized area (absence of pearlite) round roke.

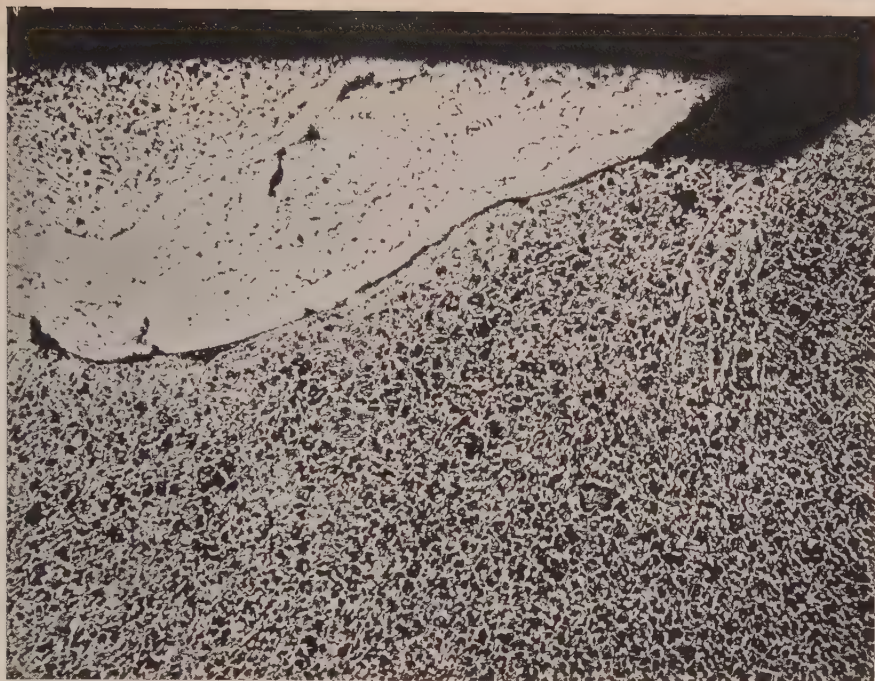
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 50.

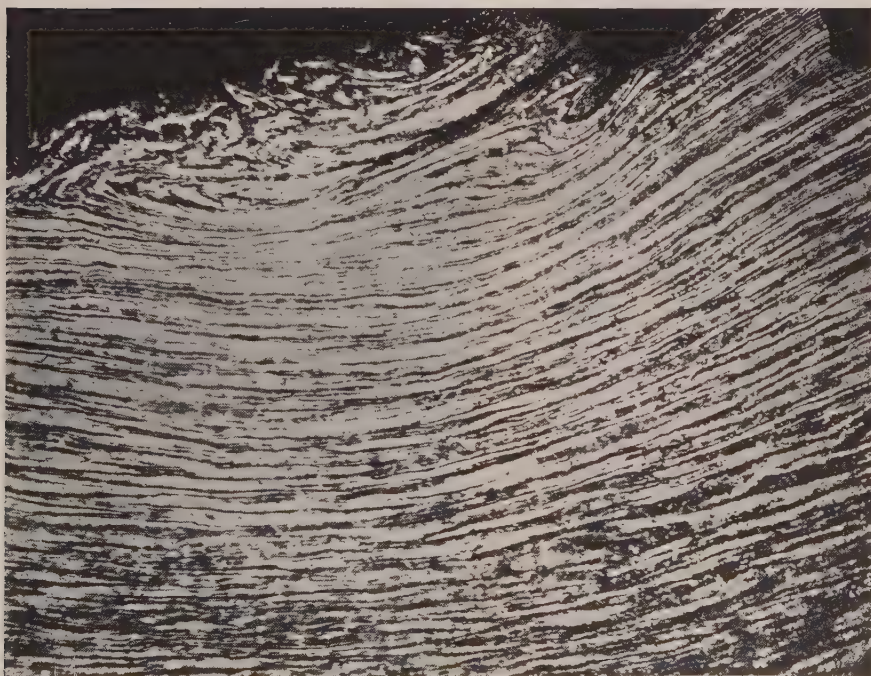
- B. Roke in steel bar, carbon 0.4 per cent., etched with Stead's reagent, showing the distribution of phosphorus and the irregularity of flow of the metal round the roke. The dark etching bands are those on which copper was deposited, and indicate the regions in which the phosphorus is lowest.

× 25.

Micro-examination of transverse sections is required to detect seams and rokes with certainty. They are not easy to detect in hot-rolled bar by pickling, as the pickled bar almost always shows a reedy appearance due to fine strings of inclusions at or near the surface. The presence of such inclusions may also introduce some uncertainty into the indications of a magnetic test on machined or cold-drawn bar stock, especially if of free-cutting steel. In either case, macro-examination does not reveal the depth or severity of the defect.



A



B

- A. Ghost, consisting of ferrite rich in phosphorus, and containing inclusions of manganese sulphide in a heat-treated 0.45 per cent. carbon steel forging (ferrite network enclosing grains of sorbite). Longitudinal section. Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- B. Transverse section from a nickel–chromium steel forging, showing dendritic structure. Etched with Stead's reagent. Oblique illumination.
The regions on which copper was not deposited are richest in phosphorus, and appear dark under oblique illumination. × 5.
- C. Longitudinal section from the same forging. Etched with Stead's reagent. Oblique illumination. The dark streaks are ghost lines, rich in phosphorus, on which no copper was deposited. Under vertical illumination they would appear bright in comparison with the copper-coated purer regions. × 5.



A



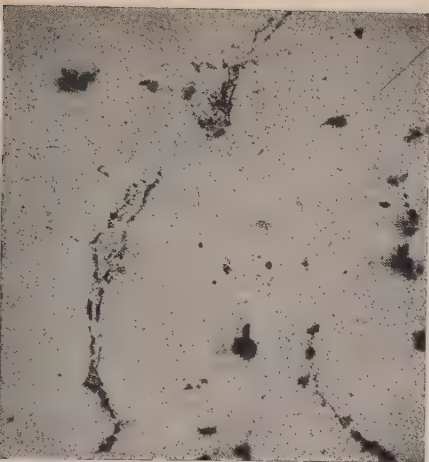
B



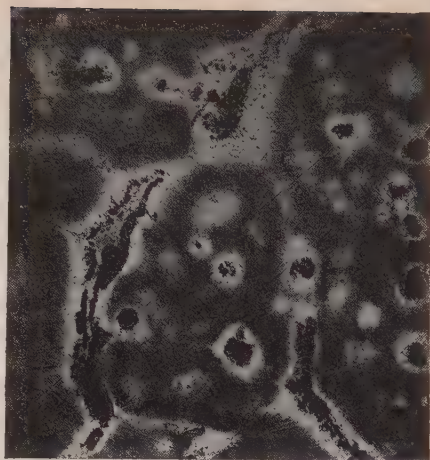
C

Defects in steel.

- A. Section across the bottom of a pipe in 0.4 per cent. carbon steel, showing cavities and sulphide inclusions.
Unetched. × 100
- B. The same field as in A, etched with Stead's reagent. The light areas on which no copper has been deposited are richest in phosphorus. × 100.
- C. Iron-iron phosphide eutectic enclosed in pearlite occurring near the pipe in a 0.4 per cent. carbon steel.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 1000.
- D. Distribution of inclusions in the ferrite forming the boundaries of pearlite grains in a burnt steel.
Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- E. Burnt steel, 0.7 per cent. carbon, showing large grain size, intercrystalline cracks and decarburization.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.
- F. Mild steel plate, carbon 0.08 per cent., showing intercrystalline cracks in the ferrite. These were produced by the action of a hot sodium nitrate solution, while the steel was subjected to a bending stress.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.



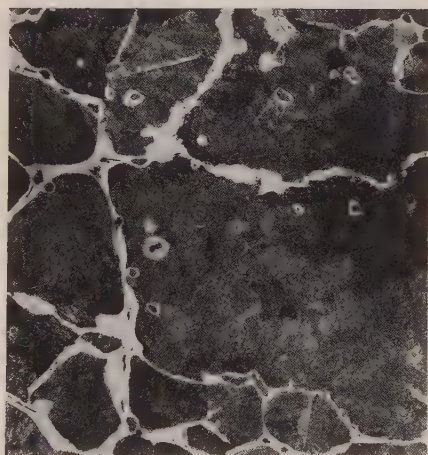
A



B



C



D



E



F

Defects in steel.

Etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

A. Crack in micro-segregated region of an oil-hardened and tempered nickel-chromium-molybdenum steel of Brinell hardness 300. Diamond hardness tests showed differences of over 50 in hardness between closely adjacent regions. This indicates excessive interdendritic segregation in the original ingot. × 100.

B and C. Cracks associated with non-metallic inclusions in the martensite of a hardened nickel-chromium steel. The cracks may have been formed during the cooling after forging or during the hardening process. They were not associated with micro-segregation of the type shown in A.

C is a composite photograph (three exposures) taken by blue light from a mercury lamp with a monochromat, N.A. 1.60.

Magnifications. B × 500.

C × 2500.



A



B



C

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

During the solidification of steel, well-defined dendritic crystals are formed, the outer regions of which are richer in carbon, phosphorus and non-metallic inclusions than the part which solidified first. This dendritic structure exhibits a considerable degree of permanence: it will survive annealing and heat treatment and it is not entirely destroyed by forging.

The ingot shows different types of crystallization in different

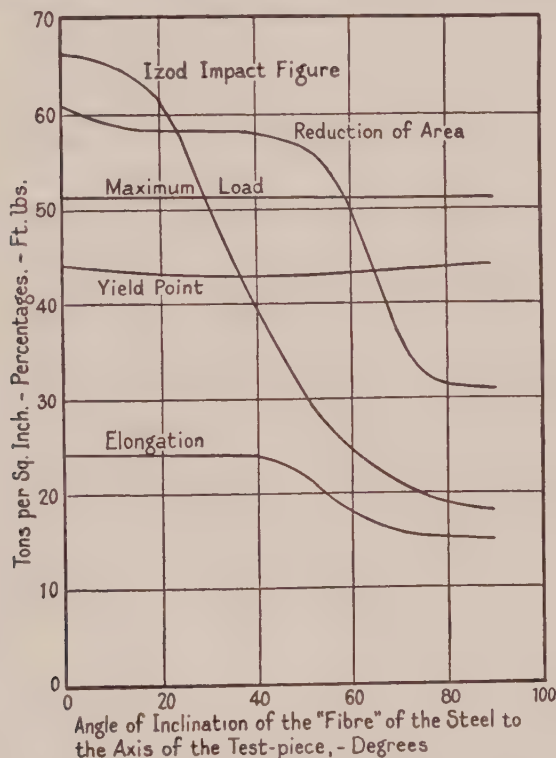


FIG. 35. Relation between Mechanical Properties and Direction of Test-piece in Forged Steel. (Brearley.)

parts. At the extreme outside there may be a thin layer of fine crystals; this is succeeded by columnar crystals which have grown out at right angles to the outer surfaces (Pl. 43A), while in the central region, where solidification has proceeded more slowly and from numerous centres, equiaxial crystals of irregular orientation are formed (Pl. 43B). Forging tends to destroy the primary crystalline structure. When the ingot is forged in a press, however, the columnar crystals may retain their identity in spite of considerable reduction in cross-section (Pl. 44), and they may be a source of weakness on account of the non-metallic inclusions and

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

segregates occurring in the interdendritic regions; but, ultimately, they, as well as the equiaxial crystals, are broken down and their outer sheath of less pure material is extended into fibres in the direction of the increase in length produced by the forging or rolling. This gives the macrostructure the appearance of a material having a "grain" like that of wood. The properties of the region of equiaxial crystals as cast, and after heat treatment, are the same in all directions, but after the steel has been forged its properties depend very much on the direction with respect to "grain" in which it is tested. This is shown in Fig. 35, which illustrates the relationship between the mechanical properties of the steel and the angle of inclination of the fibres of the steel to the axis of the test-piece.

For this reason, in the macrostructure of any component of an engineering structure the fibres or grain of the steel should always be at right angles to the principal shear or bending stress and should be parallel to the tensile stress. A glance at the macrostructure of such a component will reveal something of its history during manufacture, whether it has been forged to its finished form, or whether it has been machined, and if so at what positions: it will detect the presence of welds, their soundness and their effect on the surrounding metal: it will disclose lack of uniformity of composition, segregation and local defects, and in the examination of a component which has failed in service it may assist in the selection of regions for chemical analysis, mechanical tests or further microscopical examination.

Ingot Pattern

The cross-section of rolled bar, lightly macro-etched, e.g. with ammonium persulphate, may show indications of the form of the original square ingot. Even in small section wire and rod, rolled down from large ingots, the ingot pattern may persist and may be the cause of cracking when rod or bar is hardened. The ingot corner remains a source of weakness; for example, in gears machined from bar stock the teeth which coincide in position with ingot corners may show less than the normal endurance. The defect is less noticeable in forged bar.

Non-metallic Inclusions

Before it is deoxidized, liquid steel always contains iron oxide and sulphide, either in solution or in suspension. The addition of ferromanganese for deoxidizing results in the formation of man-

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

ganese sulphide (probably containing iron sulphide in solution) and manganese oxide, which, reacting with the refractory lining of the ladle or combining with the silicon present in the steel, forms manganese silicate. These impurities exist in larger or smaller masses in suspension in the steel, and tend to rise to the surface. The rate of rise is, however, very slow for the smaller particles and many become trapped in the steel as it solidifies. The impurities manganese sulphide and silicate are probably those most commonly occurring in steel.

Manganese Sulphide (MnS) occurs in streaks or globules of a dove-grey colour (Pl. 45F). It is elongated during rolling, and its form is unaltered by subsequent heat treatment. Hence the direction of the manganese sulphide inclusions reveals information regarding direction of forging or rolling even after complete recrystallization of the metal has taken place (Pl. 45C).

Iron Sulphide (FeS) occurs rarely in steels and is only present when there is insufficient manganese to ensure that all the sulphur occurs as manganese sulphide.

It is of a brownish-yellow colour and sometimes occurs round the grain boundaries of cast steel. It is very infusible and does not ball up like manganese sulphide; hence it is injurious to the properties of steel and makes it red and cold short (i.e. brittle when worked hot or cold). The sulphide films shown in Pl. 45D have a duplex structure and probably contain a large proportion of iron sulphide.

Manganese Silicate is darker grey than the sulphide, but it is not always possible to distinguish between them with certainty under the microscope unless, as is often the case, they occur side by side. The distribution and amount of sulphide may, however, be revealed by "sulphur printing" and the appearance of the sulphur print compared with that of the section examined.

Dark-grey streaks in rolled material when present in large amounts usually represent **Slag Inclusions**. They frequently show more than one constituent. Such inclusions are characteristic of wrought iron, but are rare in steel. When present there is frequently decarburization in the neighbourhood of the slag. Pl. 45B shows slag spots from the region of the "pipe" in a billet of medium carbon steel. Slag is generally associated with the presence of piping (see p. 134). The surrounding steel is often completely decarburized, and then shows a strong resemblance to the structure of wrought iron.

Alumina inclusions may occur in steels which have been

“killed” by the addition of aluminium, alumina being formed by the reaction of iron oxide and aluminium. The alumina is hard and infusible. It is not deformed by work applied to the steel, though a group of particles of alumina may be drawn out into a string, each member of the group remaining undeformed.

Alumina appears to drop out of the steel during polishing, the appearance of the microstructure being a collection of round black spots (Pl. 45E). Small scratches originating at the boundaries of these specks are usually very difficult to remove. They may be caused by alumina falling out during polishing, and scratching the surface.

Influence of Non-metallic Inclusions on the Properties of Steel

Non-metallic inclusions have but little effect on the properties in the longitudinal direction, but if the steel is submitted to stress transversely, they form planes of weakness the effect of which is not measured simply by the area they occupy, since high localized stresses may be induced at the borders of the inclusions. Thus even with large amounts of inclusions the results of longitudinal tests in ductile materials are only slightly affected, while elongation in the transverse tensile test is very greatly reduced and failure occurs frequently in transverse bending tests. Non-metallic inclusions are an important factor in the heterogeneity which is responsible for the effect of direction of “grain” on mechanical properties, illustrated in Fig. 35. They may be associated with cracking in steel (Pl. 49) but are seldom the major cause of the trouble. Inclusions which by chance occur in a highly stressed region, for example, of an aircraft engine part, may have a serious effect in reducing endurance. Methods have been described of making inclusion counts. They all depend on microscopical examination and comparison with standard charts, and may be of value in investigations for producing cleaner steel, but difficulties of standardizing sampling and in the interpretation of results make them unsuitable for general purposes.*

Manganese sulphide is the least harmful of the commonly occurring inclusions. Mild steel rod of high sulphur content may contain innumerable streaks of manganese sulphide, which do not seriously interfere with its strength, while they greatly facilitate machining. Ductility in the transverse direction is, however, very low. “Free cutting” mild steel may contain about 0.1 per cent. of

* *Eighth Report on the Heterogeneity of Steel Ingots.* Iron and Steel Institute, Special Report No. 25.

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

phosphorus in addition to 0.12 per cent. of sulphur. The high phosphorus content promotes the formation of chips instead of long spiral turnings, but it has an embrittling effect, which (especially in view of its liability to segregation) may be serious if the steel is used for highly stressed parts, such as bolts. As an alternative a low-phosphorus, high-sulphur steel can be used in a slightly cold-worked condition. The addition of 0.25 per cent. of lead to steel improves machineability. Though some of the lead collects in sulphide inclusions the effect appears to be due to a dispersion of lead not visible under the microscope. Mechanical properties, including those in the transverse direction, are not affected provided that segregation of lead does not occur. Methods of detecting segregation of lead are described on page 137.

Rokes

These are discoloured longitudinal marks, usually of small depth, on the exterior of a bar. They are due to blow-hole cavities lying just below the surface of the ingot. During rolling or forging the cavities may be broken into and their surfaces oxidized, and at the same time the whole defect is elongated in the direction of rolling. Rokes therefore consist of fissures (often partially closed) with their surfaces separated by a thin film of scale or other impurity. They extend below the surface to various depths.

The microstructure of a roke is shown in Pl. 46. The fissure is filled with a large inclusion of iron oxide of a dark bluish-grey colour, and the surrounding steel is decarburized.

Seams show a similar microscopical appearance to rokes and are caused in rolling billets or bars by one portion of the metal folding over another. The oxidized surfaces of the seam may subsequently partially weld up, the oxides reacting and causing local decarburization round the defect.

When seams and rokes are present, it is commonly found that bar has been ordered so close to finish size that the removal of normal shallow surface seams could not be expected. In solid parts, such as shafts, longitudinal seams may be of little consequence, but in parts which are machined to form relatively thin-walled cavities, such defects may readily lead to failure. The risk is definitely greater in free-cutting steels.

Ghost Lines

Ghosts are marks which when viewed at a suitable angle are just visible on freshly machined surfaces. If the surfaces are left

to tarnish slightly the ghost appears as a streak, frequently of considerable breadth, differing in colour from the rest of the steel. A ghost is due to local segregation of impurities during the solidification of the ingot. The segregated regions become elongated into streaks or lines during the rolling or forging of the metal.

The microstructure shows long threads of manganese sulphide of ferrite usually high in phosphorus (Pl. 47A). Ghost lines are not necessarily a source of weakness but, if pronounced, may be an indication of sufficient segregation to impair the properties of the steel in the transverse direction.

Phosphorus Segregation

Even in extreme cases of segregation, phosphorus in steel rarely reaches a concentration sufficient to cause the separation of a special constituent (as in Pl. 48c), but an uneven distribution of phosphorus is no exceptional occurrence. There is an uneven distribution in the solid solution formed from a molten mass of mild steel, the cores of the crystals containing less phosphorus than the outside. Since diffusion of phosphorus is slow while carbon is readily expelled from areas rich in phosphorus, this segregation persists and finally the rolled or forged steel shows alternate bands of ferrite rich in phosphorus and of pearlite.

The distribution of phosphorus may be studied by etching with reagents containing cupric chloride, by the action of which a thin film of copper is deposited first on the regions containing least phosphorus (Pl. 47B, c). The phosphorus banding (i.e. the undeposited region rich in phosphorus) in a mild steel will frequently be found to cut across the ferrite grains, including one part and excluding another part of the same crystal.

Heat tinting shows a similar banding. Its persistence after deformation (even when subsequent heat treatment has been applied) frequently gives valuable information as to the direction in which flow has taken place under the mechanical treatment applied to the steel.

While phosphorus banding in a mild steel is not in any way abnormal, it may attain such proportions as to rank as a defect, e.g. a high-phosphorus core in a mild steel rod, and it is a definite indication of inferior quality in a higher carbon steel.

Piping

This defect originates during solidification of the steel in the ingot-mould owing to the fact that solidification starts from the

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

walls and proceeds inwards, and that steel contracts on solidification. The result is the formation of a central cavity or cavities which, according to the conditions employed in casting, may extend to various distances downward in the ingot. Piping always takes place to a certain extent except in a "wild" cast (i.e. one in which blow-holes are formed throughout the ingot). It is limited to as short a length of the ingot as possible, and the unsound portion of the billet produced by rolling the ingot is discarded. If insufficient discard is made, piping, which may have escaped notice, may be present after rolling in the form of a longitudinal fissure or region of unsoundness in the central portion of the billet.

It is revealed in the microstructure in the form of ragged holes and cracks, the adjacent steel being usually very rich in inclusions and abnormal in composition (Pl. 45B and 48A). In particular the phosphorus content is often very high (Pl. 48B) owing to segregation, and locally may in exceptional cases reach such a figure that the iron-iron phosphide eutectic is formed (Pl. 48C).

Burning

Whilst overheated steel can be restored by suitable heat treatment (pp. 93, 103) there is a stage of excessive overheating in which the steel becomes burnt and the normal properties are beyond recovery. This stage is reached if the steel is heated to the temperature of incipient fusion. The more fusible constituents of the steel melt, and coalescing into globules are squeezed into the crystal boundaries or intercrystalline joints (Pl. 48D). At this temperature also liberation of gas may occur, and carbon monoxide may be formed by reaction of the carbon of the steel with the layer of scale on the surface. These gases may not only form blisters, but may open up the surface skin for the expulsion of fluid material and the subsequent oxidation of intercrystalline cavities (Pl. 48E).

A burnt steel is oxidized near the surface, but not necessarily throughout its mass, and even in the absence of an oxidizing atmosphere the characteristic effects of "burning" may be produced.

Practical Notes

Surface Examination

Deep etching with a 5 per cent. aqueous or 10 per cent. alcoholic solution of nitric acid is useful for revealing welds, local hardening, or minute cracks. The surface of the steel, after etch-

ing, is washed with acetone and dried: the acid, subsequently oozing up, stains the surface round the cracks and reveals them distinctly.

Small areas of the surface of forgings of carbon steel and some alloy steels, previously cleaned with 0 emery, can be chemically polished and etched to reveal defects by the action of an aqueous solution containing 15 gm. hydrogen peroxide, 25 gm. oxalic acid and 0.1 gm. of sulphuric acid per litre, poured over the surface and retained by a plasticine wall. After five to thirty minutes the microstructure becomes visible under a low-power microscope, thus affording a means of checking the effectiveness of a refining or other heat treatment.*

The presence of cracks may also be detected by a magnetic method. The sample is magnetized and (1) finely divided iron is blown on to its surface or (2) the surface is flooded with paraffin or similar liquid containing very fine iron dust in suspension. The particles of iron dust collect along the cracks, and are not displaced from this position when the rest of the surface is freed from iron (1) by an air blast or (2) by washing with clean paraffin.

Macrostructure

Preparation of Sections

The degree of finish required will depend on the fineness of the structure to be examined and on the etching agent employed. In most cases it is desirable to have the surface ground, though polishing is usually unnecessary. Absolute freedom of the surface from grease is essential if the etching is to be successful. If oil or grease gets on to the ground surface it is extremely difficult to remove, and a final cleaning with emery paper is preferable to the use of any degreasing reagent.

The preliminary examination should include sulphur printing and macro-etching.

Sulphur Printing

A ground section perfectly clean and free from grease is obtained. Gaslight or bromide photographic paper is well soaked in 3 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid, placed face downwards on blotting-paper and lightly smoothed out with a squeegee to re-

* W. A. Marshall: *Jour. Electro-Depositors' Tech. Soc.*, 1952, vol. 28, p. 27; *Research*, 1954, vol. 7, p. 89. A similar technique provides a rough method of preparation of specimens for examination at moderately high magnifications (L. W. Graham, J. P. Cranston and H. L. Axon, *Research*, 1955, Vol 8, p. S 20).

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

move excess acid. It is then laid face downwards on the specimen, one edge being first applied and the opposite edge lowered until the surface is covered. It is immediately rolled with the squeegee to obtain and preserve close contact, care being taken not to move the paper. A corner may be lifted to observe the progress of the printing, and after about two minutes the paper is held by the corner and peeled off the specimen. The print shows a brown coloration at positions where the paper has been in contact with sulphide. It is given a quick rinse in water to remove excess acid, then fixed in "hypo" and washed in the usual way, after which it is permanent. A second (paler) print may be obtained from the same surface, but it is better to have the section reground.

Lead Printing

Analogous methods have been devised for registering the distribution of lead in a lead-bearing steel. The method developed by Ledloys Ltd. involves the use of papers soaked in an ammonium acetate-tartaric acid solution saturated with hydrogen sulphide.*

As a simple method of detecting lead segregation, which is liable to occur in the vicinity of the bottom discard of a lead-bearing ingot, a section of billet or bar is heated to 600° C. Any beads of exuded lead which appear on the surface of the heated section should be uniformly distributed and not more than about $\frac{1}{84}$ in. in diameter.

Macro-etching

Reagents which act quickly for a short time generally give better results than slow reagents acting for a longer time. The principal reagents are nitric acid, copper ammonium chloride solutions and ammonium persulphate. The specimen, clean and free from grease, is usually placed in a trough and the appropriate reagent poured over the surface and renewed uniformly from time to time.

If the specimen shows many grinding or machine marks a nitric acid etch is preferred. It is desirable to begin with 2 per cent. nitric acid, followed by acid of greater strength (5 to 8 per cent.), and to finish with 10 per cent. acid. In this way, scratches are eliminated and a fairly deep etch is obtained. Sulphur prints may be obtained from etched macro-sections. Such prints do not actually indicate the degree of sulphide segregation, but they record

* Details may be found in the *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1943 (2), vol. 148, p. 439.

the macrostructure of the steel. The method may usefully be employed on alloy steels of high alloy and low sulphur content, from which neither a sulphur nor an ink print of the etched surface is readily obtainable in the usual way.

The most generally employed reagents for macro-etching are those which may be classed together as **cupric reagents**. The 8 per cent. copper ammonium chloride solution, originally recommended by Heyn, has been modified by later investigators to adapt it on the one hand to deeper and sharper etching of macrostructures, and on the other to more delicate etching of sections to be examined at higher magnifications. For macro-etching, a fairly good surface is required: if many deep scratches or machine marks are visible a preliminary etch with nitric acid is desirable. In Humfrey's modification of Heyn's method, a solution of 120 gm. of cupric ammonium chloride in 1 litre of water is poured at frequent intervals over the roughly polished surface of the specimen so that a film of fresh solution is always in action. As etching proceeds, a similar solution acidified by the addition of 20 to 50 c.c. of hydrochloric acid per litre may be used. The copper deposit from an acid solution would adhere to the steel: the initial treatment with neutral solution provides an underlying loosely adherent layer, facilitating removal of the copper. When the copper deposit has been wiped away and the specimen washed and dried, the surface has a grey matte appearance. If it is lightly rubbed over with fine emery paper the portions in relief are brought out in sharp contrast. The time taken for the etching is half to one hour. To produce stronger relief effects in heavy ingot sections, which cannot be so well prepared as small specimens, the Iron and Steel Institute Committee on the Heterogeneity of Steel Ingots recommends etching for an additional half-hour with solution containing 15 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, possibly with an intermediate period in which a solution containing $7\frac{1}{2}$ to 10 per cent. is used and a subsequent period in which still stronger acid solutions are employed if necessary.

Permanent records of the structure (**ink-prints**) may be obtained by Humfrey's method. For this purpose the macro-section should be machined to a flat slab, one of its parallel faces being selected for etching. When a satisfactory etch has been obtained, ordinary printer's ink is applied to the surface by means of a roller, e.g. a squeegee. A few dabs of printer's ink are placed on a sheet of glass or of tin plate and the roller is passed in all directions over the sheet until the ink is evenly spread out. Ink is transferred

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

to the specimen by passing the roller alternately over the inked plate and the etched surface. The specimen is then placed face upwards on the base of an ordinary copying press, the paper laid on it, covered with a pad and pressure applied. The best results are usually obtained on glossy art paper. The portions in relief, and thus the dark areas in the prints, represent the less pure material. The results on basic steels are apt to be disappointing.

The action of **ammonium persulphate** is much more superficial than that of the other macro-etching reagents described above. For this reason as good a finish as possible is required on the specimen to be etched, and the result can only be recorded by photography and not by macro-prints.

A 10 per cent. solution of ammonium persulphate in water is most suitable, though a stronger solution may be used. The specimen should be wholly immersed in the freshly prepared solution. As etching proceeds the immersed surface may be rubbed with a swab of cotton-wool, and on its completion the specimen is washed in water and dried, without rubbing, in the usual way.

Ammonium persulphate etching gives very clear indications of heterogeneity; it is a clean reagent to use, having much less action on the skin than acids or copper solutions, and its action is rapid, the time required for macro-etching varying from five to thirty minutes. In addition, differences in heat treatment, for example in degree of tempering, are indicated by variations in surface appearance.

Pickling in Sulphuric Acid

A severe test for revealing heterogeneity consists in immersion of the specimen in 20 per cent. sulphuric acid at 80° C. This must be carried out in a fume cupboard or in the case of large specimens in the open air, the acid being contained in a suitable sheet-lead trough heated by ring burners.

The less pure parts and regions of unsoundness are rapidly attacked. After about ten to thirty minutes the specimen is removed from the acid, thoroughly washed with water, scrubbed with a brush in running water to remove the carbonaceous deposit and dried after washing with alcohol or acetone.

Deep Etching of Alloy Steel Ingot Sections

A strong macro-etching is required to reveal unsoundness and porosity; the milder etching which serves to indicate the macro-structure sometimes gives no indication of porosity existing down

the centre or elsewhere, together with the beginning of the unsoundness which develops into the pipe nearer the top. Some alloy steels can only be macro-etched to the required extent with difficulty. The following method may be tried in extreme cases. The ingot is mounted on trestles in the open air, on a day when there is just a slight breeze. The surface is levelled carefully, and a small fireclay wall built round its edge, of sufficient height to retain a layer of liquid at least $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. deep on the surface. Gas burners are used to warm up the metal and to dry the fireclay. The heating is then withdrawn and a mixture of about one part of strong nitric acid to two parts of hot water applied. Care should be taken to keep away from the copious oxide fumes evolved. When the action has subsided a small fragment of the fireclay wall may be removed and the spent liquid allowed to drain away and, if necessary, the wall made good and the action repeated.

Microstructure

Micro-etching

From visual appearance and macro-examination, the regions which appear most likely to yield interesting results can be selected for ordinary microscopical examination. A small specimen of the usual type is prepared and examined: (1) unetched, (2) etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol, and (3) copper etched to reveal the distribution of phosphorus.

The principal cupric chloride reagents for the detection of minor segregation in steel are:

(a) Stead's reagent.

Cupric chloride	10 gm.
Magnesium chloride	40 gm.
Concentrated hydrochloric acid	20 c.c.

The salts are dissolved in the least possible quantity of water and the solution is made up to 1000 c.c. with alcohol.

(b) The N.P.L. reagent (Rosenhain and Haughton).

Ferric chloride	30 gm.
Cupric chloride	1.0 gm.
Stannous chloride	0.5 gm.
Concentrated hydrochloric acid	100 c.c.
Water	1000 c.c.

In carrying out copper etching a few drops of the reagent are poured on the specimen until it is covered with a thin layer of

INCLUSIONS AND DEFECTS IN STEEL

liquid. It is allowed to stand for one minute. The reagent is then shaken off and a fresh layer applied, the process being repeated as often as is found desirable. The specimen is then washed with hot water and dried in acetone. Copper is deposited on the regions in which the phosphorus content is lowest.

The exact identification of non-metallic inclusions in steel is a difficult problem,* and some of the methods of examination recommended (such as reduction in hydrogen) require the construction of special apparatus and involve considerable experimental difficulties. An approximate identification can be made as follows:

(a) By appearance.

Iron sulphide	Brownish-yellow.
Manganese sulphide.	Dove-grey.
Oxide of iron or manganese	Similar but darker.
Silicate of manganese	Dark slate-grey.
Silicate of iron	Nearly black.
Alumina	Round specks, never elongated.

(b) By comparing a sulphur print of the unetched micro-section with its appearance under the microscope. Inclusions not revealed in the print are not sulphides.

(c) By etching with a 2 per cent. solution of hydrofluoric acid in alcohol for a few seconds. Sulphides and silicates are blackened but oxides remain unchanged.

(d) By rubbing the unetched specimen on a strip of selvyt which has been soaked in freshly made 5 per cent. silver nitrate solution, thoroughly washed with water, and laid on a glass plate nap side up. Adsorbed silver is transferred from the cloth to the manganese sulphide (or iron sulphide) inclusions, so that under vertical illumination they look as white as ferrite. Oxide and silicate inclusions are unaffected.†

The most effective reagent for detecting overheating or burning in its incipient stages is an aqueous solution of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid and 10 per cent. nitric acid. The specimen is immersed for thirty seconds, then swabbed with cotton wool in running water, the operation being repeated if necessary and the specimen lightly repolished before examination. A network of grain boundaries is clearly revealed in the overheated steel.‡

* For a detailed study of the subject, see C. Benedicks and H. Löfquist, "Non-Metallic Inclusions in Iron and Steel."

† J. H. Whiteley, *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, December, 1948, vol. 160, p. 365.

‡ The subject of overheating and burning has been discussed in a series of papers in the *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1946-1, vol. 153, pp. 217P to 317P.

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF
PIG IRON, CAST IRON AND MALLEABLE
CAST IRON**Pig Iron**

Pig Iron—the product of the blast furnace—is the most impure form of commercial iron. The effect of various elements occurring in pig iron is briefly summarized below.

Carbon varies from about 2 to 4 per cent., and is generally about 3·5 per cent. Part is chemically combined with the iron forming Fe_3C : the rest occurs in the form of flakes of graphite. The amount of combined carbon present has a great influence on the properties of the iron; as in the case of steels, increase of combined carbon gives increased hardness and up to a certain point increased strength. Thus 0·7 per cent. of combined carbon gives maximum tensile strength and 1·0 per cent. gives maximum crushing strength.

The graphite has a weakening influence, most marked when it occurs in large flakes. Since the total carbon in commercial irons does not vary greatly, reduction of the amount of combined carbon is accompanied by increase in amount of graphite, and vice versa. Thus soft irons as a rule contain a large amount of graphite and break with a grey fracture, showing plates of graphite, while the hardest irons break with a white fracture and show little or no graphite.

This difference is the basis of the method of grading pig iron by fracture into grey, mottled and white iron, and of further subdividing grey iron for example, into No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, No. 4 foundry, No. 4 forge, or some other numerical classification.

There are great variations of composition between the pig irons produced from different ores, but in any particular make of pig iron the increase of combined carbon and decrease of graphite passing from grey to white are accompanied by a slight fall in the total carbon, while silicon diminishes from grey to white, manganese diminishes slightly from grey to white, phosphorus remains constant, and sulphur increases from grey to white.

Silicon is always present in amounts usually varying from 1 to 3·5 per cent. It has a controlling influence on the properties of

STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF CAST IRON

the iron; high silicon favours the separation of graphite, while in low-silicon irons more of the carbon is in the combined state.

For ordinary rates of cooling, a pig iron with 3.5 per cent. of carbon will be white when the silicon does not exceed 0.6 per cent. of silicon, the greatest tensile strength with about 1.8 per cent. of silicon, while 2.5 per cent. will produce a soft iron.

Manganese occurs in part as carbide, Mn_3C , which resists decomposition by silicon better than Fe_3C . Manganese therefore tends to increase the amount of combined carbon, and so has a

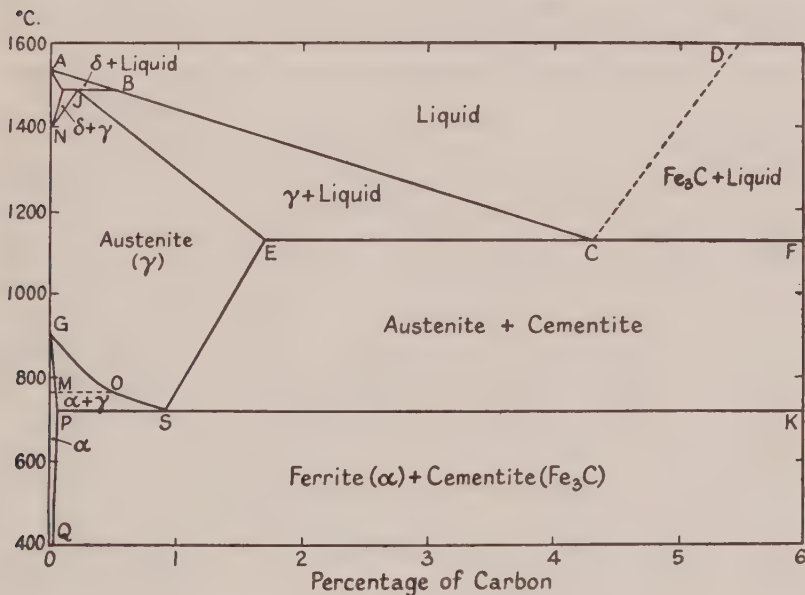


FIG. 36. Iron-Carbon Diagram.

hardening influence on the iron. Some of the manganese occurs in combination with sulphur, and some may be in solid solution in the iron (ferrite).

Sulphur occurs as manganese sulphide if sufficient manganese is present, otherwise as iron sulphide. In the latter form it has the property of hardening the casting, but at the same time it makes it more brittle. The addition of manganese (itself a hardening element) to a hard high-sulphur cast iron results in softening, on account of the formation of the less harmful manganese sulphide and its partial elimination. Sulphur in any form is objectionable and should be as low as possible.

Phosphorus increases the fluidity of cast iron and lowers the

melting point. Hence for making ingot moulds hæmatite irons low in phosphorus are used, while for ornamental castings of thin section in which fine details of the pattern are to be reproduced the phosphorus in the pig iron used may be as high as 2 per cent. For ordinary good strong castings pig iron with about 0.5 per cent. phosphorus is satisfactory.

Cast Iron

When the pig iron is remelted and cast into its final form it is known as cast iron. Whereas pig iron is always cooled relatively slowly, castings may vary enormously in their rate of cooling. The microstructure and properties vary in a corresponding way. The faster the cooling the smaller and fewer will be the graphite particles. By the use of a mould part of which is of cast iron (as, for example, in the production of chilled rolls), rapid cooling is obtained and a metal, white at the surface, is produced. The behaviour is best indicated by reference to the constitutional diagram, but the warning given in the case of steel must be emphasized in the case of the richer carbon alloys of iron. Both stable and unstable conditions have to be accounted for, and the practical interpretation of the diagram is always complicated by the presence of impurities in the iron. Fig. 36 shows the iron-carbon diagram and illustrates the constitution of white iron. At the moment of solidification pure white iron (e.g. American washed iron) consists of solid solution (austenite) containing 1.7 per cent. of carbon and a eutectic of austenite and cementite (ledeburite) containing 4.3 per cent. of carbon. As cooling proceeds, more cementite separates from the solid solution, until this contains 0.9 per cent. of carbon. At 690° C. all the remaining solid solution (containing 0.9 per cent. of carbon) breaks down into pearlite, giving finally the structure of cementite and pearlite typical of white iron (Pl. 50B, 53A).

Cast iron, however, contains from 1 to 3 per cent. of silicon, and for each 1 per cent. the carbon content of the ledeburite eutectic (C in Fig. 36) is reduced by rather more than 0.3, the solid solubility limit of carbon in the austenite (E) by about 0.2, and the carbon content of the pearlite eutectoid (S) by about 0.1.

Hyper-eutectic cast iron is likely to contain coarse graphite flakes which separate at the moment of solidification. They may occur in pig iron, but they have a very detrimental effect on strength and hyper-eutectic compositions are avoided in commercial cast iron. Graphite formed below the melting point is

PLATES

50 - 56

All (except C) etched with nitric acid in alcohol. Magnification 100 diameters.

- A. Hair-line crack in oil-hardened and tempered nickel-chromium steel.
- B. American washed iron (combined carbon 3.5 per cent., graphite nil) showing cementite (white) and pearlite (dark).
- C. No. 2 hæmatite pig iron (combined carbon 0.4 per cent., graphite 3.5 per cent., silicon 2.5 per cent.).

Unetched, showing flakes of graphite.

- D. The same pig iron as in C, etched, showing graphite (black) ferrite (white, near graphite) and pearlite.

With 2.5 per cent. silicon, the eutectic contains 3.5 per cent. carbon. The iron (total carbon 3.9 per cent.) is therefore hyper-eutectic, and the larger graphite flakes were formed from the liquid at the moment of solidification.

The silicon is in solid solution in the ferrite (silico-ferrite). There is very little free ferrite, as with 2.5 per cent. of silicon the pearlite contains only about 0.5 per cent. of carbon.

- E. No. 4 hæmatite pig iron (combined carbon 0.9 per cent., graphite 2.5 per cent., silicon 1.5 per cent.), showing graphite (black), cementite (white, remote from graphite) and pearlite.

With this silicon, the carbon content of the eutectic is about 3.8 per cent., and that of the eutectoid about 0.7 per cent. The iron (total carbon 3.4 per cent.) is therefore hypo-eutectic, the graphite finer and the matrix pearlitic with a little free cementite.



A



B



C



D



E

All (except D) etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

- A. Mottled iron (combined carbon 1.8 per cent., graphite 1.4 per cent., silicon 0.7 per cent.), showing the structures of white iron (cementite and pearlite) above, and grey iron (graphite and pearlite) below. × 100.

In mottled iron (intermediate in composition between No. 4 iron and a white iron) the structures of grey and white irons are juxtaposed—a feature which gives the characteristic mottled appearance to the fracture.

- B. No. 2 Northampton pig iron (phosphorus 1.1 per cent.) showing graphite (black), ferrite (white near graphite), pearlite (half-tone) and phosphide eutectic (remote from graphite) × 100.

In grey irons containing phosphorus the silico-ferrite forms round the graphite flakes, forcing inwards the fusible iron-iron phosphide eutectic, which finally solidifies in positions remote from the graphite, assuming a characteristic herring-bone structure.

- C. Structure of the iron-iron phosphide eutectic in phosphoric pig iron. × 500.

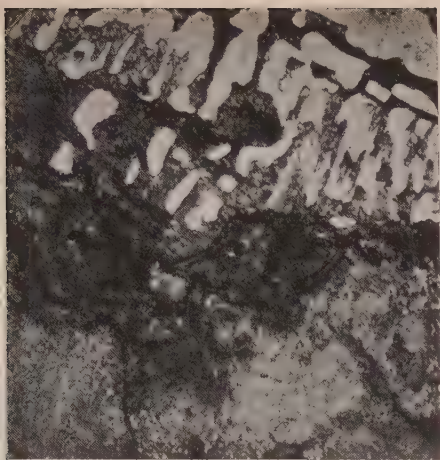
- D. No. 2 Northampton pig iron (B), deeply etched with 1.2 sp. gr. nitric acid. The phosphide areas are unattacked. × 100.

The phosphide eutectic is the last constituent attacked by deep etching with nitric acid, and its distribution may be examined on the black background produced by this reagent.

- E. Structure of a phosphoric nodule (containing 8 per cent. of phosphorus) in cast iron. Ferrite containing about 1.7 per cent. of phosphorus (dark) and iron phosphide Fe_3P (white). × 50.

- F. The same as E. × 500.

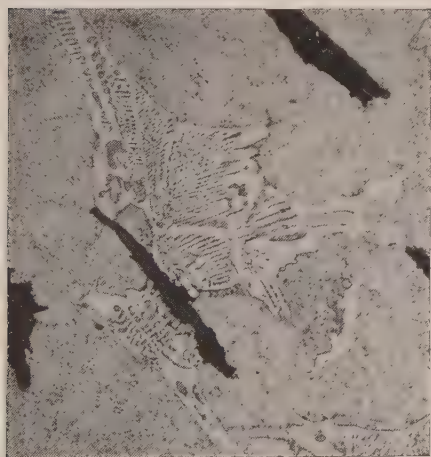
In irons of high phosphorus content, there is a tendency to liquation, and hard shots of metal containing as much as 10 per cent. of phosphorus may exist in blow-hole cavities in the casting.



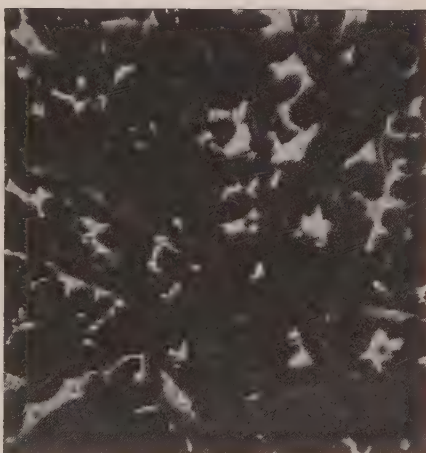
A



B



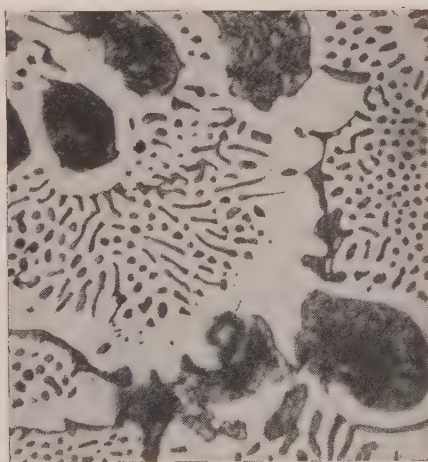
C



D



E



F

All etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
 Magnification 250 diameters.

- A. Flake graphite cast iron showing graphite in a pearlitic matrix. Tensile strength, 16 to 22 tons per sq. in. Elongation, nil.
- B. Spheroidal graphite cast iron (total carbon 3·0, silicon 2·2, manganese 0·4, nickel 1·5, magnesium 0·06 per cent.) as cast, showing spheroidal graphite in a pearlitic matrix.
- C. Spheroidal graphite cast iron of the same composition as above, annealed for two hours at 900° C., followed by eight hours at 700° C.

Micrographs B and C represent two main types of spheroidal graphite (S.G.) cast iron, as cast and annealed. Ordinary compositions cast in sections from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 in. thick normally retain about 0·6 to 0·8 per cent. of combined carbon and give a pearlitic matrix similar to that in ordinary high-duty cast iron. More quickly cooled and in smaller sections the percentage of combined carbon is higher, but this may be broken down on annealing to give spheroidal graphite in a groundmass of ferrite. The properties of the two types fall within the ranges shown below :

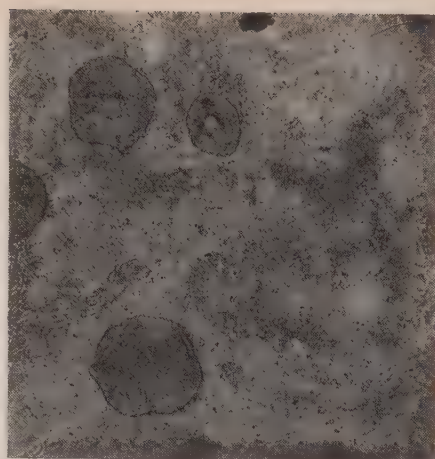
	As cast.	Annealed.
Yield point, tons per sq. in. . . .	25 to 35	20 to 25
Tensile strength, tons per sq. in. . . .	35 „ 45	27 „ 35
Elongation, per cent.	1 „ 5	10 „ 20

- D. Heat-treated nickel–chromium cast iron (total carbon 3·0, silicon 1·5, manganese 1·0, nickel 2·0, chromium 0·5 per cent.), oil-hardened from 850° C. and tempered at 450° C., showing flake graphite in a matrix of sorbite.
- E. “Ni-hard ” (total carbon 3·2, manganese 0·8, nickel 4·5, chromium 1·5 per cent.) sand cast, showing cementite in a martensitic matrix. Brinell hardness (tungsten carbide ball), 550 to 650.
 Chill casting gives a more refined structure with greater hardness (650 to 700) and improved resistance to abrasion.
- F. “Ni-resist ” (total carbon 3·0, silicon 1·5, manganese 1·0, nickel 14, chromium 2, copper 6 per cent.), showing flake graphite and carbides in an austenitic matrix.
 When copper is undesirable, the nickel is increased to 20 per cent. or, if higher resistance to corrosion is required, to 30 per cent. with 10 per cent. of chromium.
 Tensile strength, 13 to 18 tons per sq. in.
 Elongation, 1 to 3 per cent.

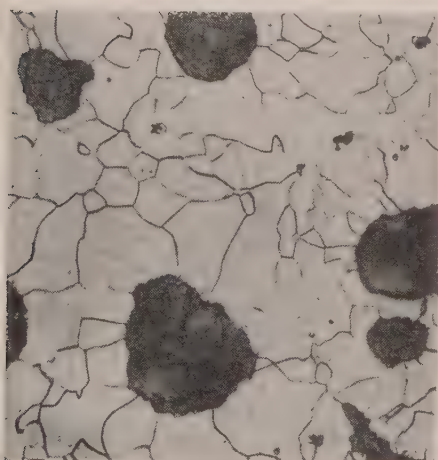
(Photomicrographs supplied by the Mond Nickel Company.)



A



B



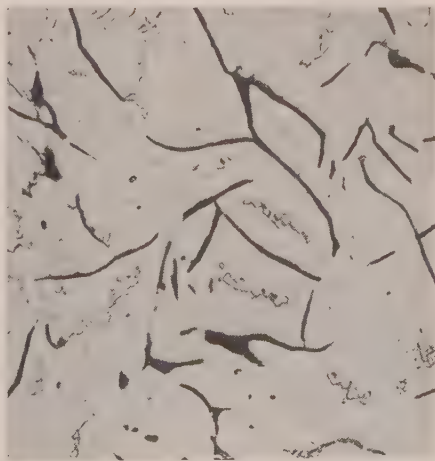
C



D



E



F

All etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

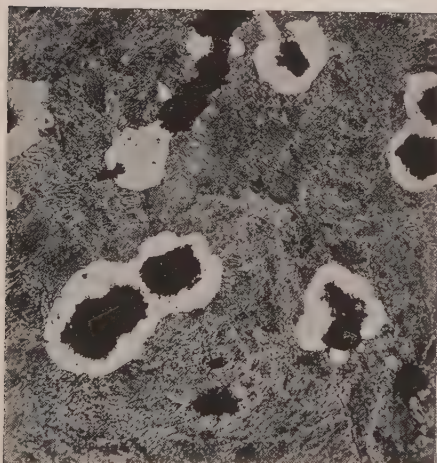
- A. White cast iron, as used in the manufacture of malleable cast iron. Pearlite (dark) and cementite (white). × 100.
- B. Blackheart malleable cast iron. The same white iron as in A after annealing, showing graphite (black) in a groundmass of ferrite. × 100.
- C. Malleable cast iron, Blackheart, in which precipitation of carbon is incomplete. Graphite surrounded by ferrite in a groundmass of pearlite. × 100.
- D. Malleable cast iron, European or Réaumur. Pearlite. × 250.
- Pl. 53E to 54B. Structure of a specimen of European malleable cast iron from centre to outside.
- E. Precipitation of graphite from cementite in the centre, giving graphite, ferrite and pearlite. × 250.
- F. Near centre. Pearlite with traces of graphite. × 100.



A



B



C



D



E



F

All etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

A and B. Structure of a specimen of European malleable cast iron (continued).

A. Between central portion and decarburized edge. Coarse pearlite. $\times 250$.

B. Decarburized edge. Chiefly ferrite. $\times 250$.

C. Blackheart malleable cast iron. A layer of pearlite occurring in the ferrite parallel to and near the decarburized and oxidized edge.

A probable explanation is that the ferrite outside is produced by decarburization of the skin, while that inside is produced by deposition of graphite, leaving an intermediate layer in which the combined carbon, reduced by decarburization is insufficient to cause precipitation of the graphite.

$\times 50$.

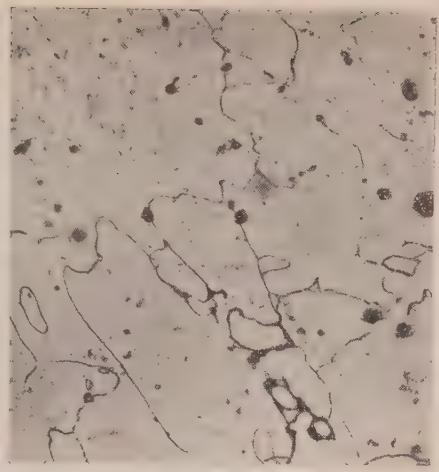
D. Pearlitic structure of a grey cast iron cylinder. $\times 250$.

E. Austenitic cast iron (non-magnetic), containing 10 per cent. of nickel and 5 per cent. of manganese, showing dendritic structure. $\times 100$.

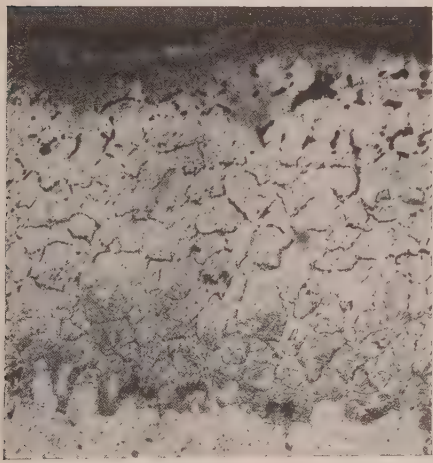
F. The same material as in E. $\times 1000$.



A



B



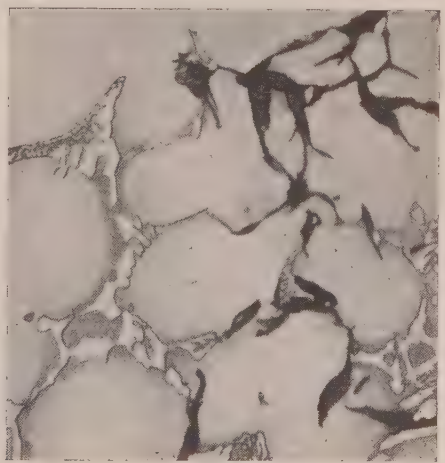
C



D



E



F

A. Underpoled copper containing 0.3 per cent. of oxygen, showing dendrites of copper surrounded by the copper-cuprous oxide eutectic. × 100.

B. Commercial tough pitch ingot copper, consisting of grains of copper and copper-cuprous oxide eutectic at the grain boundaries. × 100.

A and B etched with ammonia and ammonium persulphate.

(Photomicrograph B supplied by the Copper Development Association.)

C. Cast copper-lead showing an uneven distribution of lead.

Unetched.

× 100.

D. Sintered copper-lead with a coarse structure.

Unetched.

× 75.

E. Sintered copper-lead with a finer structure, but not the finest grain size obtainable.

Unetched.

× 75.

Specimens D and E were produced by powder metallurgy methods and the grain size controlled by the use of powders of appropriate fineness.

With increasing lead content, the tensile strength of sintered copper-lead falls from that of copper (11 tons per sq. in.) to about 4 tons per sq. in. for 70 : 30 copper-lead, and then at 40 per cent. lead shows a sudden drop, indicating that the copper skeleton is not continuous when an excessive amount of lead is present.

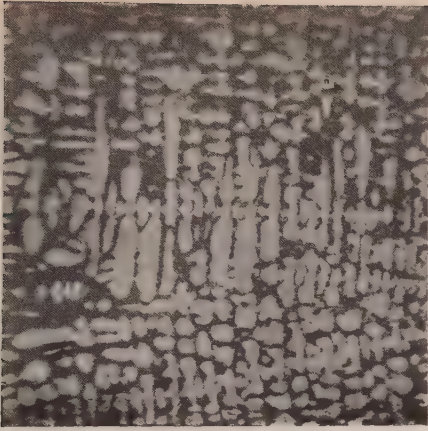
W. E. Duckworth, "Production of Sintered Copper-Lead Bearing Material"; P. G. Forrester and W. E. Duckworth, "Properties and Testing of Sintered Copper-Lead Bearing Materials." *Iron and Steel Institute, Special Report No. 58* (Symposium on Powder Metallurgy), pp. 213-221.

(Photomicrographs C, D and E supplied by the Glacier Metal Company Ltd.)

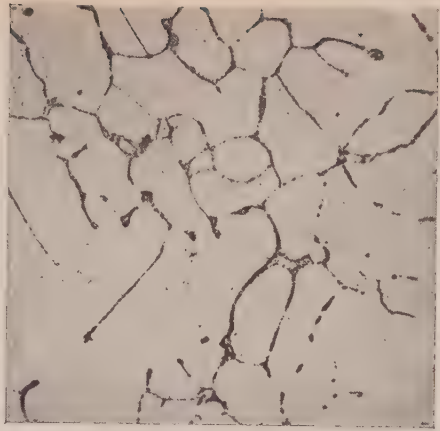
F. Cast copper containing 1 per cent. of bismuth : the bismuth separates along the grain boundaries.

Etched in ammonia and ammonium persulphate.

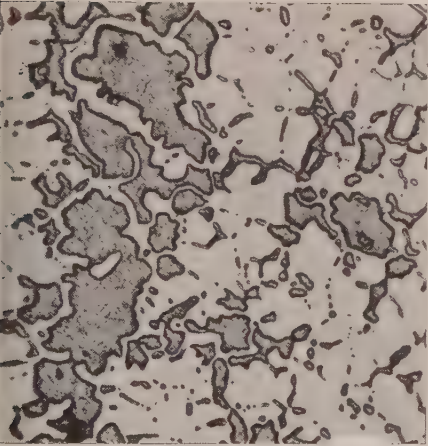
× 100.



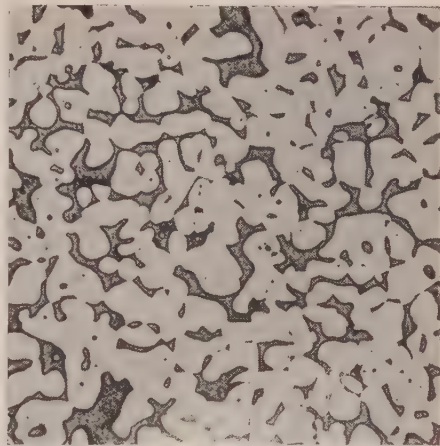
A



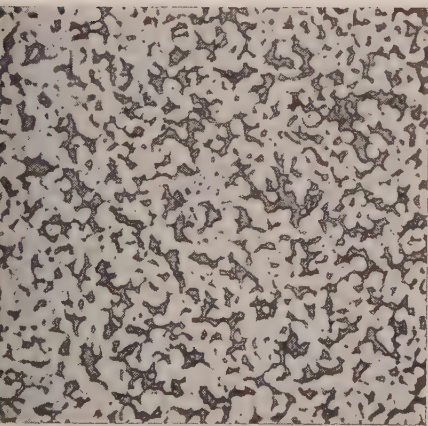
B



C



D

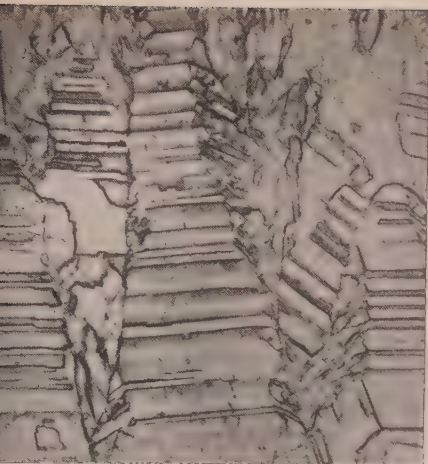


E

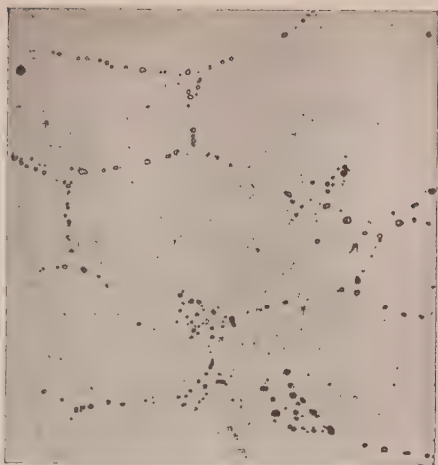


F

- A. Electro-deposited copper, showing twinning.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate (polish attack). $\times 250$.
- B. Copper containing 0.08 per cent. of oxygen, as cast, consisting of grains of copper and globules of cuprous oxide.
Unetched. $\times 100$.
- C. Copper rod, which has been annealed in a reducing atmosphere, showing intercrystalline cracks.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- D. Copper rod which has been annealed in a reducing atmosphere, showing intercrystalline cracks.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- E. Cast copper-aluminium alloy containing copper 94.5 per cent., aluminium 5 per cent. and phosphorus 0.5 per cent. : the black etching dendrites contain phosphorus in solid solution and are surrounded by a solid solution rich in phosphorus.
Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. $\times 100$.
- F. Cast brass containing copper 71, zinc 27 and aluminium 2 per cent, showing the α solid solution with interdendritic β . The structure is equivalent to that of a 65 : 35 copper-zinc alloy.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.



A



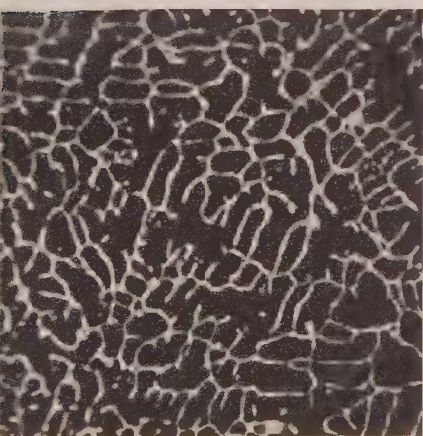
B



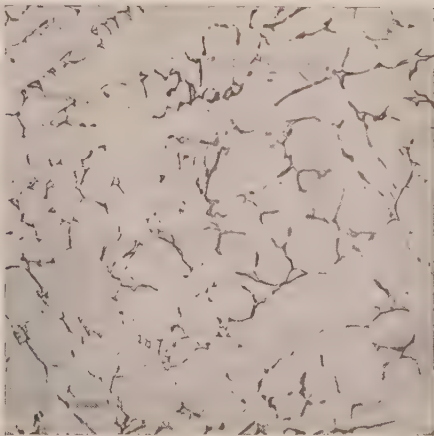
C



D



E



F

STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF CAST IRON

smaller and more evenly distributed. It is probable that all hypoeutectic liquid cast iron (whether white or grey in the cold state) first begins to solidify in a similar way to give solid solution and cementite–solid solution eutectic. The distinctions between white and grey iron are developed subsequently to complete solidification. The separation of graphite is due to the decomposition, during cooling, of cementite. This is accompanied by an evolution of heat and expansion in volume. The slower the rate of cooling the more graphite will be formed.

The presence of sulphur or manganese hinders the separation of graphite; so also does chromium, so that irons rich in manganese or chromium are permanently white, and no rate of slow cooling will make them grey. On the other hand, the presence of silicon promotes the decomposition of carbide, and irons containing 3.5 per cent. of silicon are grey even when rapidly cooled in castings of small section. When phosphorus is present the temperature of final solidification is depressed to 943°C. , and a liquid iron which contained 2 per cent. of carbon and 6.7 per cent. of phosphorus would solidify as a whole at this temperature to form a ternary eutectic of iron–iron carbide–iron phosphide. This constituent is formed at the moment of solidification of any iron rich in phosphorus, but it is not preserved unchanged. As the separation of graphite proceeds, the carbide diffuses out of the eutectic, leaving only the binary eutectic of iron–iron phosphide containing 10.2 per cent. of phosphorus. In white irons containing phosphorus the eutectic always contains cementite in addition to iron–iron phosphide. This may be revealed by heat tinting, the phosphide remaining yellow after all the other constituents are coloured.

Microstructure of Pig Iron and Cast Iron

The microstructures of pig iron and cast iron are illustrated in Plates 50 to 54. To simplify the interpretation of the structures encountered in grey pig irons, it is most convenient to regard them in the light of impure steels of the composition corresponding to their content of combined carbon. It is further necessary to consider the effect on the microstructure of the various impurities in turn, and to regard the graphite as an additional constituent whose characteristics can be studied separately.*

The form of the graphite in cast iron is of the greatest import-

* "The Metallography of Inclusions in Cast Irons and Pig Irons" has been dealt with by H. Morrogh, *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1941 (1), vol. 143, p. 207p.

ance. Flakes act as stress raisers, reduce ductility and may lead to premature failure. A spherulitic form of graphite gives the best combination of strength and ductility.* Oxidizing gases may penetrate cast iron by way of the graphite flakes with resulting distortion and "growth." Much research has been directed in recent years towards the commercial production of cast irons which, in the cast condition, have a nodular or spheroidal graphite structure (Pl. 52B, c).

It is practicable to produce such a cast iron, showing greatly improved properties without subsequent heat treatment, by the introduction of 0.05 per cent. of cerium (as *mischmetall*) † or by the addition of similar amounts of magnesium in the form of a nickel-magnesium alloy.‡

Malleable Cast Iron

It will be recalled that the cementite of a high-carbon steel, on prolonged annealing at a high temperature, decomposes into graphite and ferrite. A precisely similar action takes place more readily when a white iron (containing cementite and pearlite) is heated in the American or Blackheart process of making malleable cast iron.

Pl. 53A shows a white iron consisting of pearlite and cementite: the structure after prolonged heating at 750° C. to 800° C. is shown in Pl. 53B. Decomposition of the carbide has proceeded with the deposition of graphite in a very finely divided state in a groundmass of ferrite. Frequently a little pearlite remains without detriment to the properties of the casting (Pl. 53C). It is the finely divided graphite, or "temper carbon," as it is called, which gives the fracture of the casting its black appearance and so gives the process its name.

A curious feature which frequently occurs in Blackheart castings is a ring of pearlite running through the ferrite parallel to and near the outer edge (Pl. 54C). The probable explanation of this ring is that the ferrite outside is produced by decarburization of the skin, while that inside is produced by deposition of graphite, leaving an intermediate layer in which the combined carbon, reduced by decarburization, is insufficient to cause precipitation of graphite.

* "Bibliography of Spherulitic Graphite Cast Iron," *American Foundrymen's Society*, 1952, Vol. 60, p. 708.

† H. Morrogh and W. J. Williams, "The Production of Nodular Graphite Structures in Cast Iron," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1948 (1), vol. 158, p. 306.

‡ W. W. Braidwood, "Spheroidal Graphite Iron Up-to-date," *Foundry Trade Journal*, March 27th, April 3rd and 10th, 1952.

STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF CAST IRON

The packing material used is sand or preferably scale, the temperature of heating, 750°C. to 850°C. , varying with composition. The time necessary to achieve the complete deposition of carbon varies from a few hours to several days, according to the thickness of the material and its composition. For the production of a Blackheart malleable casting the sulphur of the original white iron must be below 0.1 per cent.; phosphorus should be below 0.2 per cent., and manganese under 0.5 per cent. Malleable castings of this type have a tensile strength of 16 to 26 tons per sq. in. and give an elongation of 5 to 15 per cent.

Another form of treatment, at one time the only method used in Europe, known as the Réaumur process, consists of heating white iron castings at 850°C. to 900°C. in an oxidizing medium such as hæmatite ore. A wider range of composition is permissible in the original white iron, which, however, should not contain more than 0.2 per cent. of phosphorus. The first effect of heating in this process also is the precipitation of temper carbon, but this is subsequently oxidized away, leaving a product which is mainly pearlitic (Pl. 53D). Pl. 53E shows partial precipitation of graphite from massive cementite in the centre of a malleable casting. Direct decarburization of the carbide without previous decomposition also occurs.

In microstructure, malleable cast iron produced by the Réaumur process resembles steel to some extent; though the structure is modified by the prolonged heating, the pearlite is invariably coarser, and traces of temper carbon frequently remain (Pl. 53F). On account of the decarburization the structure varies from centre to outside. Pl. 53E to 54B form a set of photographs taken at intervals from centre to outside of a malleable casting. The centre shows appreciable amounts of temper carbon, while the outside shows little but ferrite. This ferrite is not, however, the pure ferrite of steel: the properties are also affected by the high sulphur content and possibly by penetration of oxide from the packing medium.

Such castings have a grey steely fracture. They show a tensile strength of 20 to 28 tons per sq. in. with an elongation of 3 to 6 per cent. They are capable of being bent or dressed by a hammer, but they are less ductile than Blackheart castings. There is, however, no sharp distinction between the two types: they merge into one another according to the treatment, the packing material employed and the composition of the original casting, particularly as regards sulphur content. Both types of malleable cast iron are

liable to suffer from defects, such as blow-holes, present in the original white iron casting.

Alloy Cast Iron

The properties of a cast iron depend mainly on the condition of the carbon, whether it exists as graphite or as carbide and, if as carbide, whether this constituent occurs in the massive form or as the eutectoid, pearlite. A completely pearlitic structure (Pl. 54D) is for many purposes most desirable, as it combines machinability with resistance to wear. To secure such a structure under normal casting conditions involves the use of a low-silicon iron. The condition of the carbon is also dependent on the proportion of other elements present, in particular each of the possible alloying elements, aluminium, nickel, chromium, molybdenum and vanadium, has a characteristic effect. Thus nickel and aluminium act like silicon, reducing the tendency of the carbon to form carbide and increasing the amount of graphite; while chromium, molybdenum and vanadium increase the tendency to form carbide and facilitate the production of hard white iron.

The addition of 1.5 per cent. of nickel renders a 1 per cent. silicon white iron pearlitic in structure and readily machinable, while it has little effect on the condition of carbon in a high-silicon grey iron. Chromium, on the other hand, reduces the amount of graphite and increases the amount of carbide in grey iron, but leaves the condition of the carbon in white iron unaffected except to render the carbide more resistant to decomposition by annealing. The effect of the alloy elements is by no means confined to their influence on the condition of the carbon. In cast iron, as in the alloy steels, the added elements have a characteristic effect on the structure, and therefore on the properties, of the pearlite; and when present in large amounts they induce similar constitutional changes to those noted in the alloy steels.

Thus the usual lamellar pearlite is made finer and ultimately rendered sorbitic by the presence of alloy elements in small amounts. Larger amounts confer air-hardening properties. A nickel cast iron containing 5 per cent. of nickel is martensitic as cast, one with 20 per cent. of nickel or 10 per cent. of nickel and 5 per cent. of manganese is austenitic and non-magnetic (Pl. 52E, F and 54E F). Chromium confers the characteristic properties of resistance to wear, to corrosion and to oxidation at high temperatures.

Nickel and chromium are used together to refine the structure

STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF CAST IRON

and increase the hardness and strength of cast iron without impairing its machinability. The proportions of the two may be so adjusted that with the ordinary silicon content of about 2.5 per cent. they neutralize one another with respect to their influence on the condition of the carbon, while each contributes its own effect in modifying the structure of the pearlite and in increasing strength, toughness and resistance to wear.

Alloy cast irons often benefit by heat treatment. The matrix of a nickel-chromium cast iron is sorbitic pearlite, the laminæ of which are barely resolvable at 1,000 diameters. On heat treatment, this goes through the usual structural changes; when oil-hardened from 850° C. it becomes martensitic, tempering at 450° C. (Pl. 52D) converts this into sorbite, the particles of which increase in size with increasing tempering temperature, giving a structure consisting of coalesced carbide in a ferrite groundmass after reheating at 650° C. to 700° C.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The polishing of white cast iron presents no difficulty, but grey cast iron, the constituents of which differ widely in hardness, requires greater care unless a structure showing visible pits from which the graphite has been torn out can be accepted. For many purposes such structures give all the information that is desired; but sometimes, especially when the form and structure of the graphite is being investigated, the graphite itself must be polished and all precautions taken to avoid either the opening up or closing over of the cavities containing this soft and friable material. The specimen should be carefully ground on successive emery papers to 00, then on a worn 00 paper moistened with methylated spirit, and finally polished with alumina on a selvyt pad, or alternatively with diamond paste on parchment moistened with light paraffin oil.*

For special examination of the graphite this preliminary polishing may be followed by alternate prolonged etching in 5 per cent. alcoholic nitric acid, and polishing with alumina. The structure should always be examined before final etching to note the size, distribution, and amount of graphite. Regions rich in phosphorus and carbide often appear in relief after polishing.

* H. Morrogh, "The Polishing of Cast Iron Micro-Specimens and the Metallography of Graphite Flakes," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1941 (1), vol. 143, p. 195P. An alternative method of preparation is described by L. E. Samuels, *ibid.*, 1955 (3), vol. 180, p. 23.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

Etching

For most cast irons containing pearlite a 2 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol, or a 5 per cent. solution of picric acid in alcohol.

For those with little pearlite, and for Blackheart malleable cast iron a 5 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol or a saturated solution of picric acid in alcohol.

Wash with alcohol or acetone. Persistent staining round graphite particles may often be avoided by prolonged soaking in acetone before drying or by a final wash with ether, after which drying occurs very rapidly.

An alkaline solution of sodium picrate darkens cementite in cast iron in the same way as in steel (p. 96); it also darkens iron phosphide, Fe_3P , and cannot, therefore, be used to distinguish between the two, but a neutral sodium picrate solution (Matwieff's reagent) used boiling, attacks Fe_3P in twenty minutes leaving cementite unaffected. The distribution of phosphorus in solid solution in the iron may be revealed by etching with copper reagents (p. 140). Very deep etching with 1.2 sp. gr. nitric acid leaves highly phosphoric regions bright.

Heat tinting is carried out as described on page 20. It is advisable to give the specimen a light etch with 2 per cent. alcoholic nitric acid solution before heat tinting. The sequence of heat tints obtained with a steadily rising temperature of 200°C . to 400°C ., is as follows:

Pearlite, 0.75% C., 0.6% P.	Ferrite, 1.7% P.	Cementite, Fe_3C .	Phosphide, Fe_3P .	Manganese Sulphide.
Yellow. Brown. Red-purple. Purple.	Pale yellow. Yellow-brown. Brown. Red-purple.	White. Pale yellow. Yellow. Yellow-brown.	White. " V. pale yellow. " "	Dove-grey. " Pale yellow. " "
Blue.	Purple.	Brown.	Pale yellow.	Pale yellow.
Pale blue. Pale pea-green.	Pale blue. " "	Red-brown. Purple.	Heliotrope. Greenish-yellow.	Brownish-white. " "

A general blue-purple appearance, corresponding to the tints interlined, should be aimed at. A similar sequence of colours is produced by holding the specimen at a temperature of about 300°C ., cementite becoming reddish-brown and phosphide remaining pale yellow after about ten minutes' heating.

THE EFFECT OF IMPURITIES IN COPPER

UNREFINED blister copper contains not less than 97 per cent. of copper, and is free from objectionable impurities which cannot be removed by the refining process. The impurities commonly present are arsenic, antimony, iron, sulphur, oxygen, and also traces of bismuth which cannot be removed at this stage. The refining process consists of melting the copper in an oxidizing atmosphere, in order to oxidize the impurities which are then volatilized or pass into the slag. The copper itself is also oxidized,

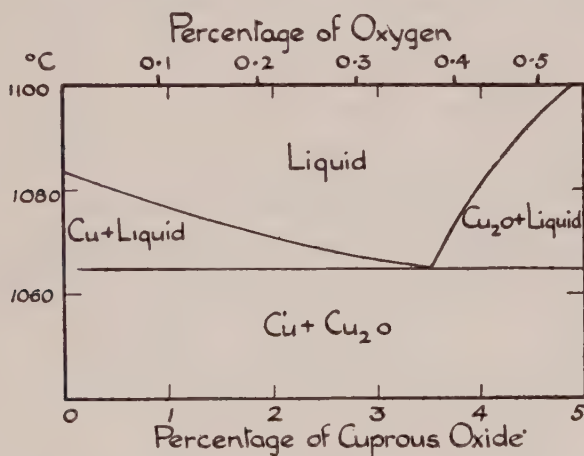


FIG. 37. Constitutional Diagram of the System Copper-Cuprous Oxide.

forming Cu_2O , which is soluble in molten copper. The oxide is removed by covering the molten metal with anthracite dust, and stirring vigorously with long wooden poles. If the "poling" has not been carried far enough and excess of cuprous oxide remains in the copper when it is cast, the metal is brittle when hot and when cold, it breaks with a granular brick-red fracture, and is known as dry copper. When cast in an open rectangular mould a longitudinal furrow is formed on the surface of the metal as it sets. The structure of under-poled copper is shown in Pl. 55A.

At a later stage of poling a sample taken from the furnace, and cast in an open mould, solidifies with a flat surface. At this stage the copper is tough and malleable in the highest degree: it is said

to be at tough pitch. It breaks with a close-grained salmon-red fracture, and under the microscope shows polyhedral grains with rather thick grain boundaries and numerous particles of oxide or oxidized impurities (Pl. 55B). If poling has been carried so far that all the oxygen is removed, the metal on casting shows a longitudinal ridge. It is brittle, and when broken shows a yellowish or pale-coloured uneven fracture disclosing cavities formed by the liberation, at the moment of solidification, of gases dissolved in the molten copper.

The purest form of copper commercially obtainable is cathode copper, which consists of a parallel growth of crystals, frequently twinned if a high current density has been used in deposition (Pl. 56A). When remelted and cast this usually contains traces of oxygen in the form of cuprous oxide. Tough pitch high-conductivity copper, both electrolytic and fire-refined, may contain from 0.03 to 0.1 per cent. of oxygen. This may be removed by the addition of phosphorus, of which 0.02 to 0.08 per cent. remains in the metal. Phosphorus-deoxidized copper is similar in mechanical properties to the corresponding tough pitch copper, but its electrical conductivity is considerably lower. It is specially suitable for welding and is therefore used for domestic water pipes and boilers. By melting and pouring cathode copper in an atmosphere of carbon monoxide and nitrogen, oxygen-free high-conductivity copper is produced without the use of an added deoxidizer. This is widely used for electrical purposes and in applications which involve severe cold working.

Effect of Oxygen

Cuprous oxide (Cu_2O , containing 11.2 per cent. of oxygen) is soluble in molten copper, but only very slightly soluble in solid copper. On solidification it is deposited as a eutectic of Cu_2O and copper containing 3.5 per cent. of Cu_2O (i.e. 0.39 per cent. of oxygen), which freezes at 1065°C ., 18° below the freezing point of copper (see diagram, Fig. 37).

The cuprous oxide is of a sky-blue colour and is easily recognized in the unetched specimen (Pl. 56B). Slow cooling or annealing causes the granular eutectic to coalesce into globules of Cu_2O . The effect of oxygen above tough-pitch level is to make the copper "dry," i.e. to reduce its ductility and make it brittle when cold.

The small quantity of oxygen which copper normally contains is a source of injury to the metal when it is annealed in a reducing

THE EFFECT OF IMPURITIES IN COPPER

atmosphere. Reducing gases diffuse into the metal and react with the globules of cuprous oxide; hydrogen, for example, will diffuse in far more rapidly than the water vapour formed will diffuse out. Considerable pressure may thus be developed and extensive cracks produced in the metal (Pl. 56c, d).

This action, known as the "gassing" of copper, which ruins the metal for future use or treatment (except remelting) may be avoided by annealing in an oxidizing atmosphere and not permitting even momentary contact with reducing gases. Provided there is no objection from the point of view of its effect on the electrical conductivity, the danger of gassing may be eliminated in pure copper by totally removing cuprous oxide by the addition of excess of a deoxidizing agent, such as phosphorus, zinc, manganese or aluminium. These additions all form solid solutions with copper and exert only a very slight hardening effect, if present only in small amounts.

Effect of Arsenic

Copper can retain in solid solution about 7.25 per cent. of arsenic and this solubility changes very little with fall in temperature. Between $7\frac{1}{4}$ and 21 per cent. the alloys consist of grains of α solid solution in a groundmass of eutectic; from 21 to 28 per cent., they show the β constituent (possibly Cu_3As) embedded in eutectic (see diagram, Fig. 38).

Arsenic is present in most commercial copper in small traces. Its most pronounced effect is in lowering the electrical con-

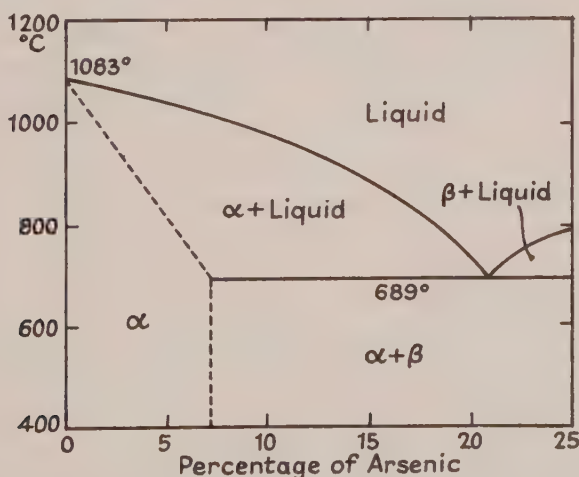


FIG. 38. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Arsenic Alloys.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

ductivity. From 0.3 to 0.5 per cent. of arsenic is purposely introduced into copper for locomotive fire-box plates and stays, to increase its tenacity (especially at elevated temperatures) without sensibly reducing its ductility.

The constitutional diagram shows that there is a large range of solidification between liquidus and solidus. This gives rise in a casting to a "cored" structure in which the centres of the primary grains consist of almost pure copper, surrounded by grain boundaries of an arsenic-rich solid solution, which may in cases of very rapid cooling contain some eutectic. On annealing this material diffusion occurs and the structure shows the homogeneous solid solution. Uniformity of the structure is promoted by rolling followed by annealing. Tough pitch arsenical copper contains 0.1 to 0.2 per cent. of oxygen and is damaged by annealing in reducing atmospheres, but this may be avoided by the use of phosphorus deoxidized arsenical copper containing 0.02 to 0.08 per cent. of phosphorus.

Effect of Antimony

Antimony in such quantities as occur in commercial copper forms a solid solution the range of solidification of which is as great as that of the arsenic-copper alloys. The structure of the quickly cooled metal is therefore similar, showing grains of almost pure copper with antimony-rich grain boundaries. Annealed copper will retain 10 per cent. of antimony in solid solution.

Small amounts of antimony are as effective as arsenic in strengthening copper at 250° C. and the addition of both antimony and arsenic results in a greater improvement. The effect of antimony in reducing electrical conductivity is very considerable but it is only approximately half as deleterious in this respect as arsenic. The simultaneous presence of oxygen counteracts the influence of antimony, possibly on account of the formation of an insoluble antimonate of copper which removes antimony from the solid solution.

Effect of Bismuth

Bismuth exerts a more injurious effect on copper than any other impurity. A very small quantity makes it brittle, and induces weakness, especially at high temperatures. It greatly reduces electrical conductivity.

Although copper and bismuth are completely soluble in the liquid state, they are almost completely insoluble in the solid con-

THE EFFECT OF IMPURITIES IN COPPER

dition: they form a eutectic containing only 0.2 per cent. of copper with a melting point less than 1° C. below that of bismuth.

Thus each crystal grain of copper which separates from the liquid containing bismuth is surrounded by a weak and brittle envelope of almost pure metallic bismuth (Pl. 55f). Fracture readily occurs through these films, which at temperatures above 270° C. are liquid. If an alloy with 0.5 per cent. of bismuth is pounded up, ductile crystals of pure copper can be separated. In copper containing 0.005 per cent. of bismuth or less the bismuth appears as small scattered particles.

Effect of Lead

Lead occurs in copper in globules or in films surrounding the crystal grains; it has a detrimental effect similar to that of bismuth. It forms a eutectic containing less than 0.1 per cent. of copper, with a melting point 1° C. below that of lead. The two metals are practically insoluble in one another in the solid state, and are not completely miscible in the liquid state, when the lead exceeds 38 per cent.

It may be convenient here to refer to the effect of large amounts of lead such as are found in copper-lead bearings. In solid copper-lead mixtures of all compositions, the two phases present are copper containing 0.02 per cent. of lead and nearly pure lead which has remained liquid down to 326° C. The cast material is therefore subject to segregation (Pl. 55c). Copper-lead bearing materials are best prepared by powder metallurgy technique. By this means a uniform distribution of lead is ensured and control is achieved of the composition and grain size of the product, on which with absence of porosity its mechanical properties depend (Pl. 55d, e).

Effect of Silicon

Silicon is sometimes used as a deoxidizer for copper, any excess passing into solid solution. It has a smaller effect on electrical conductivity than most deoxidizers. Copper can retain up to about 4 per cent. of silicon in solid solution at atmospheric temperature. The properties of copper-silicon alloys are dealt with later.

Effect of Phosphorus

This is a powerful deoxidizer, but even a trace remaining has a bad effect on the conductivity, 0.1 per cent. reducing it to half that of pure copper. Phosphorus in small amounts increases the

tensile strength of copper at atmospheric and at raised temperatures, and improves the fatigue limit without impairing toughness; but larger quantities render copper very hard and brittle. Copper and phosphorus form Cu_3P , which is soluble in copper to the extent of 1.2 per cent. at 705° and 0.5 per cent. at 200° , and forms a eutectic at 8.2 per cent. of phosphorus.

Commercial phosphor-copper contains 10 or 15 per cent. of phosphorus and consists of Cu_3P and eutectic. More than 15 per cent. of phosphorus cannot be introduced into the alloy at atmospheric pressure.

Mechanical Properties

The low resistance to stress offered by pure copper, particularly the absence of an elastic limit in the annealed metal, is a disadvantage for many engineering purposes. The elastic limit of arsenical copper, which is used when greater strength is required, is also very low but extensive investigations have been made by the British Non-Ferrous Metals Research Association to determine how far it is possible by alloying, cold-work and heat treatment, to obtain copper of improved elastic properties.* While not unduly hard at atmospheric temperature, the metal should retain a sufficient elastic limit at temperatures which may be reached in service (when used, for example, as firebox plates) to prevent permanent deformation under low stresses. In this connection the effect of small amounts of a wide range of other elements on the properties of copper has been examined. The micro-structure of all these alloys in the rolled and annealed condition is the same as that of pure copper, but their recrystallizing temperatures after cold-working are greatly affected by composition. The typical structure of rolled and annealed copper is shown in Pl. 17B, and the sequence of changes on recrystallization are exactly similar to those undergone by a brass (Pl. 57A to D). Silver, iron, tin, manganese and silicon raise the softening temperature of cold-worked copper to a greater extent than does arsenic, but only by the addition of silver are the improved elastic properties at raised temperatures gained without appreciable increase in hardness at atmospheric temperature. A very small addition of silver is sufficient, and the great advantage of the presence of 0.05 per cent. of silver in arsenical copper has been demonstrated after suitable mechanical and thermal treatment. The solubility of sil-

* *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1929 (2), vol. 42, p. 221; 1932 (1), vol. 48, p. 69; 1937 (1) vol. 60, p. 109.

THE EFFECT OF IMPURITIES IN COPPER

ver in copper is 0.7 per cent. at 400° C. and decreases rapidly with fall in temperature with probable values of 0.1 per cent. at 250° C. and almost nil at atmospheric temperature. It thus seems likely that the presence of silver confers on arsenical copper a capacity for temper-hardening.

Other elements which, for certain purposes, have a favourable effect on copper are cadmium (0.6 to 1.0 per cent.), which forms a solid solution and improves the strength and fatigue resistance with only a 5 per cent. loss in conductivity; chromium (0.5 per cent.), which forms a solid solution subject to temper hardening and confers increased strength at temperatures up to 400° C. with a fall in conductivity of 20 per cent.; and tellurium (0.75 per cent.), which, by the presence of particles of Cu_2Te , provides an effective means of improving machinability with little detriment to strength, conductivity or fabrication properties, except for some loss in ductility.*

Practical Notes

Polishing

Polishing of copper requires very great care. It may be carried out with alumina on a slow-running block, followed by hand polishing with metal polish on selvyt or on chamois leather (see p. 12), the specimen finally being freed from grease by dipping in caustic soda solution. After polishing with some metal polishes, the more convenient process of lightly rubbing the specimen on selvyt soaked with benzene or acetone may be found sufficient. Copper containing appreciable amounts of impurity is generally easier to polish on account of its greater hardness.

Separate polishing blocks should be kept for steel and for copper alloys. When a steel specimen is polished on a pad previously used for copper alloys, a film of copper is deposited on the surface of the steel if the polishing medium contains any free acid. The polishing of copper is assisted if a few drops of ammonia are added to the alumina suspension. Electrolytic polishing and etching may be carried out as described on p. 13.

Etching

The most satisfactory results are obtained with a 20 per cent. solution of 0.88 ammonia to which 10 per cent. of ammonium persulphate has been added.

* A systematic research dealing with the effects produced on copper by small additions of other elements has been carried out at the National Physical Laboratory, and the results have been summarized in "The Effect of Impurities on Copper," by S. L. Archbutt and W. E. Prytherch. Published by the British Non-Ferrous Metals Research Association, 1937.

A 10 per cent. solution of ammonium persulphate may be used alone, but ammonia (unless aided by the oxidizing action of the atmosphere as in polish attack) will not etch copper. An oxidizing agent must always be added: hydrogen peroxide may be used, but it is less satisfactory than ammonium persulphate.

The time of etching depends largely on the purity of the material under examination.

Polish attack may be practised by rubbing the specimen very lightly on a parchment pad wetted with 5 per cent. ammonia for a few minutes. Too great a pressure or too prolonged an attack rounds off the edges of the grains and broadens the boundaries. It is more difficult to avoid this effect if a soft pad (e.g. selvyt) is used.

To detect the presence of inclusions, oxide, lead, bismuth, etc., it is desirable also to examine the unetched surface; but to avoid misleading structures due to flow of metal in polishing it is best to etch the specimen after preparation in the usual way, and then to give it a final light polishing with liquid metal polish on selvyt stretched on a board before examination of the unetched surface.

Copper-lead bearing materials are examined unetched; but, if etching is necessary to show up the copper grain structure, the following solution may be used:*

Chromium trioxide	.	.	.	.	12.5 gm.
Hydrochloric acid	.	.	.	.	1 c.c.
Sulphuric acid.	.	.	.	.	1 c.c.
Teepol	.	.	.	.	1 c.c.
Water	.	.	.	.	500 c.c.

* Recommended by W. E. Duckworth, the Glacier Metal Co. Ltd.

CHAPTER XIII

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF COPPER WITH ZINC, TIN, SILICON, ALUMINIUM AND NICKEL

THE alloys of copper may be endowed with a wide range of properties by varying their composition and the mechanical and heat treatment to which they are subjected. For this reason they probably rank next to steel in importance to the engineer.

The alloys rich in copper have certain points of resemblance from the microscopical point of view. Reasons for this have been briefly considered in the section on Alloys (p. 72). On account of the number of intermediate phases the constitutional diagrams of some copper alloy-systems become very complicated, but, in general, the alloys which are of industrial importance (except for special purposes) contain only the α constituent or α together with a moderate amount of β .

Copper-Zinc Alloys. The Brasses

The important alloys of copper and zinc from an industrial point of view are all comprised within the limits of composition 0-50 per cent. of zinc. That portion of the constitutional diagram which refers to these alloys is given in Fig. 39. The addition of zinc to copper results in the formation of a series of solid solutions which, in accordance with usual practice, are referred to in order of diminishing copper content as the α , β , γ , etc., constituents. The diagram may be summarized as follows:

Percentage composition.		Constituent just below the freezing point.	Constituent after slow cooling to 400° C.
Copper.	Zinc.		
100 to 67.5	0 to 32.5	α	α
67.5 " 63	32.5 " 37	$\alpha + \beta$	α
63 " 61	37 " 39	β	α
61 " 55.5	39 " 45.5	β	$\alpha + \beta'$
55.5 " 50	45.5 " 50	β	β'
50 " 43.5	50 " 56.5	β	$\beta' + \gamma$
43.5 " 41	56.5 " 59	$\beta + \gamma$	$\beta' + \gamma$

Further changes in composition of the α and β' phases below 400°C . are only observed after prolonged annealing.

These limits, of course, refer to conditions of equilibrium produced by very slow cooling: the constituents present after more rapid cooling can be surmised by taking into account the changes undergone, but possibly not carried to completion, by the alloy during cooling from the freezing point.

Thermal curves and measurements of electrical resistivity indicate that the β constituent undergoes a change at about 470°C . The type of crystal lattice is the same above and below 470°C . but the distribution of the zinc atoms among the copper atoms within the lattice is altered. At temperatures above 470°C . the

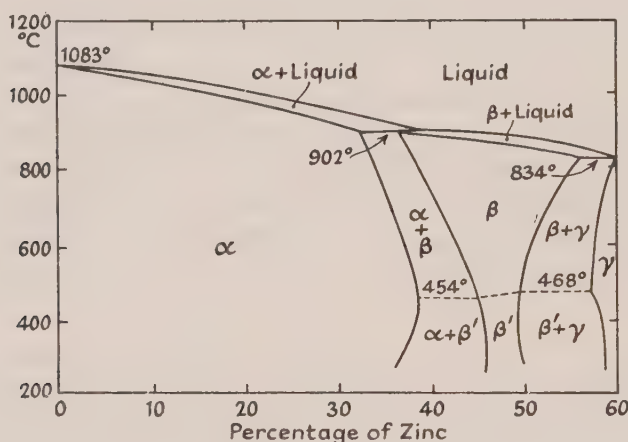


FIG. 39. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Zinc Alloys.

copper and zinc occupy corners and centres of a body-centred cubic lattice at random. Below 470°C . they begin to segregate, one set going to the corners and another to the centres. This distribution of atoms in regularly selected positions of the underlying phase pattern is termed a super-lattice, and the change a disorder-order transformation. Such a change affects the electrical resistivity and the true specific heat at the temperature of transformation, giving rise to a thermal arrest point. In β -brass a superlattice cannot exist above 470°C .; below that temperature the rate of change to the ordered condition rapidly diminishes with falling temperature. If this rate is high at the critical temperature, as in β -brass, the structure is not prevented from becoming ordered even when the alloy is quenched. If the critical temperature for the formation of a superlattice is low, the possibility of atomic re-

PLATES

57 - 61

Recrystallization and grain growth in 70 : 30 brass. All showing the α solid solution.

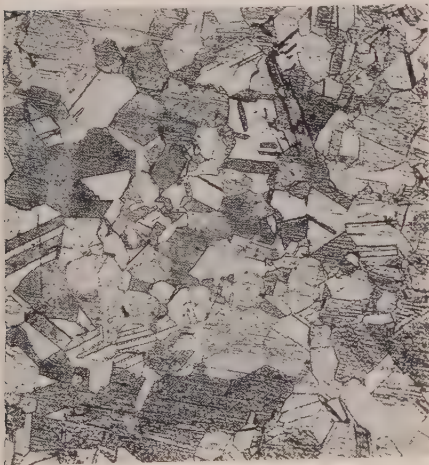
- A. Cold-drawn 70 : 30 brass showing broken-down crystal grains of the α constituent. Brinell hardness 165.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- B. The same brass heated three hours at 350° C. Recrystallization has occurred with refining of the grain size. Brinell hardness 90.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- C. Cold-drawn 70 : 30 brass annealed half hour at 650° C.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- D. Cold-drawn 70 : 30 brass annealed half hour at 750° C.
Etched with acid ferric chloride solution. $\times 100$.
- E. "Season cracks" in 70 : 30 brass. The cracks are intercrystalline.
Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate. $\times 100$.
- F. Inclusions of zinc oxide in cast 70 : 30 brass.
Unetched. $\times 500$.



A



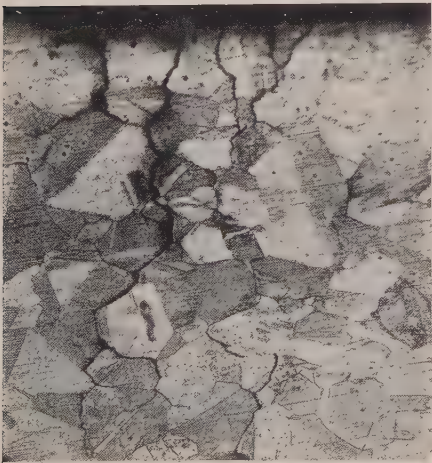
B



C



D



E



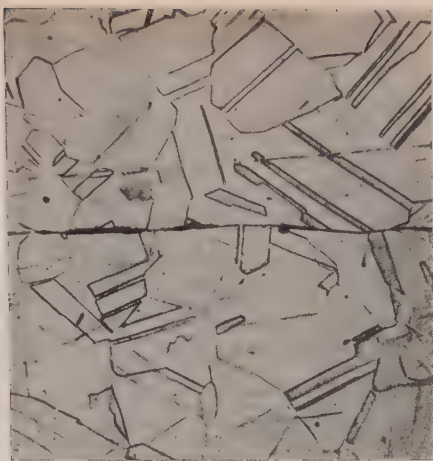
F

A to D etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate; E and F with acid ferric chloride solution.

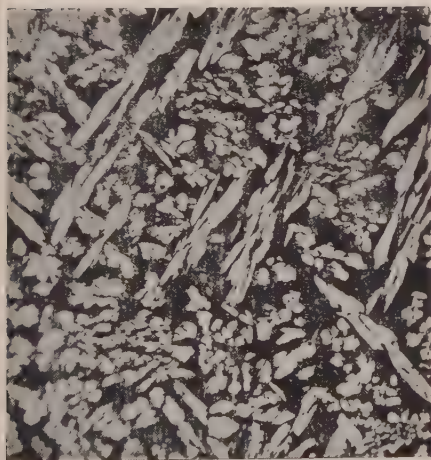
- | | |
|---|--------|
| A. Inclusion in cold-drawn 70 : 30 brass. | × 100. |
| B. Oxidized discontinuity (" spill ") in annealed 70 : 30 brass strip. | × 50. |
| C. Cast 60 : 40 brass, consisting of α and β solid solutions. α light, β dark. | × 100. |
| D. Rolled 60 : 40 brass, transverse section, showing α and β solid solutions. | × 100. |
| E. Brass containing 60 per cent. of copper and 2.8 per cent. of aluminium, annealed, showing the β solid solution only. | × 100. |
| F. Brass containing 60 per cent. of copper and 5 per cent. of aluminium, showing β and γ solid solutions. Light particles of γ in groundmass of β . | × 50. |



A



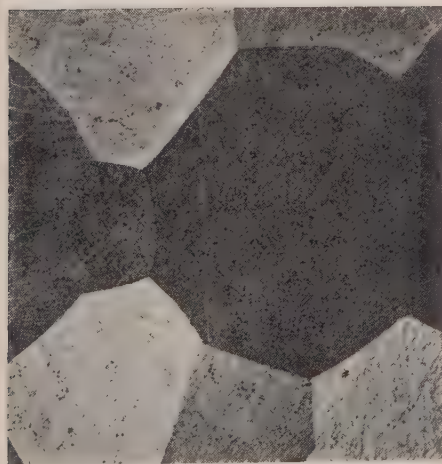
B



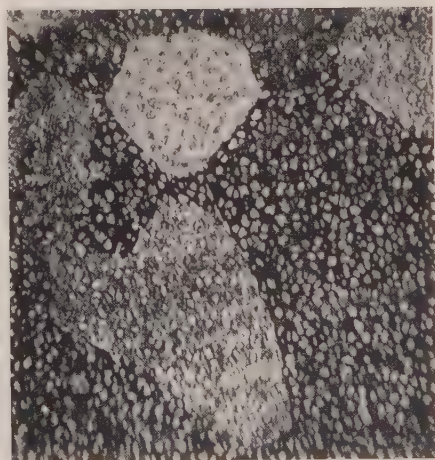
C



D



E



F

Etched with acid ferric chloride solution.

- A. Bronze containing 5 per cent. of tin as cast, consisting mainly of the α solid solution, with particles of δ . The liquid last to solidify formed interdendritic β , which has subsequently broken down to α (absorbed in the original α grains) + δ (light). $\times 100$.

- B. Coinage bronze (copper 95 per cent., tin 4 per cent., zinc 1 per cent.) annealed at 600°C ., consisting of the α solid solution showing twinning. $\times 100$.

This composition was standard from 1860 to 1923. Since 1923, British bronze coinage has contained copper 95.5, tin 3 and zinc 1.5 per cent., except for a period during the war when the proportion of tin was temporarily reduced and coins contained copper 97, tin 0.5 and zinc 2.5 per cent.

W. A. C. Newman, "British Coinage," *Roy. Inst. of Chemistry, Lectures, Monographs and Reports*, 1953, No. 3.

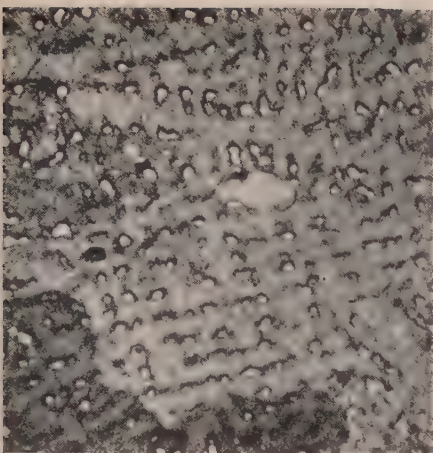
- C. Bronze containing 15.8 per cent. of tin : quenched from 600°C ., consisting of α (light) and β (dark). $\times 100$.

- D. Bronze containing 15.8 per cent. of tin; heated to 600°C . and slowly cooled, consisting of α (dark) and $(\alpha + \delta)$ complex in which δ etches light. Some α from the complex has separated on and been absorbed by the large α grains, leaving them surrounded by a fringe of δ . $\times 100$.

- E. Sand-cast copper-silicon alloy (silicon bronze), containing copper 92, silicon 3.5, zinc 2.0, iron 2.0 per cent., showing cored α solid solution with a separation, in the silicon-rich light-etching areas, of particles of the γ solid solution of silicon in copper. $\times 100$.

- F. Chill-cast copper-nickel-aluminium alloy (copper 85.5 per cent., aluminium 5.0 per cent., nickel 9.5 per cent.), showing pronounced dendritic structure of nickel-rich dendrites in the α solid solution.

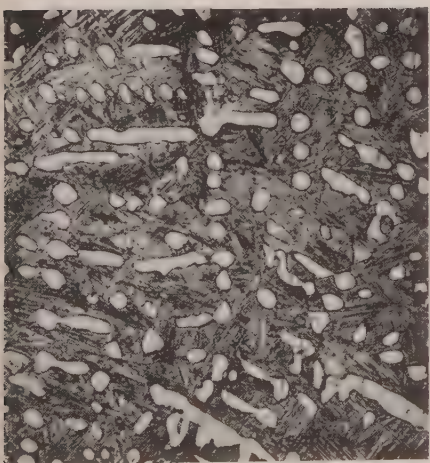
This alloy may be temper-hardened (cf. Pl. 18E and F). Its tensile strength as cast was 28 tons per sq. in.; as quenched in water after annealing at 900°C ., 21 tons per sq. in. (structure, α solid solution); and reheated to 550°C . for twelve hours after quenching 44 tons per sq. in. $\times 100$.



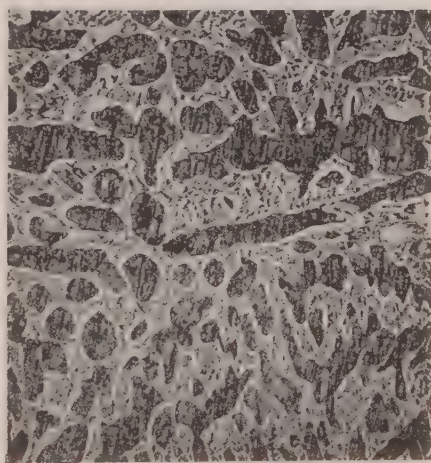
A



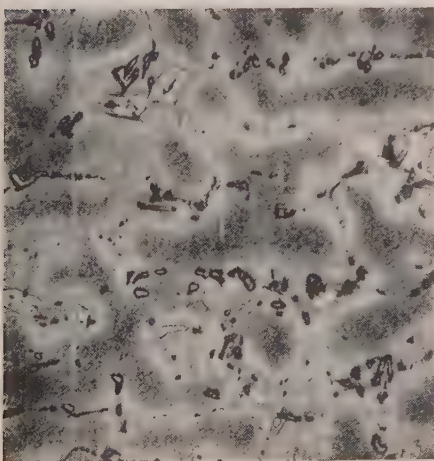
B



C



D



E



F

Copper–aluminium alloys.

All etched with acid solution of ferric chloride.

- A. Alloy containing copper 95 per cent., aluminium 5 per cent. rolled and annealed, consisting of the α solid solution showing twinning.

× 100.
- B. Alloy containing copper 90 per cent., aluminium 10 per cent. as cast. α (light) and β (dark).

× 100.
- C. The same alloy (90 : 10) hot-rolled. Transverse section. α and β .

× 100.
- D. The same alloy (90 : 10) rolled at a lower temperature. Longitudinal section, showing pronounced bands of α and β .

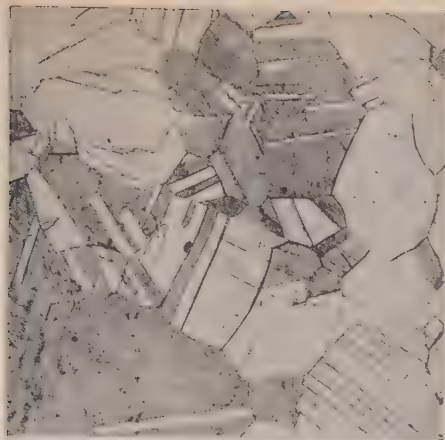
× 100.
- E. The same alloy (90 : 10) heated to 700° C. and slowly cooled. The β constituent has broken down into the complex ($\alpha + \gamma_2$). α (light), γ_2 (dark). The α is surrounded by a fringe of γ_2 as in the case of the bronze shown in Pl. 59D.

× 250.
- F. The same alloy (90 : 10) heated to 950° C. and quenched in water, showing a martensitic structure produced by the incipient separation of α (light needles) from the β constituent (dark).

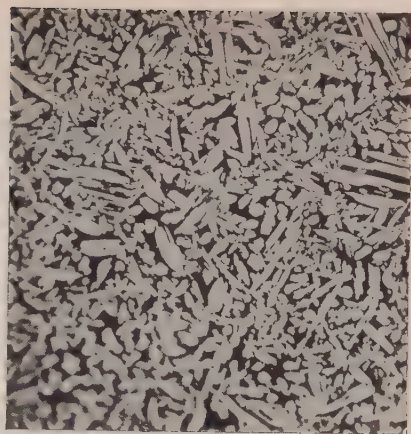
× 50.

Mechanical Properties associated with the structures illustrated

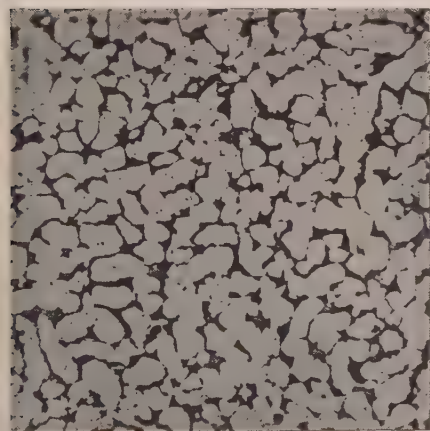
	A.	B.	C.	D.	E.	F.
Yield point, tons per sq. in.	6	12	18	42	15	35
Maximum load, tons per sq. in.	24	32	38	44	26	54
Elongation per cent. on 2 in.	83	20	30	9	9	2
Impact figure, ft.-lb., B.S.I. test-piece .	130	—	26	—	4	—



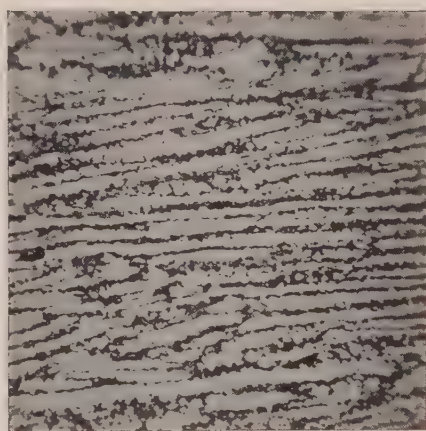
A



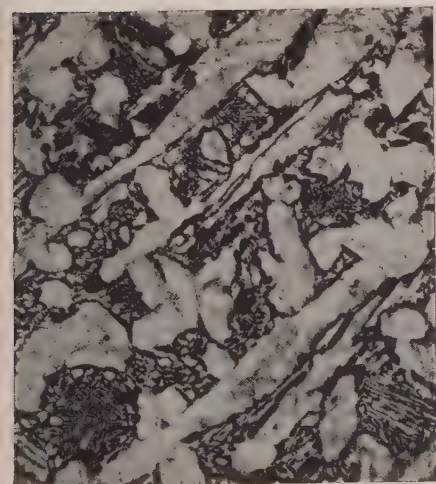
B



C



D



E



F

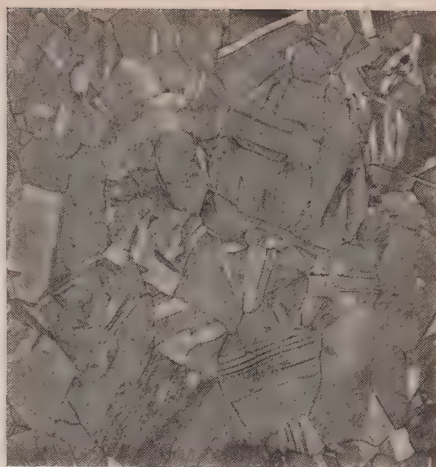
Condenser tube alloys.

- A. Aluminium brass (76 : 22 : 2 copper–zinc–aluminium) condenser tube (thin tube). × 100.
- B. Aluminium brass condenser tube (thick tube). × 100.
 A and B. Etched in acid ferric chloride solution.
- C. Copper–nickel–iron alloy (nickel 5, iron 1, manganese 0.5 per cent.). Heated for three hours at 950° C. and quenched. Uniform solid solution. × 1500.
- D. Copper–nickel–iron alloy (nickel 5, iron 1.35, manganese 0.5 per cent.). Quenched from 900° C. and reheated at 700° C. for two hours, showing precipitation of an iron-rich phase. × 1000.
 The increase in hardness due to temper hardening of this alloy is only slight, from 57 to 65. In the alloy containing 10 per cent. of nickel and 2 per cent. of iron it is greater, 65 to 90.
 C and D. Etched with a solution of ammonium persulphate and copper ammonium chloride.
- E. Copper–nickel–iron condenser tube (nickel 10, iron 2, manganese 0.5 per cent.). Transverse section. × 750.
 Etched with : 5 c.c. concentrated nitric acid
 5 c.c. ,, sulphuric acid
 0.75 gm. ammonium chloride
 4 gm. chromic acid
 in 100 c.c. water.
- F. Corroded outer surface of an aluminium brass condenser tube showing the type of attack which occasionally occurs under severe conditions. × 100.
 Etched in acid ferric chloride solution.

(Photomicrographs supplied by the British Non-Ferrous Metals Research Association.)



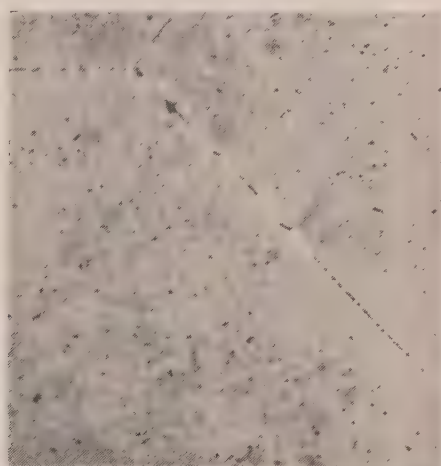
A



B



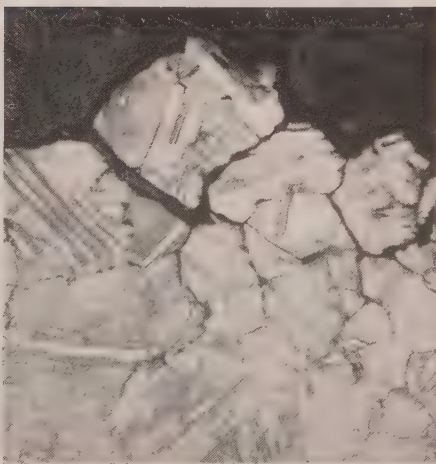
C



D



E



F

COPPER ALLOYS

arrangement ceases before it is reached, and the structure is permanently disordered. If it is as high as the melting point, the lattice is completely ordered from the freezing point downwards, a structure associated with the well-defined intermetallic compounds, for example NiAl . The change to the ordered condition cannot be suppressed in β -brass, and the only form which can exist at atmospheric temperatures is β' , but for ordinary purposes it is usual to refer to the constituent as β .

There is a certain connection between the properties and the microstructure which may be expressed in general terms.

1. The tensile strength increases with increase in zinc content,

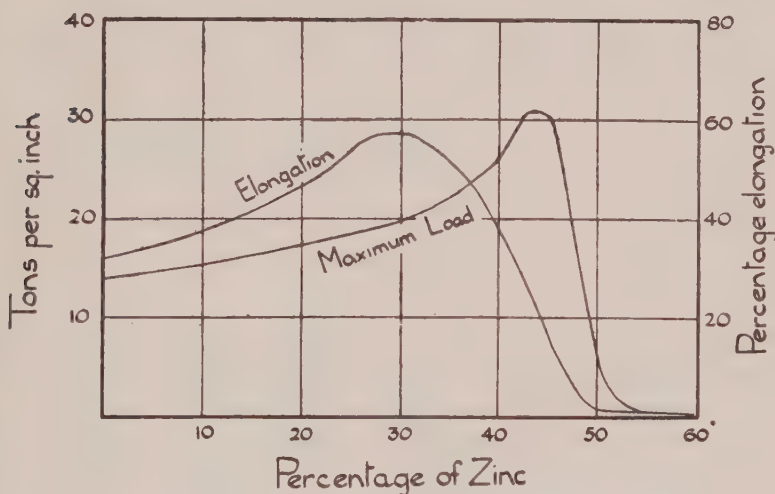


FIG. 40. Effect of Composition on the Mechanical Properties of the Annealed Brasses. (Charpy.)

rises somewhat abruptly with the appearance of β , and reaches a maximum at a composition corresponding roughly to equal parts of α and β ; it falls off rapidly at the appearance of the γ constituent (Fig. 40).

2. Elongation rises to a maximum and begins to fall again before the composition reaches the limit of the α solution; it falls considerably as the amount of β increases, and is very small in the presence of γ (Fig. 40).

3. The α constituent shows the greatest resistance to shock: this is diminished by the presence of β , and the alloy becomes extremely brittle when γ is present.

4. Hardness is greatly increased by the presence of β and still further when γ appears.

5. Alloys containing α only are specially suitable for working cold, and may be rolled hot or cold; those containing α and β will suffer very little deformation in the cold without rupture and may only be rolled hot. The β constituent may also be forged, rolled or extruded hot, but alloys containing γ should invariably be avoided for any mechanical treatment.

The brasses of industrial importance are often designated by their copper and zinc content.

85 : 15 Brass

Gilding metal. This is used for ornaments and for cheap jewellery which is to be gilded: it withstands cold-work, cupping, etc. On account of the range of solidification, the cast material has a dendritic structure. If cooled very slowly or annealed, diffusion takes place, yielding polyhedral grains of uniform composition. The process of diffusion is assisted by mechanical deformation of the grains by hot- or cold-work followed by annealing. The changes which occur on rolling and annealing are similar to those described for 70 : 30 brass.

70 : 30 Brass

This alloy, which is used widely for tubes, sheets and wire, also shows a dendritic structure of the α solid solution when chill cast. The β constituent does not begin to appear in the cast structure until the zinc exceeds 32 per cent. except in the presence of an additional element like aluminium or tin (Pl. 56F). After annealing, the alloy consists of homogeneous α solid solution, and it is specially suitable for cold-working. To withstand this treatment, especially drawing, it is necessary that the brass should be perfectly sound and free from deleterious impurities. Since high-grade 70 : 30 brass is usually made from the purest copper and zinc available without admixture of any but the cleanest scrap, these impurities are chiefly inclusions of dross (oxides or silicates) or charcoal (Pl. 57F, 58A and B). Such inclusions, if present, frequently lead to failure of the material during manufacture or in use. They become entrapped in the solidifying metal, either by splashing or by rapid solidification in moulds of small cross section. It is a frequent custom in casting brass for drawing into rod to employ very long moulds of very small cross section, in order to minimize subsequent mechanical treatment. Ingots made in such moulds are most liable to contain inclusions and to show piping to a great depth, resulting in central unsoundness over a

COPPER ALLOYS

considerable length of the ingot. To ensure soundness it is necessary to cast in a mould such that the cross section is large enough to give relatively slow cooling. The mould and stream of molten metal should be so arranged as to avoid splashing, and the dimensions of the mould and speed of pouring should be such as to result in the ingot solidifying from bottom upwards.

The effect of cold-work on the microstructure is to break down the crystal grains by plastic deformation, and so crush them into a confused *débris* (Pl. 57A, 58A). Annealing after cold-work results in recrystallization and subsequent crystal growth.

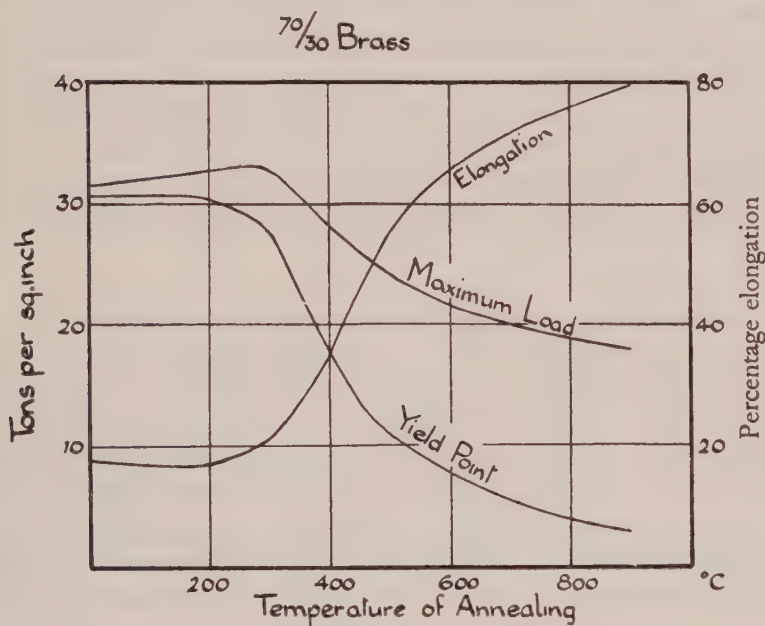


FIG. 41. Effect of Annealing (half hour) on the Properties of Cold-rolled 70 : 30 Brass. (*Bengough and Hudson.*)

For typical cold-rolled 70 : 30 brass of Brinell hardness about 165 (Pl. 57A) annealed for half hour at gradually increasing temperatures, there is first a slight rise, and after annealing above 300° C. a slight fall, in the hardness and tensile strength (see diagram, Fig. 41). Meanwhile there is no visible change in the microstructure. The elongation is unaffected up to 300° C., but between 300° C. and 400° C. shows a rapid increase: this is coincident with the period of recrystallization. The structure at this point is distinctly finer than that of the cold-worked material (Pl. 57B). Above this temperature crystal growth proceeds (Pl. 57c, d) and the new grains show pronounced twinning. On annealing

at temperatures up to about 600°C . there is a progressive fall in tensile strength and rise in elongation; from 600°C . to 750°C . these properties remain approximately constant, subsequently at higher temperatures with the very large crystal growth characteristic of over-annealed brass there is a further fall in tensile strength, accompanied, when the metal is "burnt," by a sudden fall in elongation. Over-annealed brass may by careful treatment be cold-worked, re-annealed and so refined in structure. Burnt brass is extremely friable and useless unless remelted. This effect is produced when brass is annealed at temperatures close to the solidus; it is probably due in part to volatilization of zinc, and is certainly accelerated by the presence of lead, which collects into and corrodes the grain boundaries. A pure brass will sustain over-annealing without burning far better than one containing small quantities of impurities.

Burnt 70 : 30 brass consists of very large α -grains showing pits and specks distributed over the surface, and distinct grain boundaries.

Season Cracking

Brasses of a wide range of composition (including 70 : 30 and 60 : 40) are liable to season cracking, which, however, occurs only in material which is maintained in a state of stress either by external constraint or, more commonly, by internal stress. Season cracks almost invariably follow an intercrystalline path (Pl. 57E).

A suitably controlled low-temperature annealing (below 300°C .), which removes internal stress but has little or no effect on the hardness, appears to be the most efficient safeguard against failure by season cracking. The mercurous nitrate test for the detection of injurious internal stress in cold-worked copper alloys is described in the notes at the end of this chapter.

60 : 40 Brass

Muntz metal. The molten metal on cooling begins to freeze at about 905°C ., and dendrites of the β solution are formed. With sufficiently slow cooling through the range of solidification the alloy consists of homogeneous β constituent when just solid, but, on cooling, this solution retains less copper and at 770°C . the α constituent separates from the homogeneous β and increases in amount as the temperature falls. The structure on reaching atmospheric temperature is therefore a mixture of α and β , the relative proportions of which may be controlled to some extent by the rate

COPPER ALLOYS

of cooling (Pl. 58c). For example, a thin section of 60 : 40 brass quenched from 800° C. consists of homogeneous β ; with a larger section it is impossible to suppress completely the separation of α , but a specimen rapidly cooled from this temperature always contains more β than a specimen more slowly cooled. These microstructural characteristics are accompanied by changes in mechanical properties which can be deduced from the known hardness and brittleness of the β constituent and the softness and ductility of the α constituent. Hot-rolled 60 : 40 brass, the rolling of which has been stopped above 700° C., shows a uniform structure in longitudinal and transverse directions. After the separation of α has begun, the α and β constituents are each elongated in the direction of rolling, giving the normal structure of rolled 60 : 40 brass (Pl. 58D). The lower the temperature of finishing the smaller will be the grain size. If, however, rolling is continued much below 600° C., recrystallization does not keep pace with the deformation and the metal is cold-worked.

50 : 50 Brass

Brazing solder. This alloy, if cooled sufficiently slowly through the range of solidification, consists of homogeneous β solution, which, however, may decompose on cooling if the copper content is less than 50 per cent. At atmospheric temperature the β solution will retain a maximum of just 50 per cent. of zinc if no impurities are present, but any excess of zinc over 50 per cent. causes the separation of the γ constituent, which increases in amount as the temperature falls. Its presence renders the alloy extremely hard and brittle.

Special Brasses

Small proportions of other metals are sometimes added to copper-zinc alloys for special purposes for which increased strength, hardness or resistance to corrosion is required. Iron, aluminium and manganese all give commercial alloys of great tensile strength and high resistance to corrosion. As a rule these additions do not involve the formation of a separate constituent. The useful alloys of this type consist of the α , β or α and β solutions, no longer containing copper and zinc only, but modified in composition and in properties by the addition of the special metal. The limits of composition of the α and β solutions are affected, and so also are the proportions present in the microstructure. With respect to this modification of the microstructure, each element

may be regarded as playing the part of an equivalent quantity of zinc. Thus in their effect solely on the structure (not on the mechanical properties of the constituents)–

1 part of manganese is approximately equivalent to 0.5 part of zinc.									
I	„	iron	„	„	„	„	0.9	„	„
I	„	tin	„	„	„	„	2	parts	„
I	„	aluminium	„	„	„	„	6	„	„

Thus an alloy containing $70\text{Cu} + 26\text{Zn} + 4\text{Al}$ will have, after similar treatment, a similar structure to one containing

$$\frac{26 + (4 \times 6)}{70 + 26 + (4 \times 6)} \times 100 = \frac{50}{120} \times 100 = 41.7 \text{ per cent. of zinc.}$$

i.e. substitution of 4 per cent. of aluminium for zinc in 70 : 30 brass gives rise to an $\alpha + \beta$ alloy. Similarly substitution of 3 per cent. of aluminium for zinc in a 60 : 40 brass converts it into an alloy consisting of the β solid solution alone (Pl. 58E) while the substitution of 5 per cent. of aluminium for zinc results in the separation of the γ constituent (Pl. 58F), and has an exceedingly embrittling effect. The use of about 2 per cent. of aluminium in brasses of different copper contents not only improves the mechanical properties, but secures increased resistance to corrosion and to oxidation at high temperatures by the formation of a protective surface film of aluminium oxide.* The structural equivalent of 70 : 30 brass is a 76 : 22 : 2 copper–zinc–aluminium alloy which has been widely employed as a condenser-tube material (Pl. 61A, B). It has displaced Admiralty brass (copper 70, zinc 29, tin 1 per cent.) for this purpose. Although much more resistant to corrosion, it may suffer similar attack under very severe conditions (Pl. 61F). Stages in the development of condenser-tube alloys are referred to on p. 173.

The amount of a special element added to brass must never be sufficient to cause the formation of a new deleterious constituent. Thus, the addition of 1 to 1.5 per cent. of tin to 60 : 40 brass gives Naval brass (copper 60, zinc 39, tin 1 per cent.), showing improved resistance to corrosion by sea-water. With larger amounts of tin a constituent is formed in the β solution which is analogous to the δ constituent of the bronzes, and makes the alloy very hard and brittle.

Copper–Tin Alloys. The Bronzes

As in the case of the brasses, the addition of tin to copper results in the formation of a series of solid solutions. The constitu-

* See R. Genders, "The Aluminium-Brasses," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1930 (1), vol. 43, p. 163.

COPPER ALLOYS

tional diagram of copper-tin alloys is very complex, but that part of it which deals with alloys of industrial importance is reproduced in Fig. 42 and may be summarized as follows:

Percentage composition.		Constituents just below the freezing point after slow cooling through the range of solidification.	Constituents after slow cooling to 400° C.
Copper.	Tin.		
100 to 87	0 to 13	α	α
87 „ 86	13 „ 14	$\alpha + \beta$	α
86 „ 78	14 „ 22	$\alpha + \beta$	$\alpha + \delta$
78 „ 74	22 „ 26	$\beta \rightarrow (\alpha + \beta)$	$\alpha + \delta$

Further changes on cooling from 400° C. to room temperature are so sluggish that they only occur in conditions very far removed from actual practice. The α solution is the softest of the constituents; it may be rolled or stamped cold, but hardens under this treatment much more rapidly than α -brass. The β and γ constituents do not exist in the alloy slowly cooled to room temperature: this is due to successive changes occurring at 586° C. and 520° C. whereby β is resolved into $\alpha + \gamma$ and γ into $\alpha + \delta$. The δ constituent has the crystal structure of γ -brass. It has a narrow range of composition corresponding approximately to the formula $\text{Cu}_{31}\text{Sn}_8$ and, like all intermetallic compounds, is extremely hard and brittle. The $\delta \rightarrow \alpha + \epsilon$ change at 350° C. does not occur in commercial practice, though alloys richer in tin may contain the ϵ constituent which corresponds to Cu_3Sn (p. 72), and the η solid solution, which approximates to the composition CuSn .

95 : 5 Copper-Tin Alloy

On cooling from the liquid condition, the α solid solution which first forms contains only about 2 per cent. of tin. Thus the cast metal has a cored structure (Pl. 59A) and the coring is very marked because of the long range between liquidus and solidus; but it may be eliminated by diffusion on cooling more slowly or by annealing.

Any absorption of oxygen occurring during manufacture results in the presence of SnO_2 in the alloy, tending to make it brittle. A deoxidizer such as zinc is therefore frequently added. The addition of zinc, as in coinage bronze (Pl. 59B), causes no change in the microscopical appearance of the homogeneous α constituent, the zinc, however, exerting its deoxidizing effect in the liquid, and slight hardening effect on the solid solution. The

structure of a bronze coin shows marked deformation of the crystals. On annealing recrystallization takes place with subsequent crystal growth, as in the case of α brass. Twinning is a characteristic feature of the cold-worked and annealed alloy.

90 : 10 Copper-Tin Alloy

This is typical of gun-metal, most varieties of which, however, contain a deoxidizer, frequently zinc (e.g. Admiralty gun-metal, copper 88, tin 10, zinc 2 per cent.). The structure of the cast material is very dependent on the rate of cooling, both through the range of solidification and below. On account of the wide solidifi-

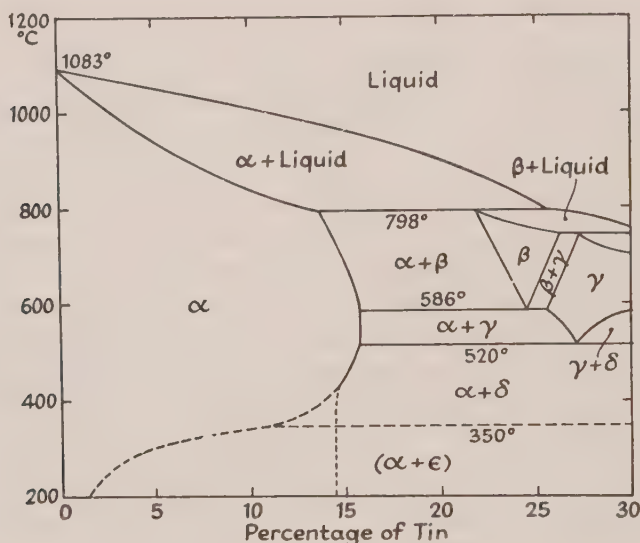


FIG. 42. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Tin Alloys.

cation range of the alloy and the slow rate of diffusion of tin, the apparent solubility limit of the α solution is well below that shown in the diagram. The cast structure is always definitely dendritic and if coring is pronounced, some β solution may be formed at 798° C. This interdendritic β , on cooling, gives rise to the hard δ constituent. On the other hand, after slow cooling or prolonged annealing, the homogeneous α constituent may be produced. A chill-cast gun-metal will therefore be very different in structure and properties from one which has been annealed.

85 : 15 Copper-Tin Alloy

This is typical of a number of bronzes used as bearing metals, most of which, however, contain a little zinc as a deoxidizer. It is

also the approximate composition of bell metal. Immediately after solidification the alloy consists of the α and β constituents. If rapidly cooled, these are preserved (Pl. 59c). If slowly cooled, the β (or γ) is completely broken down below 520° C. into a complex $\alpha + \delta$, the $\alpha + \beta$ structure being replaced by $\alpha + (\alpha + \delta)$ complex in the slowly cooled alloy (Pl. 59d). This accounts for the fact that sand castings of this alloy are much harder than chill castings. It also provides the basis of a method of heat treatment, applied in the one case to bells and in the other to bearing metals, by which in the former case quenching from about 600° C. yields a softer and tougher alloy of better tone, and in the latter case slow cooling from a similar temperature induces the separation of the very hard δ constituent in a comparatively plastic groundmass of α .

Special Bronzes

Various elements have been added to bronze as deoxidizers; any excess over that required to remove the oxygen is found in the alloy and affects the properties. These deoxidizers include silicon, aluminium and manganese, but most important of all is phosphorus. Phosphor-bronzes containing less than 9 per cent. of tin and only traces of phosphorus (up to 0.2 per cent.) are suitable for rolling or drawing and have the simple structure of the homogeneous α constituent. They are really very completely deoxidized bronzes. For certain purposes advantage is taken of the increased hardness conferred by the presence of phosphorus in the alloy. Thus alloys with 8 to 10 per cent. of tin and 0.5 per cent. phosphorus are used for valves, while still harder alloys with 10 to 12 per cent. of tin and phosphorus ranging from 0.5 to 1.5 per cent. are used for gearing, bearings, and parts in which excessive wear is to be guarded against. The phosphorus separates as hard particles of Cu_3P associated with the δ constituent in these alloys, enhancing their properties as bearing metals. The two constituents are best distinguished by heat tinting, which colours the phosphide blue, while the δ constituent remains yellow.

Reference must also be made to bronzes containing lead which separates in the solid alloy in globules and films. A small quantity enables the metal to be turned and filed easily, but larger quantities (up to 25 per cent.) are used for bearings. A 72 : 24 : 4 copper-lead-tin alloy has a 50 per cent. greater load-carrying capacity than 70 : 30 copper-lead. Liquation is a serious difficulty

in cast-bearing materials of this type, and like the copper-lead bearing metal (Pl. 55c, D, E), they are best made by powder metallurgy methods.

Copper-Silicon Alloys. Silicon Bronzes

The constitutional diagram of the copper-silicon alloys (Fig. 43) bears some resemblance to that of the copper-tin alloys, and the structure of the copper-rich alloys of both series is similar. The most important commercial alloy contains about 3.5 per cent. of silicon together with small quantities of zinc, iron and man-

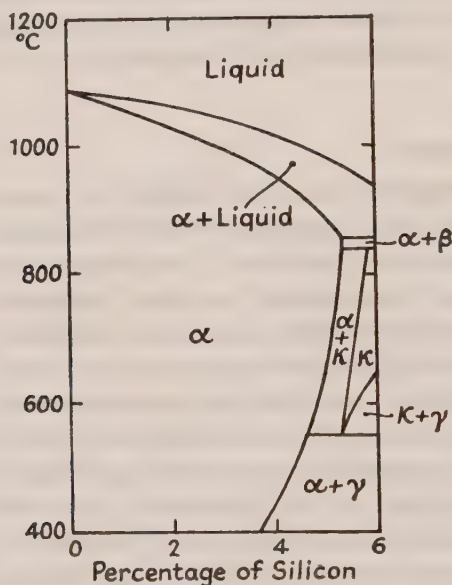


FIG. 43. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Silicon Alloys.

ganese. In the cast condition it shows the hard bluish γ constituent which may stand out in high relief on the polished surface. The α groundmass, when etched, shows considerable coring, characteristic of a cast alloy with a long freezing range (Pl. 59E). The complex silicon bronzes possess properties similar to those of gun-metal.

Silicon bronzes can readily be hot forged, and in this condition have the structure of a uniform solid solution, and good mechanical properties comparable with those of the complex bronzes. Some of the alloys are susceptible to heat treatment. The solubility of silicon in copper reaches its maximum value of 5.3 per cent. at 842° C. and falls to less than 4 per cent. at 350° C. It is

COPPER ALLOYS

therefore possible to harden the quenched alloys by tempering. The addition of aluminium or of zinc reduces the solubility of silicon, but does not alter the character of the solubility curve, and the complex alloys of copper–aluminium–silicon and copper–zinc–silicon will also undergo temper hardening when suitably treated.

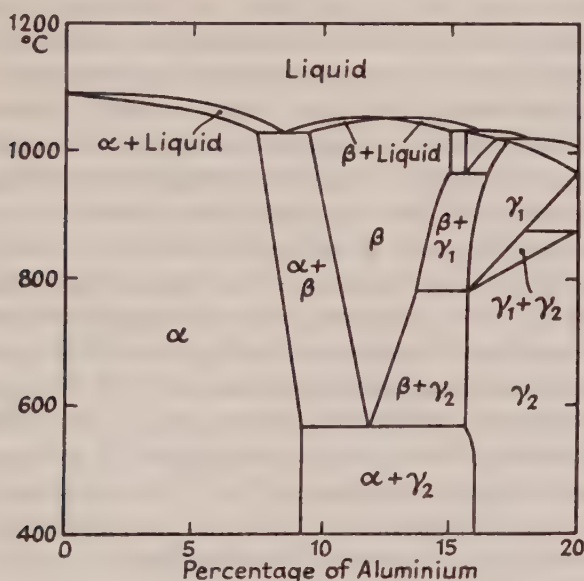


FIG. 44. Constitutional Diagram of the Copper-Aluminium Alloys.

Copper–Aluminium Alloys. Aluminium Bronzes

The constitution of the alloys of industrial importance is indicated in the diagram (Fig. 44) and the following table:

Percentage composition.		Constituents just below the freezing point.	Constituents after slow cooling to atmospheric temperature.
Copper.	Aluminium.		
100 to 92.5	0 to 7.5	α	α
92.5 „ 91	7.5 „ 9	$\alpha + \beta$	α
91 „ 88.2	9 „ 11.8	$\beta \rightarrow (\alpha + \beta)$	$\alpha + \gamma_2$
88.2 „ 84	11.8 „ 16	$\beta \rightarrow (\beta + \gamma_2)$	$\alpha + \gamma_2$

(The γ_2 constituent was formerly known as δ .)

Up to 7.5 per cent. of aluminium these alloys consist of homogeneous α solid solution. The liquidus and solidus are so close together that there is little difference in composition between the portions which solidify first and those which solidify last, hence

equilibrium is readily attained and the α solution is generally almost homogeneous in the chill-blast condition. The structure of these alloys undergoes exactly similar changes to those occurring in the copper-zinc α solid solution as a result of rolling and annealing, recrystallization, crystal growth and the formation of twin crystals (Pl. 60A).

With little more than 7.5 per cent. of aluminium the β constituent appears in alloys which have received a moderate rate of cooling, though the α solution can retain as much as 9 per cent. at atmospheric temperature. As usual, the β solution is harder and less ductile than α , and its presence strengthens the alloy. The alloys containing α may be rolled hot or cold (they are less fragile at the temperature of hot-rolling than the copper-zinc α alloys), but those containing $\alpha + \beta$ are only rolled hot. The 90 : 10 copper-aluminium alloy has the best mechanical properties of the series and is in use for purposes where strength combined with exceptional resistance to corrosion is required. Chill-castings of this alloy consist of about equal parts of α and β (Pl. 60B). In rolled rod the constituents are banded in the direction of rolling (Pl. 60C, D). Quenched from a high temperature it assumes great hardness, and consists almost entirely of β , showing an acicular structure similar to martensite (Pl. 60F). To preserve the high quality of the alloy it is essential that the rate of cooling of the casting or hot-rolled rod should be such as to prevent the occurrence of the change $\beta \rightarrow \alpha + \gamma_2$ at 560° C. When slowly cooled the β constituent is resolved into a duplex eutectoid structure; the presence of the γ_2 constituent has an embrittling effect and ruins the properties of the alloy (Pl. 60E).

Copper-Nickel Alloys

The principal copper-nickel alloys, with less than 50 per cent. of nickel, in commercial use are:

Nickel per cent.	Uses
2 to 3	Locomotive firebox tubes and stays.
20	Cupro-nickel strip: bullet envelopes.
25	Coinage.*
30	Condenser tubes.
40 to 45	Electrical resistances and thermo-couples, Constantan, Eureka, etc.

* Difficulties peculiar to this alloy are mentioned by W. A. C. Newman: "British Coinage," *Royal Institute of Chemistry, Lectures, Monographs and Reports*, 1953, No. 3.

Since copper and nickel form a continuous series of solid solutions (Fig. 23), all these alloys in the annealed condition have a similar microstructure. They are not subject to season cracking, but intercrystalline brittleness (shown in the microstructure by a thickening and darkening of the grain boundaries in the etched section) is sometimes developed in 80 : 20 cupro-nickel. This brittleness is usually considered to be associated with the precipitation of graphitic carbon, and on this account the percentage of carbon in cupro-nickel is kept as low as possible, usually below 0.04 per cent. The 80 : 20 type of alloy containing 1 per cent. of manganese and about 0.15 per cent. of silicon will undergo temper hardening with marked improvement in mechanical properties on reheating at 550° C. after quenching from 900° C.* The effect is due to the decreasing solubility of the compound Ni_2Si in cupro-nickel with fall of temperature. The saturated solid solution contains 0.6 per cent. of silicon at 900° C., 0.1 per cent. at 500° C. and probably less at atmospheric temperature. In the alloy containing 1 per cent. of manganese and 0.15 per cent. of silicon, hardened by the treatment described above, no precipitated particles are visible under the microscope, but visible precipitation of Ni_2Si occurs when the silicon content is higher.

The addition of 1.5 per cent. of iron or aluminium to the 70 : 30 copper-nickel alloy also gives rise to a temper-hardening material.

Condenser Tube Alloys

About 1921, condenser tubes were sometimes made of 80 : 20 cupro-nickel in the expectation that they would be an improvement on the 70 : 30 copper-zinc and the 70 : 29 : 1 copper-zinc-tin alloys previously used. Later, 70 : 30 was adopted as the standard composition of cupro-nickel condenser tubes, and they were found to be further improved by the addition of up to about 1 per cent. each of iron and manganese. Meanwhile, it had been found that the presence of 0.02 to 0.06 per cent. of arsenic served to inhibit dezincification in 70 : 30 brass, and that the presence of 2 per cent. of aluminium in α -brass led to a marked improvement in corrosion resistance. By 1939 the alternatives were 70 : 30 cupro-nickel with its rather high nickel content and aluminium-brass, though rapid pitting, particularly of aluminium-brass, occasionally occurred in polluted sea water. More recently, copper-nickel-iron alloys containing 5 or 10 per cent. of nickel and 1 to

* D. G. Jones, L. B. Pfeil, and W. T. Griffiths : "Nickel-Copper Alloys of High Elastic Limit," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1931 (2), vol. 46, p. 423.

2 per cent. of iron have been developed.* They also contain about 0.5 per cent. manganese and are deoxidized with phosphorus of which 0.03 to 0.04 per cent. remains in the alloy. They are very resistant to corrosion and can be temper-hardened. A precipitation of an iron-rich constituent is induced by reheating the quenched solid solution to 600° C. or 700° C. Micrographs illustrating the structure of these alloys are shown in Pl. 61C, D, E and 78A, B.

Copper-Nickel-Zinc Alloys. Nickel Silvers

Nickel silvers are classified mainly on their nickel content. In all cases the microstructure should be that of a uniform solid solution, but as diffusion of nickel is slow, the macrostructure may show indications of the original dendritic structure, which is very pronounced in the cast alloy. The structure will also reveal the presence of lead in globules or films if this metal has been added to improve machinability; but lead should not be present in material which has to be spun or drawn, as it diminishes the ductility of the alloy.

Nickel silver is subject to season cracking under similar conditions to the brasses, and, like them, is rendered immune by low-temperature annealing.

Practical Notes

Macro-examination of Copper Alloys

The preliminary examination of defective non-ferrous alloys should always include a macro-examination (Pl. 62 and 63).

In the examination of cast alloys for defects such as blow-holes, cavities, porosity and inclusions which arise from unsuitable casting conditions the macro-examination of as large an area as possible is essential. In addition, many defects in the wrought metal, such as blisters, spills and laminations, are traceable to imperfections in the ingot, and in the investigation of the causes of such defects a study of the macrostructure of ingots is of importance. Macro-examination is the most valuable means available for the examination of defective extruded alloys. A study of the macrostructure of billets at various stages of extrusion, and of the extruded rod produced from them, has revealed a large amount of information about the flow of metal in the extrusion process.

* G. L. Bailey: "Copper-nickel-iron Alloys Resistant to Sea Water Corrosion," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1951, vol. 79, p. 243.

COPPER ALLOYS

From small ingots and castings complete sections are prepared by sawing and, in the harder alloys, by grinding by an emery wheel with a copious supply of water or, in the very soft alloys, by shaping with a sharp tool. The sections are then rough-polished by the methods used for micro-sections, though the finish required is much less perfect than for micro-examination.

A longitudinal axial section of an ingot usually gives most information, but transverse sections below the head are useful if the ingot must not be destroyed. In castings cut up for special examination, sections through the risers and at heavy sections in the castings should be included. In alloys which have been worked the metal should be sectioned in such a way as to reveal deformation, flow structure, and grain size as completely as possible. In bar, rod and wire longitudinal axial sections are usually cut. Transverse sections will disclose cracks, seams and surface defects, and longitudinal tangential sections, formed by grinding flats on the surface, will reveal their extent.

Nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.2) may be used to reveal the structure of a machined or ground surface. A more carefully prepared surface may be etched for macroscopical examination by solutions of ammonia, ammonium persulphate or ferric chloride similar to, but stronger than, those used for micro-examination. The ferric chloride solution gives greater contrast between the different crystals and is useful for revealing the dendritic structure in α solid solutions. An ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate should preferably be used for brasses containing the β -phase. Good contrast, especially in alloys containing both α and β constituents, is also obtained by etching with an ammoniacal solution of copper ammonium chloride. This is prepared by adding strong ammonia to a 10 per cent. solution of copper ammonium chloride until the precipitate first formed is redissolved. With any of these reagents the specimen may be partly immersed in the solution contained in a dish and the surface flooded by rocking the dish; or the surface may be swabbed with a soft cotton rag dipped in the reagent. The specimen is then washed first in water, then in acetone and dried. If it contains cavities it may be left immersed in acetone for five minutes or more to allow water to diffuse out, and it is desirable to give a final washing with ether to promote rapid drying. The surface may be preserved by applying a thin clear lacquer.

Test for internal stress. The specimen (e.g. stamping, length of tube, rod, etc.) after being cleaned is immersed for thirty seconds

in a mixture of 40 volumes of nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.42) and 60 volumes of water at room temperature, and is then thoroughly washed in running water. It is transferred while still wet to a solution containing 1 gm. of mercurous nitrate crystals and 1 c.c. of nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.42) per 100 c.c. of distilled water, and allowed to remain for five minutes. On removal from the solution the brass is washed with water and acetone and allowed to dry untouched. Highly stressed brass will already show cracks, but if no cracks develop within twenty-four hours the brass may be regarded as free from internal stress likely to result in season cracking.

Micro-examination of Copper Alloys

Small specimens selected from suitable positions are polished by the methods adopted for copper (p. 157) if the alloy is very soft, or for some of the harder duplex alloys a satisfactory finish is obtained with alumina. Electrolytic polishing and etching under the conditions given on p. 13 for copper may be used for all copper alloys other than tin bronzes. The specimen may be etched by reducing the voltage from 1.8 to 0.8 in the same solution.

Specimens should be examined under the microscope before etching to detect oxides, inclusions, insoluble elements such as lead in brass. Any relief effects due to the presence of hard constituents will at the same time be observed. In some cases polish attack on a pad moistened with ammonia gives good results if practised with care.

Etching reagents suitable for almost all copper alloys are:

(1) A 10 per cent. aqueous solution of ammonium persulphate. This gives clear uniform etching of brass. The addition of 25 per cent. of 0.880 ammonia to the solution gives more rapid etching.

(2) An acid aqueous solution of ferric chloride. It is advisable to keep a stock solution containing:

Ferric chloride	10 gm.
Concentrated hydrochloric acid	30 c.c.
Water	120 c.c.

and to dilute with water as may be required. To etch nickel-rich alloys, solution of the full strength is required; for copper-rich α solutions, one part of this solution to two parts of water gives satisfactory results. Heycock and Neville used a very dilute solution containing $3\frac{1}{4}$ gm. of FeCl_3 and 25 c.c. HCl to 1,000 c.c. water.

The multiplicity of special brasses and bronzes and their re-

PLATES

62 - 68

Macrostructure of brass.

- A. Longitudinal section of part of a strip ingot of 70 : 30 brass, showing columnar crystals penetrating to the centre towards the lower end, and similar crystals enclosing equiaxial crystals higher up in the ingot.

Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate.

Actual size.

- B. Axial section of the remains of a cast 6-in. diameter billet of 60 : 40 brass from which rod has been extruded by the inverted process.*

The structure reveals the direction of flow of the metal. The very coarse crystallization at the end of the billet is due to grain growth following the slight deformation experienced in that region. In the forward part of the billet where deformation has been severe, recrystallization has occurred.

Etched with 40 per cent. nitric acid.

About half actual size.

- C. A similar axial section of an extruded rod and the remains of the billet from which it was being extruded by the inverted process.

Etched with 40 per cent. nitric acid.

About half actual size.

- D. Transverse section of part of a strip ingot of 70 : 30 brass showing the wedge formation of columnar crystals which grow out at right angles to the surface of the mould and meet on intersecting planes inclined at 45 degrees to the surface.

Etched with ammoniacal solution of ammonium persulphate.

Actual size

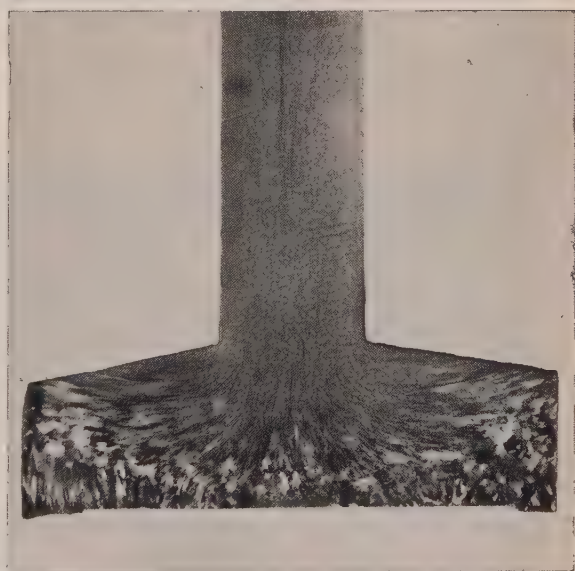
* R. Genders: "The Extrusion of Brass Rod by the Inverted Process," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1924 (2), vol. 32, p. 313



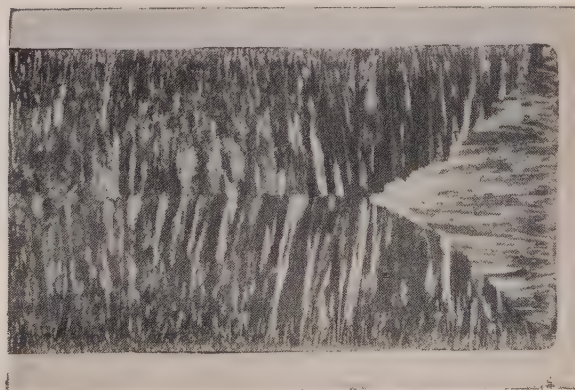
A



B



C



D

Macrostructure of copper alloys.

Repeatedly polished and etched with ferric chloride solution.

A and B. Structure of ingots cast by the Durville rotatory method under identical conditions of temperature into a mould with pre-heated refractory sides and a water-cooled copper base, illustrating the restriction of crystal growth by certain alloying additions. Two-thirds actual size.

A. Copper + 1 per cent. zinc.

B. Copper + 0.1 per cent. titanium.

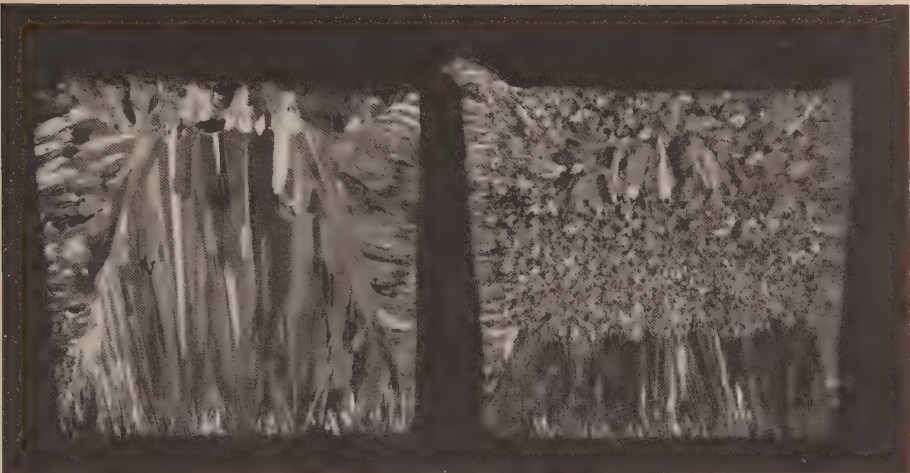
Pure copper cast under these conditions is completely dendritic. The effect of zinc, aluminium and vanadium in restricting crystal growth is very small; on the other hand that of titanium, tin, oxygen, sulphur, selenium, tellurium, etc., is considerable.

L. Northcott: "The Influence of Alloying Elements on the Crystallisation of Copper," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1938 (1), vol. 62, p. 101.

C. Macrostructure of a 20 lb. ingot of 2 per cent. aluminium copper-aluminium alloy cast in a similar way to the above. × 3.

The base of the ingot was on the right of the photograph, the part shown uppermost being a side which was in contact with the hot refractory wall. The columnar crystals growing from the chilled base of the ingot were oriented so that one of the cube faces of the lattice was parallel to the direction of growth.

L. Northcott and D. E. Thomas: "Dendritic Structures," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1939 (2), vol. 65, p. 205.



A

B



C

Nickel alloys.

- A. Graphitic nickel (carbon about 2.0 per cent.) showing flake graphite.

Unetched.

× 100.

- B. Graphitic nickel (carbon about 2.0 per cent.) showing spheroidal graphite.

Unetched.

× 100.

Graphite imparts good anti-galling properties to nickel without seriously affecting its corrosion resistance. Graphitic nickel is used for components such as valve guides, which are subject to sliding wear and corrosion. Spheroidal graphite gives the same advantages of higher strength and ductility in this alloy as it does in cast iron.

There is a resemblance between the appearance and mode of formation of graphite in cast iron and in the nickel-carbon alloys.

H. Morrogh and W. J. Williams: "Graphitic Formation in Cast Irons and in Nickel-Carbon and Cobalt-Carbon Alloys," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1947 (1), vol. 155, p. 321.

- C. "Inconel" (nickel with chromium 13, iron 6.5 per cent.) rolled and annealed. Electrolytically etched in 5 per cent. sulphuric acid solution.

× 100.

This micrograph is typical of the annealed or solution-treated structure of a wide range of high-nickel alloys which resist oxidation at elevated temperatures and have good high-temperature mechanical properties.

- D. "Nimonic 80" (nickel with chromium 20, titanium 2.5 and aluminium 1.5 per cent.) solution-treated by water quenching from 1100° C., showing a uniform solid solution.

- E. "Nimonic 80," correctly aged.

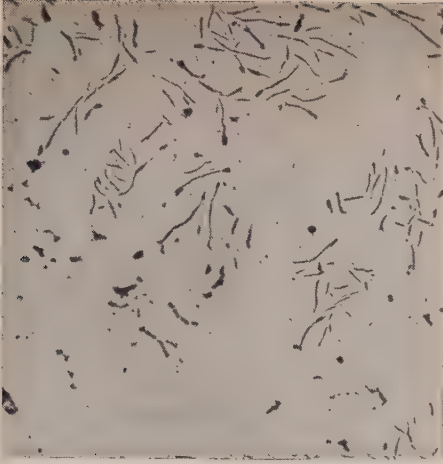
- F. "Nimonic 80," over-aged.

D, E and F. Etched in boiling 5 per cent. sulphuric acid. Magnification 500 diameters.

Continual improvement in the Nimonic series of alloys has been achieved by modification of composition (including, for example, the addition of cobalt) and close control of the appropriate heat treatment. This progress is reflected by the following figures, which give the temperatures at which fracture might be expected to occur in 100 hours under a stress of 5 tons per sq. in.:

Nimonic 80A	.	.	.	.	.	870° C.
" 90	.	.	.	.	.	900° C.
" 90	.	.	.	.	.	925° C.
" 100	.	.	.	.	.	950° C.

(Photomicrographs supplied by the Mond Nickel Company.)



A



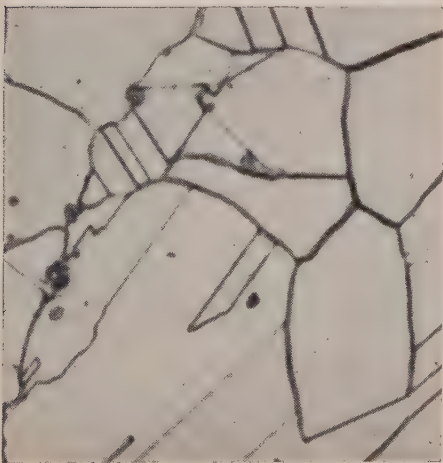
B



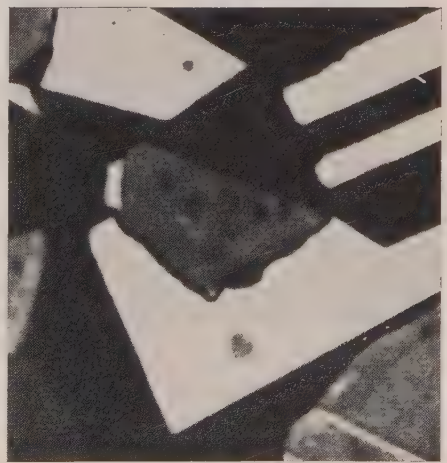
C



D



E



F

High permeability magnetic alloy strip (nickel 77, iron 14, copper 5, molybdenum 4 per cent.)
Magnification 400 diameters.

A and C. Etched in a mixture of nine parts (by volume) of nitric acid and one part of 10 per cent. phosphoric acid.

B and D. Thermally etched in hydrogen at 1050° C.

A. Material from sintered powder compact, internal structure.

B. Material from sintered powder compact, surface structure.

C. Material from commercial cast alloy, internal structure.

D. Material from commercial cast alloy, surface structure.

The powder metal product has properties superior to those of the cast alloy. The surface layer of the high-permeability strip made from a sintered compact is not affected by annealing even when moisture is present in the annealing atmosphere, but annealing of the strip made from the cast alloy may give rise to a layer of fine grain material having a very detrimental effect on the permeability of the thin strip.

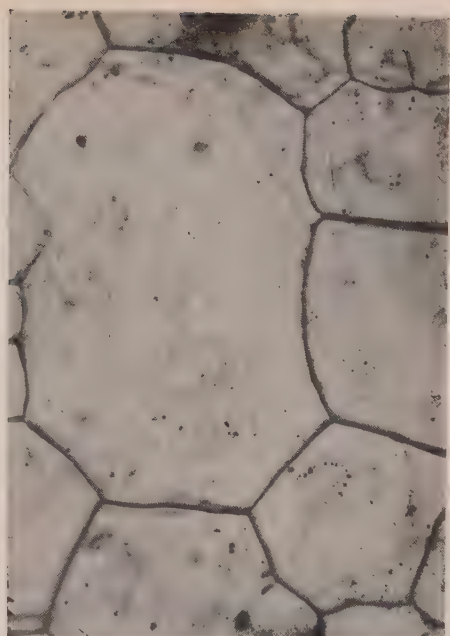
The inclusions in the cast alloy are derived from the deoxidants generally used, e.g. silicon and magnesium, and the structural alteration of the surface is probably due to sub-surface oxidation of these elements.

E. V. Walker, D. K. Worn, and R. E. S. Walters: "Application of Powder Metallurgy to the Production of High-Permeability Magnetic Alloy Strip," *Iron and Steel Institute, Special Report No. 58*, 1956, p. 204.

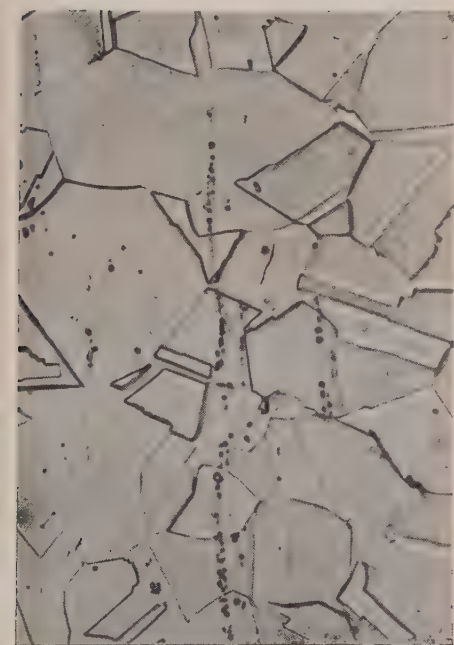
Photomicrographs supplied by the Mond Nickel Company.)



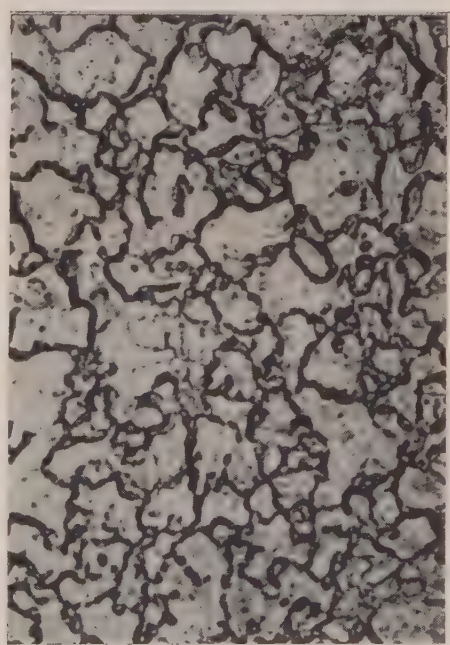
A



B



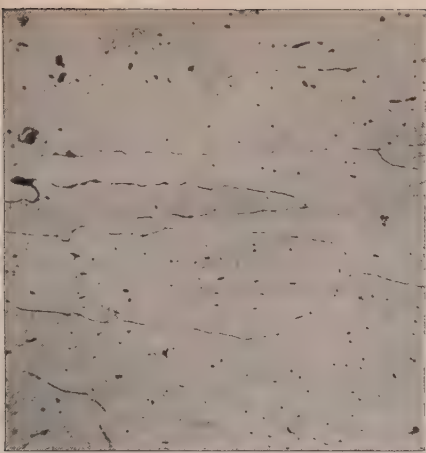
C



D

Magnification 100 diameters.

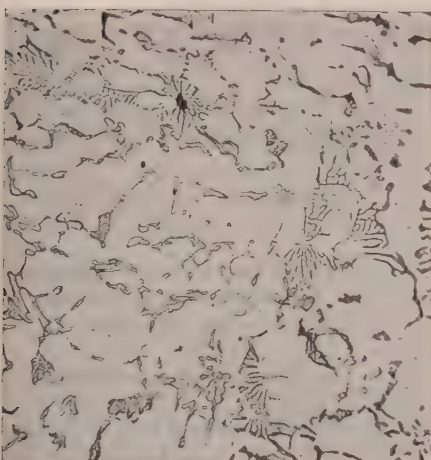
- A. Pure cast aluminium (over 99·7 per cent.) containing iron 0·06 per cent., silicon 0·16 per cent.
Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water
- B. Aluminium-copper alloy die-casting (copper 8 per cent.) showing small grains of aluminium surrounded by the aluminium- CuAl_2 eutectic (dark).
Etched with 10 per cent. sodium hydroxide in water.
- C. Aluminium-copper-nickel alloy, as cast (copper 4·1 per cent., nickel 2·2 per cent.), showing aluminium with a eutectic structure formed by aluminium, CuAl_2 and NiAl_3 .
Polished in relief with neutralized "Silvo" metal polish.
Unetched.
- D. Aluminium-nickel alloy, as cast (nickel 4·3 per cent.), showing aluminium and the aluminium- NiAl_3 eutectic. The feathery appearance is characteristic of this eutectic. The dark needles are probably FeAl_3 .
Etched with 1 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 50 per cent. nitric acid in water.
- E. Aluminium-silicon alloy, large sand-casting (silicon 10·8 per cent.). White dendritic crystals of aluminium embedded in dark groundmass of the aluminium-silicon eutectic, the fine granular appearance of which indicates "modification" of the alloy.
Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water.
- F. Aluminium-silicon alloy die-casting (silicon 13 per cent.) Modified structure.
Small grains of aluminium (light) embedded in aluminium-silicon eutectic (dark) which shows a fine granular structure. The dark needles are the iron-aluminium compound FeAl_3 .
Etched with 20 per cent. sulphuric acid at 70° C.



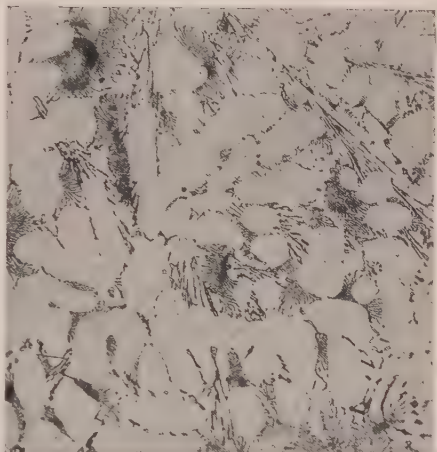
A



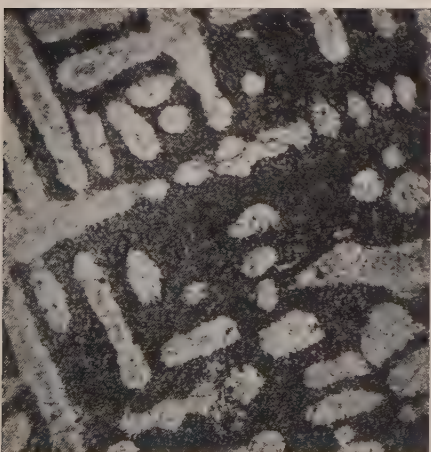
B



C



D



E



F

- A. Aluminium-silicon alloy chill-casting (silicon 11.0 per cent., iron 1.3 per cent.). Unmodified structure.

The centre of the casting showed the unmodified structure consisting of aluminium in which the silicon has separated in the form of relatively large plates and needles.

Unetched.

× 500.

- B. The same alloy. Modified structure near the surface of the casting.

The edges of the chill-casting showed the modified structure consisting of dendritic grains of aluminium (light) set in a fine granular eutectic of aluminium and silicon. The iron content of this alloy is high, a feature which is likely to cause brittleness. The iron occurs in two forms, dark needles of FeAl_3 , fairly uniformly distributed, and occasional grey plates of a silicon-rich iron-aluminium-silicon constituent. One of these inclusions is shown in the field selected. The typical structure, however, is represented by the lower part of the photomicrograph.

Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water.

× 500.

- C. Cast aluminium-zinc alloy containing 20 per cent. of zinc, showing dendrites of the α -solid solution relatively poor in zinc surrounded by α solution richer in zinc, in which the impurities and grain boundaries occur.

Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water.

× 100.

- D. Hot-rolled commercial aluminium-zinc alloy, containing 15 per cent. of zinc and showing polyhedral grains of solid solution with impurities, chiefly FeAl_3 (black) in the form of globules.

Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water. × 100.

- E. Hot-rolled Duralumin sheet (20 S.W.G.) to B.S.S. 5L3 (approximate composition: copper 4.0, manganese 0.6, iron 0.5, magnesium 0.5, silicon 0.3 per cent.).

The groundmass is a solid solution, the small dark particles are probably FeAl_3 or a complex constituent containing iron, and the larger particles undissolved CuAl_2 or MnAl_3 .

Etched with 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water. × 100.

- F. Sand-cast magnesium alloy ("elektron" containing aluminium 4, zinc 3, manganese and copper, each about 0.3, and magnesium 92 per cent.).

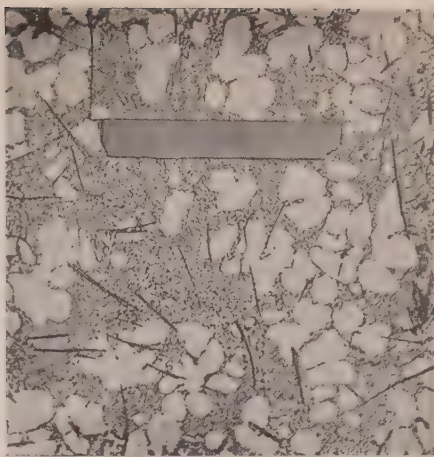
Polyhedral crystals of solid solution showing coring, and some undissolved constituents (possibly MgZn or Mg_2Cu at the grain boundaries.

Etched with 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 100.



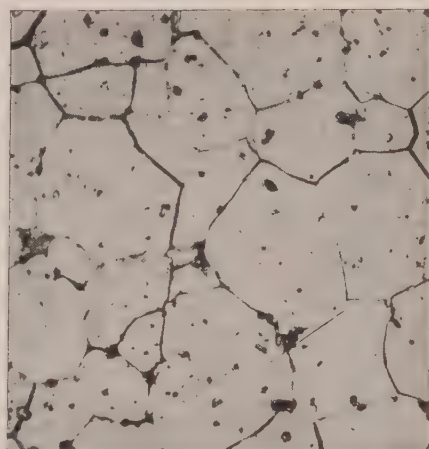
A



B



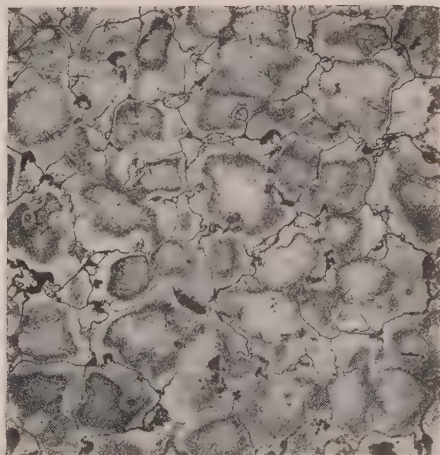
C



D



E



F

Effect of heat treatment on chill cast bars of aluminium-10 per cent. magnesium alloy.

Etched for thirty seconds in 12.5 per cent. sodium hydroxide. Magnification 250 diameters.

- A. As cast, showing Mg_2Al_3 in the aluminium-magnesium solid solution. The dark particles are due to the presence of iron and silicon (about 0.1 per cent. of each), and appear also in the unetched specimen.
- B. After the normal solution treatment of sixteen hours at 435° C. followed by an oil quench. Practically all the Mg_2Al_3 has been taken into solid solution.
- C. After solution treatment at too low a temperature, sixteen hours at 375° C., followed by a quench. Some of the Mg_2Al_3 remains out of solution.
- D. The alloy has been allowed to cool slowly after solution treatment at the normal temperature. Precipitation of Mg_2Al_3 has occurred.

Mechanical properties associated with the structures illustrated

	0.1 per cent. Proof stress. Tons per sq. in.	Tensile strength. Tons per sq. in.	Elongation per cent.
A	9.3	15.2	2.5
B	11.0	25.3	33.2
C	10.6	21.3	12.8
D	10.8	25.3	29.0

Duralumin sheet.

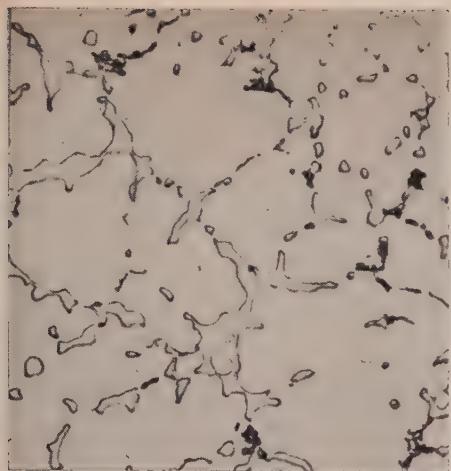
Copper 4.33, magnesium 0.96, silicon 0.93, manganese 0.84 and iron 0.44 per cent.

Etched for five seconds in a solution of 25 per cent. nitric acid and 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid in water. Magnification 500 diameters.

- E. Duralumin sheet which has been correctly solution treated at a temperature below the solidus and shows no signs of melting out.

0.1 per cent. Proof stress	16.8 tons per sq. in.
Tensile strength	31.2 " "
Elongation	19.0 per cent.
- F. Structure of duralumin sheet which had been overheated above the solidus and showed definite indications of melting out. Completely brittle.

(Photomicrographs supplied by the Research Laboratories of the British Aluminium Company Ltd.)



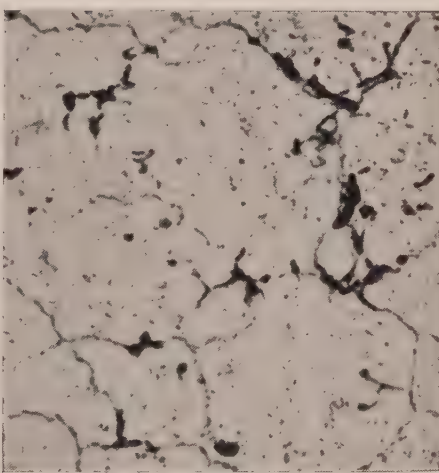
A



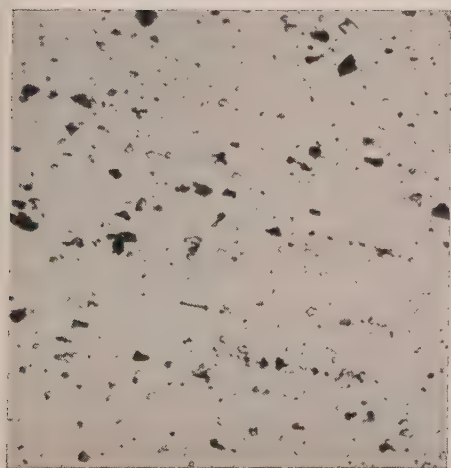
B



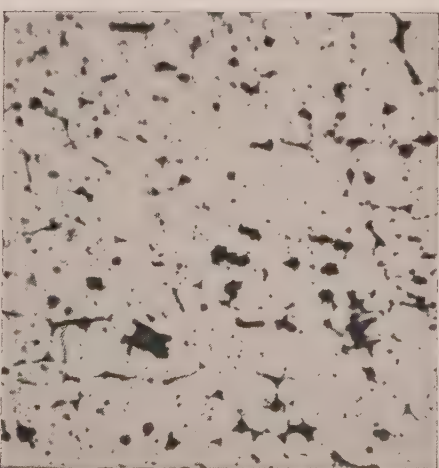
C



D



E



F

COPPER ALLOYS

sistance to attack, especially that of the high-nickel alloys, have led to the use of other reagents, including the two types mentioned below.

A mixture of nitric and acetic acids is useful for etching pure nickel and alloys high in nickel. The solution contains:

50 c.c. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.42).
25 c.c. glacial acetic acid.
25 c.c. water.

Care is required in mixing the solution: the acetic acid should be added slowly, with constant stirring, to the diluted nitric acid.

Various chromic acid solutions give good results with complex brasses, bronzes and nickel alloys. They give a clean uniform etch, and if β is present the alloy may subsequently be etched in ferric chloride solution to give better contrast. Such solutions are: (1) saturated aqueous solution of CrO_3 or (2) 100 c.c. saturated solution $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ + 10 c.c. concentrated sulphuric acid (sp. gr. 1.84). To each of these solutions it is desirable to add 1 drop of concentrated hydrochloric acid per 25 c.c. at the time of use. Another variation of the chromic acid reagent is given under Pl. 61E.

Heat tinting is useful for some bronzes, especially phosphor-bronzes.

Electrolytic etching may conveniently be used as a sequel to electrolytic polishing. As a general method of etching, however, it possesses no advantages over the use of ordinary reagents.

CHAPTER XIV

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF NICKEL WITH COPPER, IRON AND CHROMIUM

NICKEL is used in some countries as a coinage metal. It is also employed in radio engineering and as a catalyst in chemical industry; but the main application of the pure metal is in the field of electrodeposition, as bright nickel plating, as an undercoat for chromium deposits or as a thick coating for building up worn or overmachined steel parts. Nickel for components subject to frictional wear may contain 2 per cent. or more of carbon as graphite (Pl. 64A, B). Carbon-free nickel usually contains some nickel-nickel oxide eutectic containing 1.1 per cent. NiO. Steels and alloys containing less than 50 per cent. of nickel have already been referred to, but there is a large number of valuable alloys containing more than 50 per cent. of nickel. In many of these alloys brittleness due to sulphide films is guarded against by the addition of a small amount of magnesium which forms globules of magnesium sulphide.

Nickel-Copper Alloys

The most important nickel-copper alloys with over 50 per cent. of nickel are Monel metal (or the similar alloy Corronil) and its derivatives. Monel metal contains about 67 per cent. of nickel, 28 per cent. of copper and appreciable amounts of iron and manganese. It is remarkable for its good mechanical properties and high resistance to corrosion. As cast, it has a dendritic structure (Pl. 18A); when worked and annealed it consists of a single solid solution (Pl. 18c). Its mechanical properties can be improved by cold working, but it cannot be hardened by heat treatment. The addition of about 3 per cent. of aluminium gives rise to a temper-hardening alloy, K Monel, which, when quenched from 800° C. and tempered at 580° C., combines high tensile strength with good corrosion resistance.

Nickel-Iron Alloys

The alloy containing 36 per cent. of nickel has almost zero thermal coefficient of expansion; from 39 to 56 per cent. of nickel

NICKEL ALLOYS

there exists a series of alloys showing coefficients of expansion varying from that of a low-expansion glass to that of a medium-carbon steel. From these are selected alloys suitable for glass to metal seals. In the worked and annealed condition they are all uniform solid solutions. Alloys having very high magnetic permeability at low field strengths, such as Permalloy and Mumetal, all contain upwards of 65 per cent. of nickel. This type of material has the structure of a uniform solid solution (Pl. 65c). The strip produced from the commercial cast alloy frequently has a sub-surface zone containing highly dispersed inclusions. This, on annealing, gives rise to a layer of fine grain size, less than 0.002 in. deep, which, however, lowers the permeability of the strip. There are indications that strip from material made by powder metallurgy technique is free from this defect (Pl. 65A, B).

Nickel-Chromium Alloys

The most important alloys of this group are modifications of the 80 : 20 nickel-chromium alloy which is notable for both strength and resistance to oxidation at high temperatures. Electrical heating elements, for which resistance to oxidation is of primary importance when sulphur attack is not likely to occur, contain nickel 65-75, chromium 15-20 and iron 5-20 per cent., the iron being derived from ferrochromium used in place of chromium metal in the production of the alloys, all of which are single solid solutions. To meet particular requirements, additions of a few per cent. of tungsten or titanium are often made, or of much smaller amounts of calcium, cerium or zirconium. The life of some nickel-chromium resistance wire can be increased tenfold by the addition of 0.1 per cent. of cerium. Inconel (Pl. 64c), which contains nickel and chromium in the ratio 80 : 20 with about 6 per cent. of iron, is also a solid solution, but the addition of other elements converts it into the temper-hardening alloys Inconel X and Inconel W.

Modifications of greater significance have been made to the 80 : 20 nickel-chromium alloy by the addition of 2 to 3 per cent. of titanium to improve the creep resistance, together with 1 to 2 per cent. of aluminium to strengthen the oxide film which serves as some protection against scaling. These changes, together with other modifications of composition and heat treatment, produced the Nimonic series of alloys. The presence of titanium confers temper-hardening properties. The slowly cooled alloy shows a

titanium-bearing constituent in a groundmass of solid solution. After solution treatment (water quenching from 1100°C.) the alloy consists of uniform grains of solid solution (Pl. 64D), and after an ageing treatment at 700°C. , which produces a great increase in hardness, the appearance is unchanged except that the grain boundaries are more pronounced (Pl. 64E). Overageing results in more rapid etching giving marked contrast between the grains (Pl. 64F). The precipitated particles are too fine to be resolved by the optical microscope. Prolonged heating at higher temperatures is required to produce resolvable particles.

Exposure to products of combustion which are alternately carburizing and oxidizing, or to sulphur-bearing gases at high temperatures, may produce intercrystalline cracking in nickel-chromium alloys. When failure occurs the fracture has a greenish appearance, from which the defect gets the name "green rot." A carburizing atmosphere converts some of the chromium into carbide so the surface is impoverished in chromium and becomes more susceptible to attack by oxygen which penetrates the grain boundaries, opening up a network of cracks. The intergranular attack of heat-resisting materials by sulphur and by fuel ash is a serious problem, but nickel-rich alloys are less susceptible to attack than are some steels.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The usual methods of polishing with alumina or diamond dust may be employed. As a very small depth is removed from the surface by etching, care should be taken to avoid undue deformation of the surface and the specimen should be alternately polished and etched several times to remove the flowed surface layer.

Nickel and nickel-rich alloys may be electrolytically polished in the perchloric acid-acetic anhydride solution used for steel (p. 124), but at a somewhat higher current density.

Etching

Pure nickel may be etched with the nitric acid-acetic acid solution described on p. 177. The same solution, diluted with up to four times its volume of water, may be used for electrolytic etching to show the grain boundaries of nickel and nickel-rich solid solutions. Electrolytic etching with 5 per cent. sulphuric acid in water also gives good results.

NICKEL ALLOYS

Nickel-copper alloys may be etched with acid ferric chloride solution. This is suitable for showing the dendritic structure of cast alloys but gives contrast to the grains of the uniform solid solution. A cleaner etch is obtained with a 2 : 1 : 1 mixture of nitric acid, glacial acetic acid and water, as used for pure nickel.

Nickel-iron alloys may be etched with a freshly-made solution of 10 gm. ammonium persulphate and 10 c.c. concentrated hydrochloric acid in 100 c.c. water. A 1 : 2 : 2 mixture of nitric acid, hydrochloric acid and glycerol (Vilella's reagent) may also be used on a specimen that has been warmed by immersion in hot water.

Nickel-chromium alloys may be etched in boiling 5 per cent. solution of sulphuric acid in water. Removal of the protective surface film is best achieved by giving the specimen a final polish on a pad fed with magnesia and transferring it direct to the etching solution without intermediate washing. Electrolytic etching in a strong solution of oxalic acid or in Vilella's reagent is a rapid method of showing grain size.

In the scale which may be formed on nickel-chromium alloys the sulphide appears grey while the oxide is black.

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF
ALLOYS OF ALUMINIUM

SOME reference has already been made to the difficulties encountered in the preparation of aluminium and its alloys for microscopical examination. These difficulties retarded progress in the metallography of aluminium alloys in the early days of their development, but now, both as regards technique in microscopical examination and the completeness of the interpretation of their constitution, the aluminium alloys occupy a foremost place among the non-ferrous metallic materials.

Though aluminium of a high degree of purity (99.995 per cent.) can be produced, commercial aluminium usually contains about 99 per cent. of aluminium, the chief impurities being silicon and iron. The iron usually occurs as a compound FeAl_3 , which is almost insoluble in aluminium, with which it forms a eutectic containing about 2 per cent. of iron. The silicon is partly in solid solution, but may also be visible under the microscope as crystals of free silicon, or as a complex constituent containing aluminium, silicon and iron, two such constituents having been identified in specimens of commercial aluminium. Cast aluminium (unless very pure—Pl. 66A) shows a dendritic structure, the less pure portion which solidifies last being forced to the grain boundaries. The rolled and annealed metal shows equiaxial grains in which particles of FeAl_3 and of a complex iron-silicon-aluminium solid solution are embedded.

Though valuable on account of its resistance to corrosion and electrical properties, aluminium finds most of its practical applications in the form of its alloys, which exhibit greater strength than the pure metal while retaining the advantages of low specific gravity.

All the commercially important aluminium alloys on solidification form dendritic crystals of aluminium-rich solid solutions. The material of lower melting point is entrapped between the primary crystals, the dendritic character of which may not be very apparent when the alloy consists of 95 per cent. or more of aluminium. This lack of uniformity of composition is eliminated in

ALUMINIUM ALLOYS

the wrought alloys, many of which consist of a single solid solution (with insoluble impurities such as FeAl_3) at the temperatures at which they are worked. Most of the aluminium solid solutions which are stable at high temperatures may by quenching be preserved in the supersaturated condition at atmospheric temperature, and subsequent ageing or tempering induces breakdown of the supersaturated solid solution, accompanied by increase in hardness.

Cast Alloys of Aluminium

Aluminium-Copper Alloys

The aluminium-copper alloys show a eutectic at 32 per cent. copper. Aluminium will retain as much as 5 per cent. of copper in

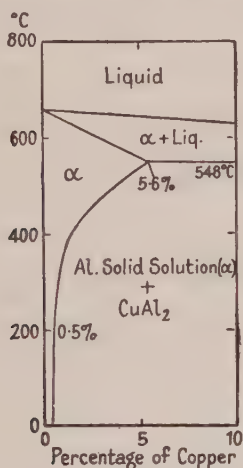


FIG. 45. Constitutional Diagram indicating Solid Solubility of Copper in Aluminium.

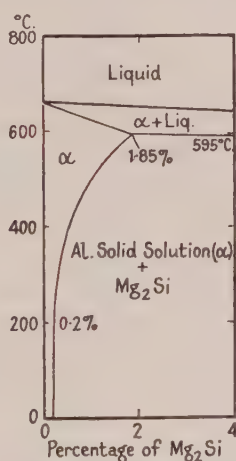


FIG. 46. Constitutional Diagram indicating Solid Solubility of Magnesium Silicide in Aluminium.

solid solution at 500°C ., but only 0.5 per cent. at ordinary temperatures (diagram, Fig. 45); but, on account of the large interval between liquidus and solidus and the fact that at temperatures just below the melting point diffusion is slow, equilibrium is very rarely attained. The result is that alloys with only 2 per cent. of copper frequently show the CuAl_2 -aluminium eutectic. With higher copper content, such as the 8 or 12 per cent. alloys employed commercially, the cast alloys show a well-marked dendritic structure.

The aluminium-copper alloys are generally used in the cast condition, and those containing between 2 and 5 per cent. of

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

copper may be improved by heat treatment consisting of quenching from 500°C . (solution-treatment), followed by ageing at atmospheric temperature or by heating at a temperature not exceeding 200°C . By this means precipitation of CuAl_2 is effected in particles which may be too fine to be recognized microscopically, while the tensile strength is raised from 12 to over 20 tons per sq. in., and the elongation, though reduced, remains at a high figure. Ageing at atmospheric temperature is slow, and the process is frequently hastened by heating at 120°C . to 150°C . for one or two days. A higher temperature which brings about coalescence of the CuAl_2 into visible particles is less efficient. The

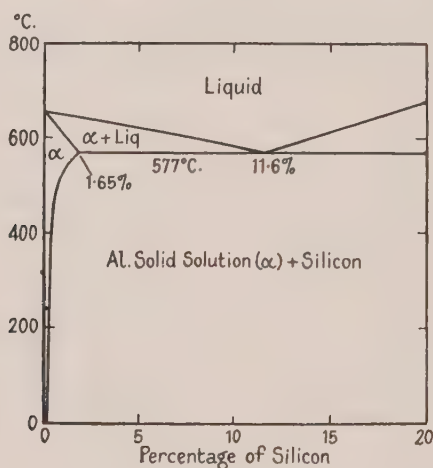


FIG. 47. Constitutional Diagram of Aluminium-Silicon Alloys.

aluminium-copper alloys intended for heat treatment frequently contain silicon in amounts up to 3 per cent.

An important improvement in the properties of the 4 per cent. copper alloy is obtained by the addition of about 2 per cent. of nickel and $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of magnesium with up to about 0.5 per cent. each of iron and silicon. A small amount of titanium (under 0.2 per cent.) may also be present. Solution treatment and ageing are necessary to obtain the best properties. This alloy ("Y"-alloy) retains considerable strength at raised temperatures and is therefore used for castings subject to high-temperature service. It is also used as forgings (see p. 188).

Aluminium-Silicon Alloys

The aluminium-silicon alloys show a eutectic containing 11.6 per cent. of silicon (Fig. 47), but alloys containing as much as 14

ALUMINIUM ALLOYS

per cent. of silicon can be made to solidify without separation of primary silicon. This effect can be produced either by rapid cooling, as in chill-castings of small dimensions, or by certain agents known as "modifiers," of which the most important is sodium, only a trace of which should enter the metal. The effect is probably due to under-cooling, which results in an apparent shift of the eutectic composition to a higher silicon content. The most important feature of the modification process is the refinement of the structure of the aluminium-silicon eutectic, brought about by the rapid formation of nuclei resulting from under-cooling or the action of the modifying agent or both (Pl. 66E, F and 67A, B).

A marked improvement in mechanical properties accompanies the change of structure produced by modification which is applied commercially to alloys containing 10 to 13 per cent. of silicon. Their tensile strength is raised from 8 to about 13 tons per sq. in. and elongation from 5 to over 15 per cent.

Aluminium-Magnesium Alloys

Alloys with 3 to 6 per cent. of magnesium are used as sand or die castings without further heat treatment. These alloys are also widely used in the wrought form. The 10 per cent. magnesium alloy is suitable for use where corrosion resistance is of special importance, as under marine conditions. The castings are given a solution treatment at 435°C . Above 400°C . the magnesium, which occurs as Mg_2Al_3 , is in solid solution, but this compound separates on cooling slowly (Pl. 68).

Aluminium-Zinc Alloys

The aluminium-rich alloys of industrial importance have a long freezing range, but down to 200°C ., or lower, consist of a single solid solution (Fig. 48), and the rolled and annealed 15 per cent. zinc alloy presents a uniform appearance of polygonal grains (Pl. 67D). The chill-cast metal, however, shows pronounced coring (Pl. 67C). There is little commercial use for the binary aluminium-zinc alloys which become brittle when 15 per cent. of zinc is exceeded. The best known of the ternary alloys is that containing 12 per cent. of zinc and 3 per cent. of copper, which shows CuAl_2 embedded in the aluminium-zinc solid solution.

Wrought Alloys of Aluminium

The wrought alloys of aluminium are dependent for their good mechanical properties on the effect of cold-work, or of heat treat-

ment, or on the combined action of the two produced by cold-working the quenched alloy which is subsequently allowed to age-harden.

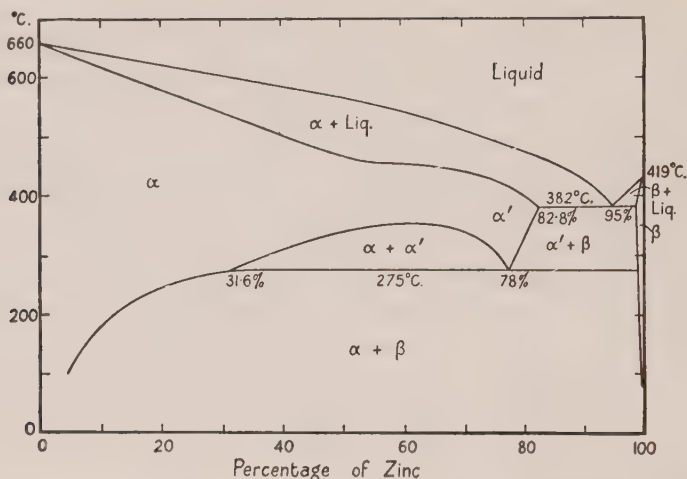


FIG. 48. Constitutional Diagram of the Aluminium-Zinc-Alloys.

Aluminium-Manganese Alloys

Alloys containing 1.0 to 1.5 per cent. of manganese in solid solution are appreciably stronger than aluminium without loss of corrosion-resistance. They are not heat treated but are used as extruded sections or sheet.

Aluminium-Magnesium Alloys

Alloys containing up to 1 per cent. magnesium with 0.5 to 2.0 per cent. of silicon have been found useful for difficult stampings on account of their softness at high temperatures. They may also be cold-stamped in the quenched condition, and subsequently acquire very good properties by precipitation of Mg_2Si on ageing.

Alloys with 2 to $3\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of magnesium are used as extruded sections or as rolled or annealed sheet. When the magnesium content reaches 5 per cent., the alloy becomes more difficult to forge or roll, and is dependent on cold-working for any variation in its mechanical properties. The tensile strength of alloys containing 7 per cent. of magnesium can in this way be varied from 20 to 30 tons per sq. in., with a corresponding fall in elongation from 20 to 5 per cent. Such alloys (usually containing

ALUMINIUM ALLOYS

about 0.5 per cent. of manganese) have a good resistance to atmospheric corrosion and to attack by sea-water.

Aluminium-Copper Alloys

In the wrought alloys copper is rarely allowed to exceed 4.5 per cent. They may contain in addition up to 2 per cent. of silicon and possibly 1 per cent. of manganese. The aluminium-5 per cent. copper solid solution is capable of dissolving 1.5 per cent. of silicon at the eutectic temperature. Manganese will also pass into solid solution. The mechanical properties of these alloys are improved by a heat treatment similar to that applied to the cast alloys of copper and aluminium.

Complex Alloys containing Magnesium and Silicon

The most widely used wrought alloys containing copper are those containing magnesium and silicon as well as manganese or nickel, the most important types being Duralumin, "Y"-alloy and the "R.R."-alloys. The improvement produced by heat treatment in these alloys depends to some degree on the presence of magnesium silicide.

Duralumin (Pl. 67E) contains approximately 4 per cent. of copper and 0.5 per cent. each of manganese, magnesium and silicon. If quenched from 470° C. to 490° C. the alloy is softened, but it progressively hardens on keeping at atmospheric temperature. The age-hardening is almost complete in four days. If the alloy age-hardened at room temperature is reheated for twenty hours at temperatures up to 125° C. some softening occurs, but after heating at higher temperatures, for example, 150° C. to 175° C. (or still higher for shorter times), maximum hardness is attained. The hardening is due to the possibility of precipitation of both CuAl_2 and Mg_2Si from solid solution (Figs. 45, 46); there is, however, no change in the microstructure on ageing. In the simplest terms it may be considered that the hardening at room temperature is due to precipitation of ultra-microscopic particles of Mg_2Si and the further hardening at raised temperatures to a similar precipitation of CuAl_2 ; but precipitation even on an ultra-microscopic scale is preceded by the formation of nuclei as a result of the diffusion of atoms to the planes at which precipitation will subsequently occur and this nucleus-formation is in itself sufficient to cause lattice distortion and hardening.*

* M. L. V. Gayler: "Age Hardening," *Institute of Metals Monograph and Report Series, No. 5* (Symposium on Internal Stress), 1948, p. 255.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

In the more recently developed alloy, Super-duralumin, the copper is increased to 4.5 per cent. and the silicon to 1.2 per cent. To bring out the best properties of this alloy a tempering or "artificial ageing" treatment at 175° C. is essential.

Under certain conditions of use (as, for example, exposure to sea-water), duralumin and some alloys of similar composition develop a serious type of intercrystalline corrosion, visible under the microscope as intercrystalline cracking, with few external signs of corrosive attack.* The defect is analogous, on the one hand, to season cracking of brass because it is accelerated, even if not initiated, by stress in the metal, and on the other hand to weld decay in austenitic nickel-chromium steels because it has been proved that conditions at the crystal boundaries are very important. A relatively high quenching temperature and a rapid rate of cooling through the range of temperature in which precipitation of CuAl_2 and of Mg_2Si would occur freely on slow cooling are found to confer increased resistance to intercrystalline corrosion.

"Y"-alloy differs from duralumin in containing more magnesium (1.5 per cent.) and 2 per cent. of nickel instead of manganese. Its heat treatment is similar to that of duralumin, and consists of heating at 510° C. to 520° C. for three-quarters of an hour, quenching in boiling water and allowing to age for five days. The hardening is associated with the precipitation of Mg_2Si and of the copper-nickel-aluminium constituent which replaces CuAl_2 . The properties of "Y"-alloy are similar to those of duralumin at atmospheric temperature, but are superior at raised temperatures. Unlike duralumin, it has excellent properties in the condition as cast and heat-treated (quenched and aged). Castings require a longer preliminary heating (about six hours at 530° C.) before quenching, than the wrought alloy.

The "R.R"-alloys differ from "Y"-alloy in containing less copper, rather less nickel, but more iron (1 to 1½ per cent.) and silicon (0.5 to 1.5 per cent.). Titanium is used as a deoxidizer. These alloys are solution-treated and artificially aged. Like "Y"-alloy they are specially suitable for high temperature applications.

Practical Notes

Macro-examination

The section should be machined to give a smooth surface and ground on coarse and fine emery papers which may, if desired,

* A. J. Sidery, K. J. Lewis and H. Sutton, "Intercrystalline Corrosion of Duralumin," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1932 (1), vol. xlviii, p. 165; K. L. Meissner, "The Effect of Artificial Ageing upon the Resistance of Super-Duralumin to Corrosion by Sea Water," *ibid.*, 1931 (1), vol. 45, p. 187.

ALUMINIUM ALLOYS

be mounted on power-driven discs and should be soaked in paraffin. Sand-cast specimens of large grain size do not need such careful preparation as those showing a finer structure.

The surface must be freed from grease by cleaning with benzene or carbon tetrachloride and the specimen, previously warmed by immersion in hot water, may then be etched by swabbing with a 20 per cent. aqueous solution of hydrofluoric acid. When etching is complete the specimen is washed in water, then in acetone, and dried.

A more vigorous attack, obtained without warming the specimen, is produced by the following solution (C. M. Tucker):

45 c.c. hydrochloric acid (sp. gr. 1.18)

15 c.c. hydrofluoric acid (sp. gr. 1.15)

15 c.c. nitric acid (sp. gr. 1.42)

25 c.c. water.

Hume-Rothery's reagent, developed for use with silicon-aluminium alloys but suitable also for other aluminium alloys, consists of an aqueous solution of cupric chloride containing 150 gm. per litre. The specimen is immersed for five to ten seconds, removed from the solution, and the surface freed from copper by brushing under water. The specimen is then re-immersed and the process repeated until the desired depth of etching is produced. If copper adheres strongly to the surface it can be removed by dipping the specimen in 50 per cent. nitric acid. A considerable brightening of the appearance can be obtained after the final treatment with cupric chloride by dipping the alloy into this solution or into a saturated solution of chromic acid in water.

Ink prints, made in the same way as from steel specimens, may be used to record all cavities, except very fine pinholes and cracks, present in etched sections from castings (Hanson), but cannot be used to reproduce the structure.

Polishing

The finer emery papers employed should be sheets which, though not actually worn out, have had some use, so that the loose and coarser particles have been removed. They should be waxed by the application of a strong solution of white wax in benzene which is allowed to dry off; or they may merely be soaked in paraffin.

Rubbing of the specimen on all grades of emery should be gentle and light. After leaving the last emery paper (an old piece

of oo), the surface of the specimen should appear clear and bright, with no suggestion of a dark patina or film.

Polishing, or removal of fine emery scratches, may be most quickly effected on a rotating pad impregnated with one of the commercial liquid metal polishes; relief polish is obtained, accompanied by some chemical attack, so that micro-constituents are visible under the microscope; but the appearance varies with polishing conditions, such as speed, pressure, and time taken, and may be deceptive.

This relief polishing may be regarded as a means of quickly removing scratches, to be followed by a final polish on a pad on the rotating wheel impregnated with a mixture of equal parts of powdered ammonium alum and heavy magnesia. The ammonium alum tends to prevent the formation of a patina on the specimen. A fairly high speed should be used, with a plentiful supply of water. A smooth surface, free from relief polish or chemical attack, should be obtainable in a comparatively short time. The precautions mentioned on p. 9 should be observed in the use of magnesia.

An alternative method of polishing aluminium has frequently been used with success. The specimen is prepared in the usual manner, first on waxed emery papers and then on a polishing block fed with magnesia and water. A small piece of selvyt cloth is stretched on a board and soaked in benzene. A little alumina (very carefully prepared from pure recrystallized ammonium alum as described on p. 8, and washed in water) is sprinkled on the cloth, with a few drops of distilled water. The polishing is continued by hand, a little more water being added from time to time if required. Within a few minutes a good surface, free from scratches and from any marked degree of relief or chemical attack, is obtained.

Aluminium and aluminium alloys consisting of homogeneous solid solutions may be polished electrolytically, but the method is not suitable for polyphase alloys. Electrolytic polishing may be carried out with an aluminium cathode (the electrodes preferably being arranged vertically) in the same acetic anhydride-perchloric acid solution as used for steel (p. 124) at a current density of 3 to 5 amp. per square decimetre; or a solution containing one part of perchloric acid (sp. gr. 1.45) and five parts of ethyl alcohol may be used at a current density of 3 amp. per square decimetre, the external voltage being about 20 volts. The temperature of these solutions must not be allowed to rise above

ALUMINIUM ALLOYS

30° C. and the precautions mentioned on p. 124 must be observed.

Etching

The most useful reagent is probably a solution of 2 per cent. hydrofluoric acid and 25 per cent. nitric acid in water. The time of etching required is thirty seconds to one minute.

Aqueous solutions of hydrofluoric acid may be used alone in strengths varying from 1 to 10 per cent., adjusted to obtain maximum contrast in the appearance of different constituents of the alloy. Solutions containing 5 to 20 per cent. of potassium or sodium hydroxide in water are often employed, the stronger solutions for commercial aluminium and the weaker for alloys. The tarnish produced by hydrofluoric acid or the black deposit frequently formed on alloys etched in alkaline solutions, is removed by dipping the specimen in a saturated solution of chromic acid in water, or in 50 per cent. nitric acid.

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF MAGNESIUM

MAGNESIUM of high purity (Pl. 69A) can be obtained commercially, but its use is limited by the fact that it is weak, soft and inferior to aluminium in ductility and elastic properties. When alloyed with small quantities of other metals, notably aluminium and zinc, it provides a series of alloys of sp. gr. 1.8 to 1.9, having a wide range of properties. Almost all the alloys of practical importance consist of solid solutions of the added metal in magnesium. Magnesium forms hard and brittle compounds with most of the metals in common use and the presence of a second constituent in the microstructure, even though it may increase the hardness, has a deleterious effect on ductility. Thus, copper is almost insoluble in magnesium and forms a eutectic containing Mg_2Cu (Fig. 25 and Pl. 19B). Magnesium-copper alloys have, therefore, had few practical applications and are no longer used. Copper may be harmful in other magnesium alloys and its presence is restricted to a low maximum.

The most important types of magnesium alloys are those containing (a) 4 to 10 per cent. of aluminium with about 0.5 per cent. of zinc and 0.3 per cent. of manganese; (b) 1.5 to 2.5 per cent. of manganese; (c) 3 to 4.5 per cent. of zinc with 0.7 per cent. of zirconium; and (d) similar zinc and zirconium contents with 1 to 3 per cent. of rare earth metals, mainly cerium, added in the form of *mischmetall*, or 3 per cent. of thorium.

Magnesium-Aluminium Alloys

The binary alloys with aluminium may be used as cast, forged or extruded. Those with the lower percentage of aluminium have higher ductility and are most suitable for rolling, forging or extrusion. Those with higher aluminium content within the useful range are used mainly as sand castings (Pl. 69B) or as gravity or pressure die castings. The constitutional diagram for magnesium-aluminium alloys shows that the solid solubility of aluminium in magnesium is 12.6 per cent. at the eutectic temperature $436^\circ\text{C}.$, decreasing to about 2 per cent. at $100^\circ\text{C}.$ Some Mg_4Al_3 may

PLATES

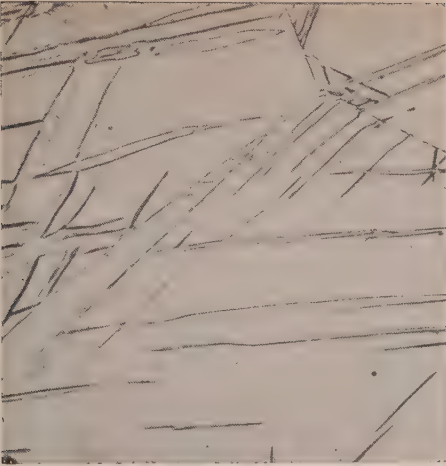
69 - 78

- A. Pure magnesium ingot (99.95 per cent. magnesium). × 100.
Swab etched with 25 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
- B. Sand-cast magnesium–aluminium alloy (Elektron A8) showing cored α solid solution with white sharply outlined degenerate eutectic lying in grain boundaries and dendrite arms and partly surrounded by a black precipitate of Mg_4Al_3 . × 100.
Lightly etched in phospho-picral.
Under high magnification the dark areas can be seen to have a eutectoid-like structure resembling lamellar pearlite.
- C Sand-cast and solution-treated magnesium–aluminium alloy (Elektron A8) showing α solid solution and manganese particles. × 100.
Etched in acetic picral.
- D. Sand-cast magnesium–aluminium alloy (Elektron A8) showing severe microporosity resulting from inadequate feeding. × 100.
Unetched.
- E. Rolled magnesium–manganese alloy (Elektron AM503). × 100.
Etched in 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
- F. Extruded magnesium–zinc–zirconium alloy (Elektron ZW3). Section parallel to the direction of extrusion showing the elongated zirconium-rich cores of the original cast structure. × 1200.
Etched in 3 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

Composition and typical properties of the above alloys

Micro.	Composition, per cent.				Elektron alloy and specification.	Typical tensile properties.		
	Al.	Zn.	Mn.	Zr.		0.1 per cent. Proof stress, Tons per sq. in.	Tensile strength, Tons per sq. in.	Elongation per cent. on 2 in.
B	8.0	0.5	0.3	—	A8 As cast.	5.0	10.0	3
C	8.0	0.5	0.3	—	BS L121 and 1277. A8 Solution treated.	5.0	15.0	10
E	—	—	1.5	—	BS L122 and 1278. AM503 Rolled.	7.5	15.5	9
F	—	3.0	—	0.7	BS 1353. ZW3 Extruded. DTD 622.	15.5	21.5	17

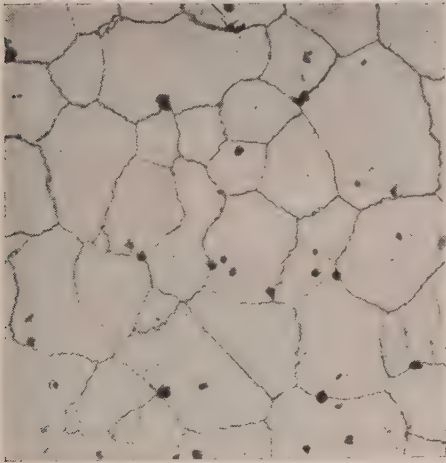
(Photomicrographs supplied by the Magnesium Elektron Company Ltd.)



A



B



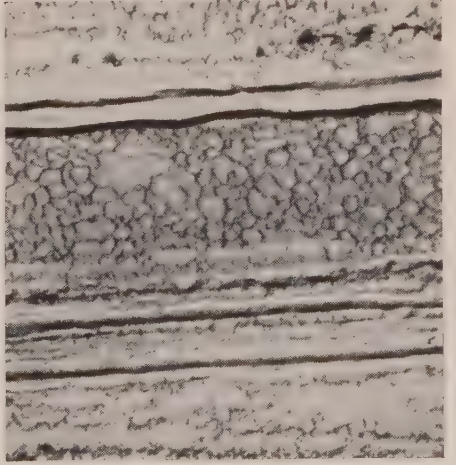
C



D



E



F

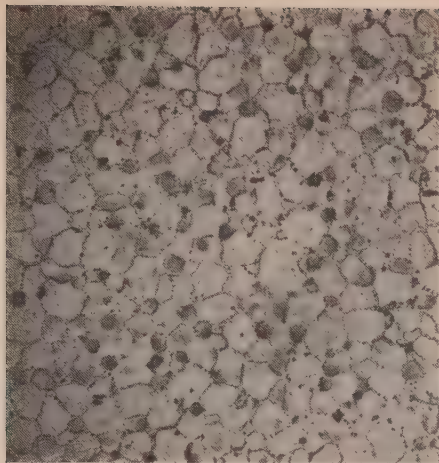
Magnesium alloys.

- A. Sand-cast magnesium-zinc-zirconium alloy (Elektron Z5Z) showing fine grain size and zirconium-rich coring within the grains. × 100.
- B. The same sand-cast alloy (Elektron Z5Z). × 250.
- C. Sand-cast magnesium-zinc-zirconium-rare earth metal alloy (Elektron ZRE1) showing fine-grained α solid solution and the β phase rich in rare earth metals, mainly cerium. × 100.
- D. The same sand-cast alloy (Elektron ZRE1). × 250.
- E. Sand-cast magnesium-zinc-zirconium-rare earth metal alloy (Elektron RZ5) showing zirconium-rich coring and the β phase rich in rare earth metals. × 250.
A, B, C, D and E. Etched in 3 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.
- F. Sand-cast magnesium-zinc-zirconium-thorium alloy (Elektron ZT1) after heat treatment, showing the α solid solution and a thorium-rich grain boundary phase. × 1000.
Etched in 2 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

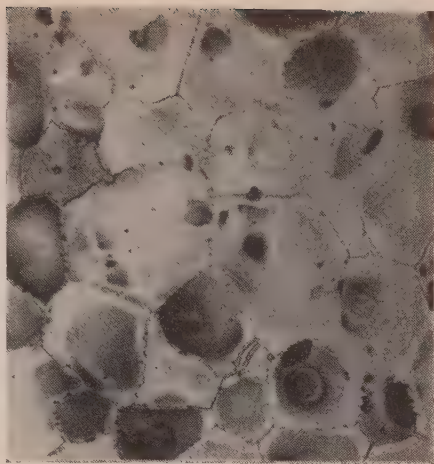
Composition and typical properties of the above alloys

Micro.	Composition, per cent.				Elektron alloy and specification.	Typical tensile properties.		
	Zn.	Zr.	RE.	Th.		0.1 per cent. Proof stress. Tons per sq. in.	Tensile strength. Tons per sq. in.	Elongation, per cent. on 2 in.
A, B	4.5	0.7	—	—	Z5Z As cast and heat treated. DTD721A.	9.5	16.5	8
C, D	2.2	0.7	2.7	—	ZRE1 Annealed. DTD708.	5.5	10.0	4
E	4.0	0.7	1.2	—	RZ5 As cast. DTD738.	6.0	11.5	4
F	2.2	0.7	—	3.0	ZT1 Heat treated.	5.5	13.0	7

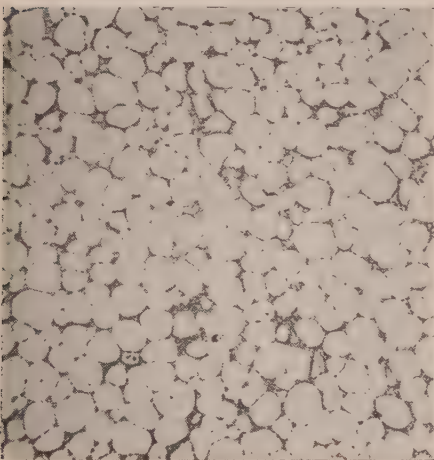
(Photomicrographs supplied by the Magnesium Elektron Company Ltd.)



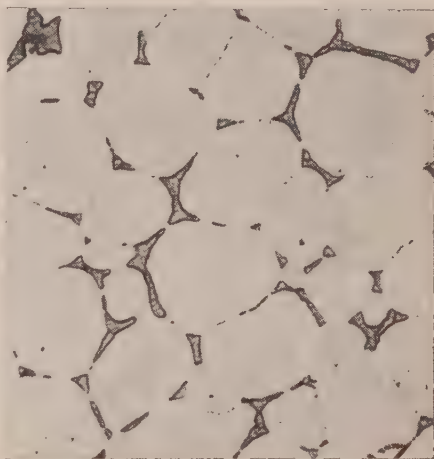
A



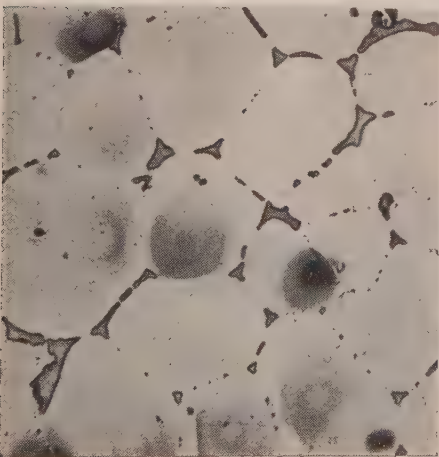
B



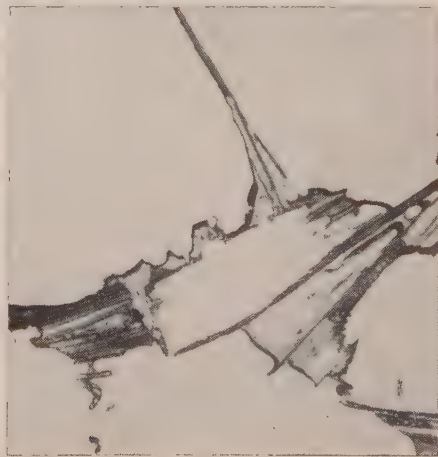
C



D



E



F

- A. Zinc-aluminium-copper alloy containing zinc 88.8 per cent., aluminium 7.8 per cent., and copper 3 per cent., showing grains of zinc-rich solid solution, and eutectic.

Etched with 1 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 100.

- B. Zinc-aluminium alloy containing 6 per cent. of aluminium as cast, showing dendrites of α in a groundmass of the eutectic of the α and β solid solutions. After solidification some precipitation of β has occurred in the dendrites.

Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 100.

- C. Zinc-aluminium alloy containing 10 per cent. of aluminium, as cast, showing dendrites of α (light) in a groundmass of the eutectic of the α and β solid solutions. The proportion of α which has separated is greater than in B. After solidification, some precipitation of β has occurred, giving a mottled appearance to the primary dendrites.

Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

× 100.

- D. The same alloy as shown in C. α dark.

Etched with 10 per cent. sodium hydroxide in water.

× 100.

C and D show the reversal of the etching effect on changing from an acid to an alkaline etching reagent.

- E. Lead-tin alloy containing 50 per cent. of lead and 50 per cent. of tin (common solder), consisting of dendrites of lead in a groundmass of tin-lead eutectic.

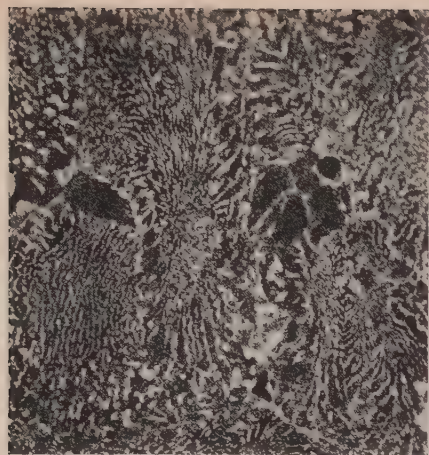
Etched with nitric acid in alcohol.

× 250.

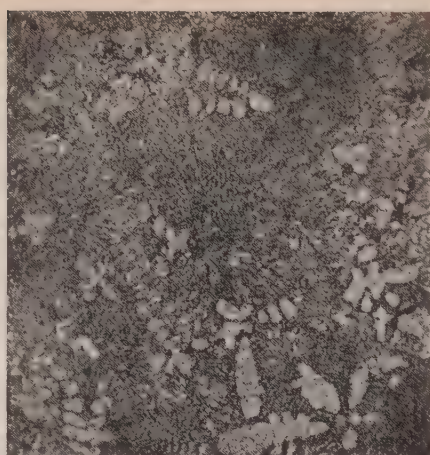
- F. Lead-antimony alloy containing 2 per cent. of antimony, as cast. The structure consists of crystals of lead containing antimony in solid solution partly surrounded by lead-antimony eutectic. Lead will retain about 2.45 per cent. of antimony in solid solution at the eutectic temperature and 0.25 per cent. at atmospheric temperature. The alloy heated to 240° C. and quenched shows age-hardening.

Etched with acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide.

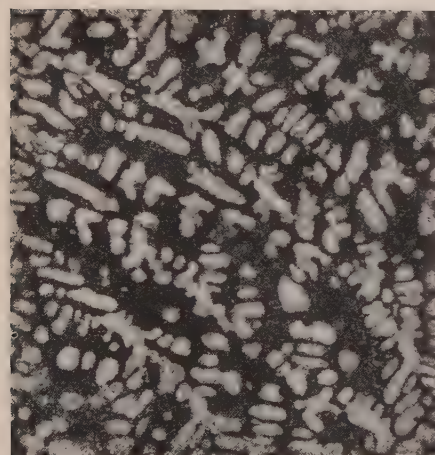
× 50.



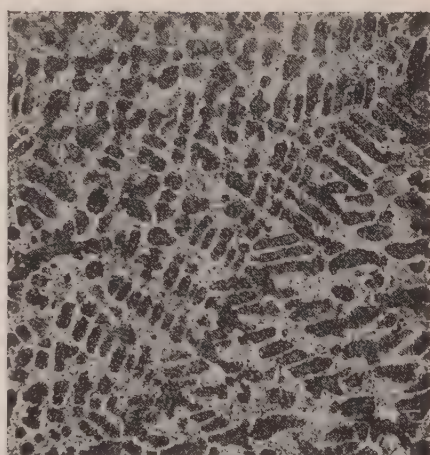
A



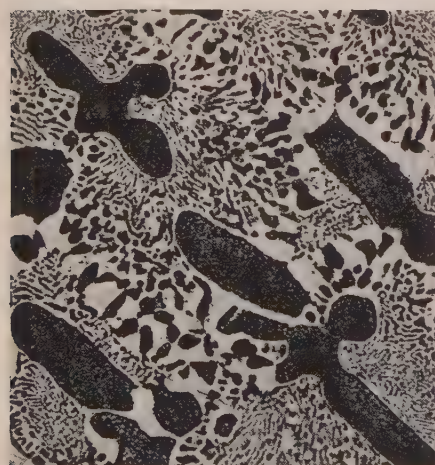
B



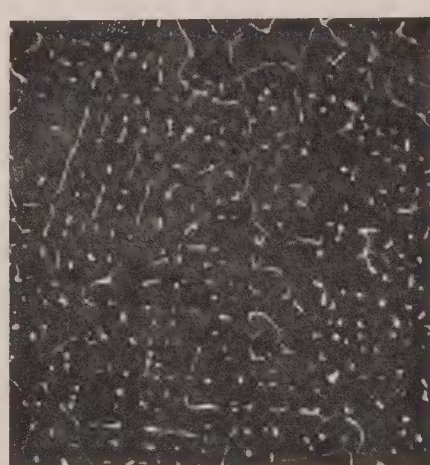
C



D



E



F

- A. Lead-antimony alloy containing 9.0 per cent. of antimony, as cast. Dendritic crystals of lead (holding some antimony in solid solution) embedded in the lead-antimony eutectic. The eutectic contains 12.5 per cent. of antimony.
Etched with acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide. × 250.
- B. Lead-calcium alloy containing 1.5 per cent. of calcium, as cast. Crystals of Pb_3Ca are first formed, the remaining liquid solidifying as almost pure lead containing about 0.1 per cent. of calcium in solution.
The compound Pb_3Ca is hard and brittle and not appreciably affected by exposure to the air.
Etched with acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide. × 100.
- C. Tin-copper alloy containing 10 per cent. of copper. Hard needle-shaped crystallites of η solid solution ($CuSn$) in a groundmass of the copper-tin eutectic containing 1 per cent. of copper.
Etched with 5 per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid in water. × 25.
- D. Tin-antimony-copper bearing metal containing 3.5 per cent. copper, 8.5 per cent. antimony, and the remainder tin. Cubic crystals and star-like crystallites approximating in composition to $SbSn$ and $CuSn$ respectively, set in a groundmass of tin containing antimony in solid solution, and forming a eutectic with some of the copper.
Etched with 5 per cent. hydrochloric acid in water. × 50.
- E. Tin-antimony-copper bearing metal containing 1.5 per cent. of copper, 10 per cent. of antimony and the remainder tin. Similar in structure to the alloy shown in D, but $SbSn$ greater in amount, and $CuSn$ much less in amount.
Etched with 5 per cent. hydrochloric acid. × 25.
- F. Lead-antimony-tin bearing metal containing tin 6 per cent., antimony 16 per cent. and the remainder lead. Cubic crystals (approximately $SbSn$) and grains of lead (dark) set in a groundmass of tin-lead-antimony eutectic.
Etched with 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol. × 100.



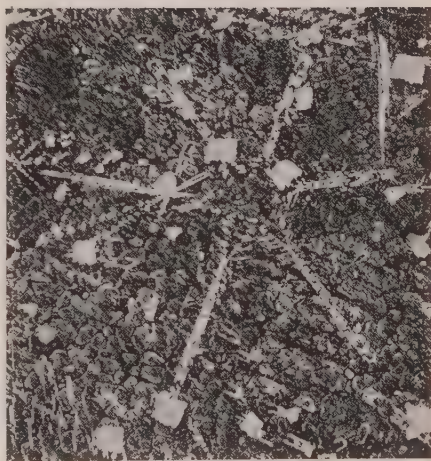
A



B



C



D



E



F

- A. Transverse section of a rod of pure zinc, extruded at 340°C ., showing allotriomorphic grains of the metal.

Etched in 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

$\times 500$.

- B. Zinc alloy die casting containing aluminium 4.0, copper 0.03, magnesium 0.05 per cent., showing fine grain size at the surface owing to the chilling effect of the die.

Etched in 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

$\times 150$.

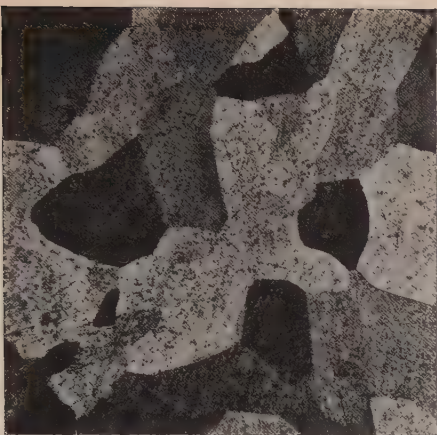
- C. Interior of the same zinc alloy die casting, showing zinc-rich solid solution (β) and ($\alpha + \beta$) eutectic.

Etched in 5 per cent. nitric acid in alcohol.

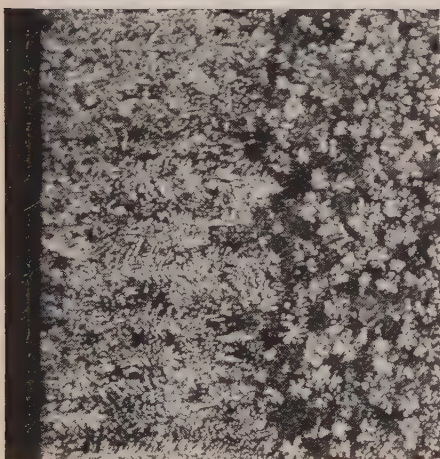
$\times 150$.

- D. Macrostructure of an ingot of 1 per cent. antimony-lead alloy, $4\frac{3}{4}$ in. diameter and $15\frac{1}{2}$ in. long, cast at a temperature of 400°C . into a mould at 146°C . The pouring time was just under three minutes after which the ingot was fed for another three minutes. The fact that the stream of molten metal was not central, but nearer the right of this section, accounts for the displacement of the equiaxial region to the right, and the direction of the dendrites, tending to be upwards on the right and downwards on the left.

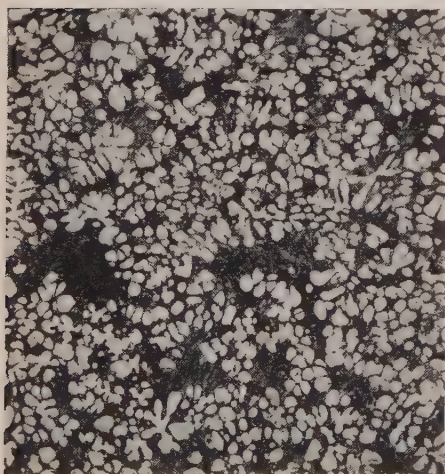
Etched with a solution of ammonium molybdate and citric acid. About half actual size.



A



B



C



D

A and B. Structure of an ingot of pure zinc cast by the Durville rotatory method into a mould of preheated refractory sides and a water-cooled copper base. Two-thirds actual size.

The two halves of the ingot have been machined, A horizontally and B vertically as seen in the photograph. The cracks and tearing on A indicate the lack of strength and ductility of zinc across as compared with along the dendrites. The tensile strength along the dendrites was found to be about four times that across the dendrites. The hexagonal axis of the space lattice of zinc is transverse to the columnar crystals: the direction of growth is that of the basal plane of the hexagon.

L. Northcott: "The Effect of Cast Structure on the Rolling Properties of Zinc," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1937 (1), vol. 60, p. 229.

C. Macro-structure of the axial section of a cast lead block, as used in the Trauzl lead-block test for explosives.

Etched in a solution of ammonium-molybdate and citric acid. Nearly half actual size.

Pure lead is cast in a steel mould 200 mm. diameter and 200 mm. high, the walls of the mould being 23 mm. thick and the base 30 mm. thick. The base carries a vertical core producing a central hole 25 mm. diameter and 125 mm. long. The casting is fed by a head 47 mm. wide and 100 mm. high, which has been removed from the block before it was photographed. In view of the possible variations in macrostructure, the specification rightly requires that blocks for comparative tests should be cast under identical conditions.

A. Marshall: "Explosives" (2nd edition), p. 469



A

B



C

Special Techniques.

- A. Aluminium, electrolytically polished and anodized. Photographed under polarized light (crossed polaroids) after silver to a depth of $800 \text{ \AA}$ had been evaporated on to the surface. × 40.

The polarization due to the anisotropic character of zinc can be suppressed by coating the surface with a film of silver which is isotropic. Aluminium is isotropic. The polarization effect in anodized aluminium persists after silvering and is probably due not to true anisotropy, but to the structure of the anodized surface, which is accurately reproduced in the silver film.

See E. C. W. Perryman and J. M. Lack: *Nature*, 1951, vol. 167, p. 479.

- B. Pure zinc, electrolytically polished and photographed under polarized light (crossed polaroids). × 100.

The polarization effect is due to the optical anisotropy of zinc.

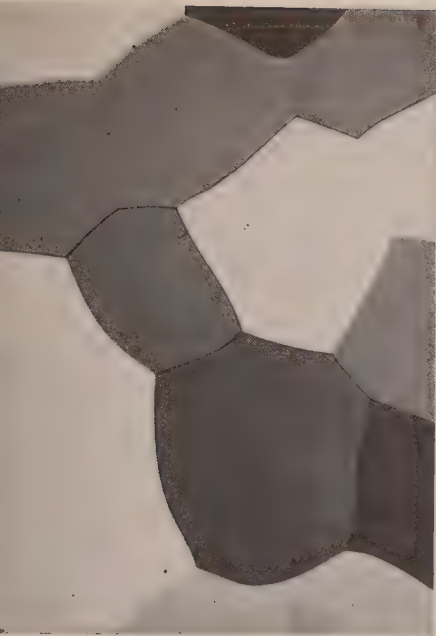
- C. Phase contrast micrograph of a section of a pressure weld in molybdenum. × 120.
Electropolished. Unetched.

See A. R. Moss: "The Pressure Welding of Molybdenum," *Journal of the Institute of Metals*, 1953-54, vol. 82, p. 374.

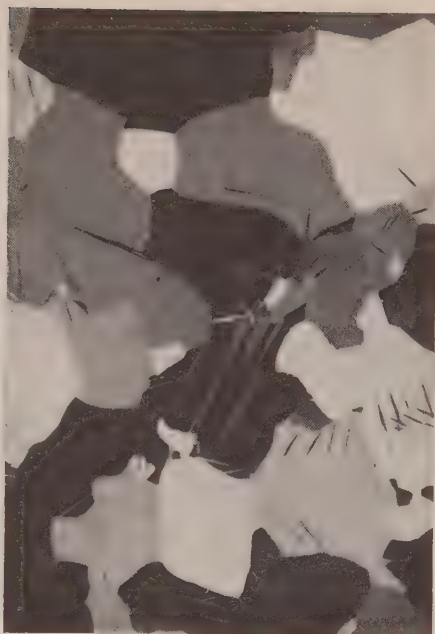
- D. Phase contrast micrograph of molybdenum rolled at 1000°C . and recrystallized. × 2000.
Electropolished. Unetched.

The structure is revealed by undulations in the electropolished surface. Some grains have developed a marked mosaic structure, the sub-boundaries consisting of a series of pits.

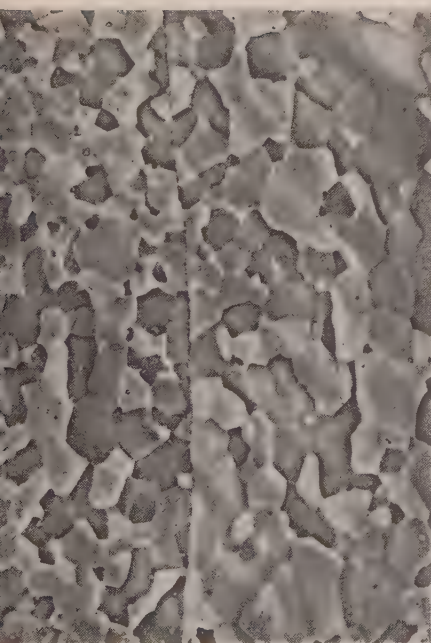
(Photomicrographs A and B supplied by the B.N.F.M.R.A., and C. and D. by Dr. J. A. Belk.)



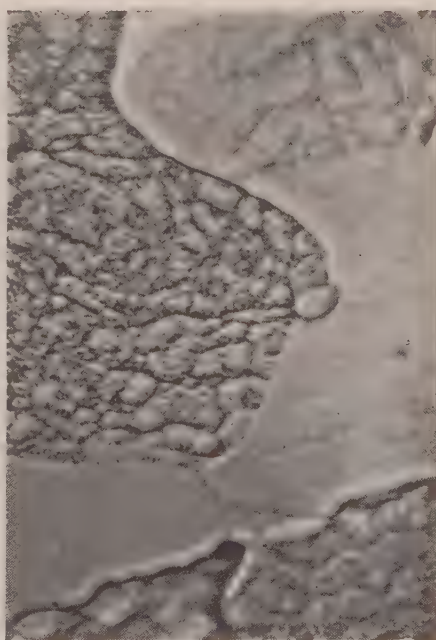
A



B



C



D



A. Ordinary vertical illumination.



B. Oblique, opaque-stop illumination.



A. Positive phase contrast.



B. Negative phase contrast.

taken under different forms of illumination.

B. W. Mott: "Metallurgical Aspects of Microscopy," *Research*, October, 1955.
(Photomicrographs supplied by Mr. E. C. Sykes, A.E.R.E., Harwell.)

Special Techniques.

- A. Copper-nickel-iron alloy (nickel 5, iron 1, manganese 0.5 per cent.) heated for 2 hours at 900° C., furnace cooled to 600° C. and quenched in water, showing particles in the grains and grain boundaries.

Etched with 10 per cent. ammonium persulphate solution.

Normal illumination.

× 1500.

- B. The same field. Phase contrast.

× 1500.

See Plate 61C, and D, for the effect of other treatments.

- C. D. E. and F. Carbon steel (carbon 1.2 per cent.) heated in a vacuum to 950° C., held for $\frac{1}{2}$ hour then cooled slowly and photographed at intervals during cooling with a 0.5 N.A. reflecting objective. The specimen, polished but not etched, shows austenite grain boundaries produced by thermal etching.

All × 185.

See G. C. Smith and M. J. Olney: "High Temperature Microscopy with a Reflecting Objective," *Research*, 1951, vol. 4, p. 437.

- C. Photographed at 739° C. The structure is similar to that shown at 950° C., the austenite boundaries remaining unchanged.

- D. Photographed at 667° C. Graphite began to spread over the surface at about 680° C. and continued to form during cooling at about 5° C. per minute down to 590° C.

- E. Photographed at 590° C. There was little change in surface appearance on further cooling to room temperature.

- F. Photographed at room temperature, showing appearance of the surface. The internal structure of the steel was quite normal, consisting of pearlite with grain boundary cementite. No graphite is formed if the steel is cooled in hydrogen rather than in a vacuum or inert atmosphere.

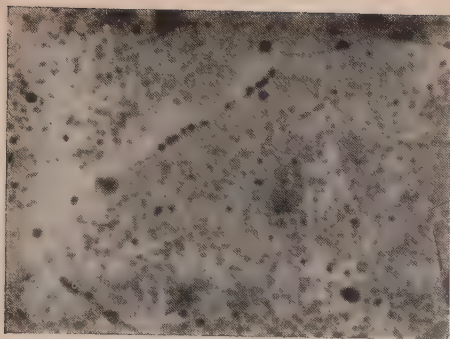
- G. Light profile. Polycrystalline silver heated for 34 hours in air at 900° C. and photographed with the image of a fine wire projected on to the surface. This reveals the contour of the striations produced on the surface by thermal etching.

× 1000.

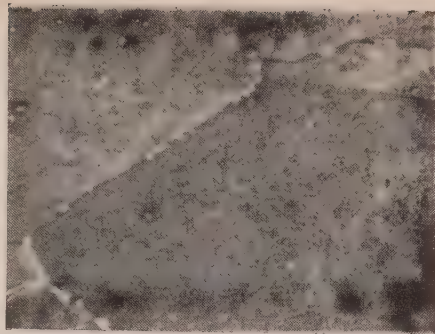
- H. Interferogram of the surface of an aluminium-magnesium alloy sheet showing stretcher-strain markings.

× 40.

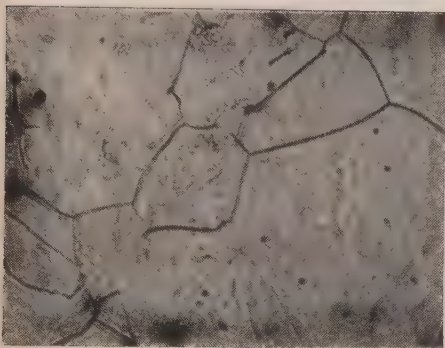
Photomicrographs C, D, E, F, and G, were supplied by Mr. G. C. Smith (Cambridge University); A, B, and H, by the B.N.F.M.R.A.



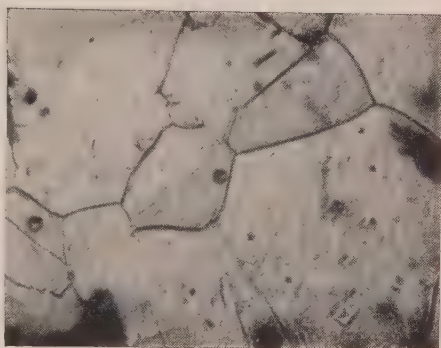
A



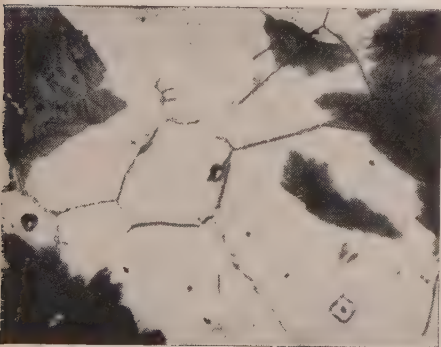
B



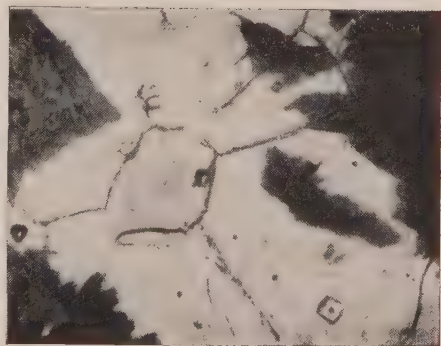
C



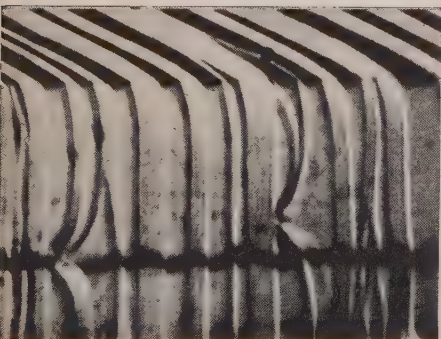
D



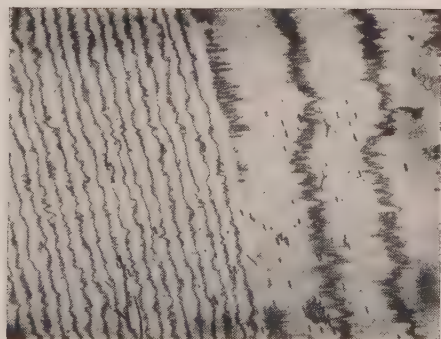
E



F



G



H

MAGNESIUM ALLOYS

therefore be expected to separate in a casting of high aluminium content. This, however, is taken into solution by heat treatment at about 420°C . for sixteen hours followed by cooling in air, oil or water (Pl. 69c). A subsequent precipitation treatment, ranging from two hours at 300°C . to sixteen hours at 175°C ., produces a considerable increase in hardness. Part of the aluminium is sometimes replaced by zinc up to 1.5 per cent. in hot-worked alloys or up to 4 per cent. in castings (Pl. 67F). Cadmium, which improves ductility, may be added in similar amount.

Casting defects are eliminated by the precautions usually adopted in foundry practice, but a defect that has to be specially guarded against in magnesium alloys is microporosity, which consists of minute intergranular cavities occurring in localized areas, mainly in heavy sections (Pl. 69D). Microporosity may destroy the pressure tightness of a casting though showing little effect on its mechanical properties. A high zinc content, which tends to cause hot-shortness, increases the risk of microporosity in magnesium-aluminium alloys, but it is now generally considered that special care to ensure adequate feeding will reduce or eliminate the defect.

Magnesium-Manganese Alloys

The alloys with manganese only may be used as castings, but have lower mechanical properties in this form than the alloys containing aluminium, and are very suitable for rolling or extrusion (Pl. 69E). On the other hand, they have better resistance to corrosion and can be welded without difficulty. The solid solubility of manganese in magnesium is 3.2 per cent. at 645°C ., but it decreases very rapidly with falling temperature and is only about 0.1 per cent. at 300°C . The second constituent which separates beyond the solubility line is pure manganese.

Magnesium-Zinc-Zirconium Alloys

The alloys with zinc and zirconium were developed primarily as casting alloys of high mechanical strength and freedom from microporosity, but they are readily forged, rolled and extruded. They are characterized by small grain size (Pl. 69F and 70A, B) and a resistance to corrosion comparable with that of the magnesium-manganese alloys. They may be cast in large ingots and hot rolled to bar or sheet by methods usually applied to steel. In the rolled or extruded form they exhibit mechanical properties superior to those of the magnesium-aluminium-zinc or mag-

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

nesium-manganese alloys. About 8 per cent. of zinc is soluble in magnesium at 340°C ., but less than 2 per cent. at 100°C ., the constituent which separates being MgZn . In the presence of zirconium the solid solution shows pronounced coring. The grains are zirconium-rich at the centre and zinc-rich at the boundaries. Owing to the slow rate of diffusion of zirconium, the coring is very persistent and affects the structure of the extruded alloy (Pl. 69F). Alloys containing zinc, zirconium and rare-earth metals (Pl. 70C, D, E) or thorium (Pl. 70F) also show zirconium-rich coring and a second phase rich in the rare-earth metals or in thorium. They are used in the form of castings which, even when of complicated shape, are sound and capable of withstanding high pressures. The principal advantage of these alloys, whether in the cast or wrought form, is that they maintain their room-temperature strength up to 200°C .

Corrosion Resistance

Except in a marine atmosphere, the corrosion resistance of many magnesium alloys is satisfactory, and it has been further improved by the application of suitable methods of protection, such as treatment with dichromate solutions, anodic oxidation, varnishing, enamelling and coating with other metals. Magnesium alloys do not suffer from intercrystalline corrosion, and transcrystalline fracture due to stress-corrosion, though it may occur in thin sections of highly stressed magnesium alloys containing aluminium, has not been observed in the magnesium-zirconium alloys.

Practical Notes

Macro-examination

The specimen is prepared in a similar manner to that applicable to the macro-examination of aluminium alloys, and its surface swabbed with a 20 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol, washed in water, then in acetone and dried.

Polishing

The initial preparation is similar to that of aluminium, the papers being soaked in paraffin to reduce friction and avoid emery pick-up. Final polishing should be done by hand with liquid metal polish on selvyt stretched on a board. A film of grease remains on the specimen, and is removed by gently rubbing the surface on selvyt wetted with alcohol, acetone or benzene.

MAGNESIUM ALLOYS

Except for the harder magnesium alloys, polishing on a rotating pad is too severe a treatment. For these, however, better finishes may be obtained by the use of a fine grade of alumina on a slow-running pad wetted with soap solution made with distilled water, the specimen then being washed in running water, rinsed in acetone or hot alcohol and dried.

Electrolytic polishing of the alloys containing aluminium or manganese can be carried out in an orthophosphoric acid-ethyl alcohol solution as for zinc (p. 203), but the process is very slow.

Etching

A 2 or 5 per cent. solution of nitric acid in alcohol, or alcoholic acid ferric chloride solution consisting of 5 c.c. of the stock acid ferric chloride solution (p. 176) and 100 c.c. alcohol, are the most generally useful reagents. The grain boundaries of solution-treated alloys are revealed by etching in "acetic picral," which contains:

Picric acid	.	.	.	.	.	5 gm.
Glacial acetic acid	.	.	.	.	.	5 c.c.
Distilled water	.	.	.	.	.	10 c.c.
Ethyl alcohol	.	.	.	.	.	100 c.c.

Another reagent, "phospho-picral," containing:

Picric acid	.	.	.	.	.	4 gm.
Orthophosphoric acid (sp. gr. 1.7)	.	.	.	.	.	0.7 c.c.
Ethyl alcohol	.	.	.	.	.	100 c.c.

darkens all magnesium solid solutions by the formation of a film, but leaves all other phases unchanged. It is particularly useful for estimating the amount and distribution of compounds in cast and solution heat-treated alloys because of the high degree of contrast between matrix and compound.

CHAPTER XVII

THE STRUCTURE AND PROPERTIES OF ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN, LEAD, AND OF BEARING METALS

Zinc and its Alloys

CERTAIN discontinuities in the physical and mechanical properties of zinc have led to the supposition that allotropic forms of the metal can exist. X-ray analysis of zinc crystals at different temperatures between 20° C. and 400° C. has, however, failed to reveal any change in the type of crystal structure, and it must accordingly be concluded that the changes observed are not due to the existence of true allotropic modifications of zinc.

Cast or extruded zinc shows large polyhedral grains (Pl. 73A, 75). The chief impurities in commercial zinc are lead which collects in globules or is present in the grain boundaries, and iron which forms the compound FeZn_7 , soluble in zinc to the extent of 0.02 per cent. at 418° C. and 0.008 per cent. at 20° C. Crystals of the chill-cast metal show preferred orientation (Pl. 74A, B).

Zinc-Tin Alloys

Alloys with tin show a eutectic containing 92 per cent. of tin and melting at 199° C.; the solid solubility of tin in zinc is very small. Alloys with less than 92 per cent. of tin consist of zinc and eutectic. Very small amounts of tin are sufficient to give a complete film of zinc-tin eutectic around the zinc grains, causing brittleness at raised temperatures on account of the low melting point of the intergranular film.

Zinc-Aluminium Alloys

Aluminium is soluble in zinc to the extent of 1.1 per cent. at 380° C., diminishing to 0.05 per cent. at atmospheric temperature. The solidification of alloys containing over 5 per cent. of aluminium begins with the separation of the aluminium-rich α solid solution and is completed by the formation of the $\alpha + \beta$ eutectic (Fig. 48).

An alloy containing 10 per cent. of aluminium consists of dendrites of α embedded in a groundmass of eutectic, but some fur-

ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN AND LEAD

ther separation of β occurs in the α dendrites as they cool through the range of 382°C. to 275°C. , so that at atmospheric temperature the micro-constituents are α (containing some precipitated β) and the $\alpha + \beta$ eutectic (Pl. 71C, D).

The 6 per cent. alloy has a similar structure with a smaller proportion of the primary α constituent (Pl. 71B). Alloys containing 3 per cent. of copper and 6 to 15 per cent. of aluminium show considerable strength in the cast condition (Pl. 71A), but are unsuited for use as rolled bars or forgings since, in this condition, they deteriorate with time. Die-castings of these alloys are liable to develop cracks, as a result of intercrystalline corrosion. This cause of instability has now been overcome in certain compositions by the use of the highest grade of zinc in the manufacture of the alloys and the addition of a small amount of magnesium, not exceeding 0.08 per cent. The chief types are those containing about 4 per cent. of aluminium, or 4 per cent. of aluminium with 1 per cent. of copper. Although the alloy with copper is slightly stronger, the zinc-aluminium alloy without copper is more permanent in dimensions and impact value. Pressure die-castings of the alloys have a very fine structure, partly on account of rapid cooling and partly owing to the grain refinement produced by the addition of magnesium (Pl. 73B and C). Raised temperatures accelerate the effect of an excessive amount of the deleterious impurities, lead, cadmium and tin, in zinc die-casting alloys. To test their stability, they may be subjected to a water-vapour atmosphere at 95°C. for ten days, and then examined for dimensional changes and intercrystalline corrosion.

Tin and its Alloys

Commercial tin is usually of high purity. If melted at a low temperature and poured into an open stone mould it presents a brilliant white surface which, when etched, reveals the coarse crystalline structure of the metal. The presence of a little lead, iron or other impurity imparts a dull and frosted appearance to the surface. Microscopical examination is, however, of no value in detecting the impurities in tin, as they are usually present in very small amounts and many of them are in solid solution.

When tin is exposed to severe cold, it disintegrates into a granular grey powder (grey tin). The disintegration does not readily take place, the maximum rate of change occurring at about -50°C. , but when once started, it may proceed at higher tem-

peratures, especially in contact with certain solutions (e.g. tin ammonium sulphate) which will dissolve tin. The change may be of importance in connection with the storage of tin and tin articles in regions where the temperature can be very low. Reversion to the ordinary variety (white tin) does not occur below 16° C. Grey and white tin are definite allotropic modifications shown by X-ray crystal analysis to have different lattice structures.

Tin is extensively employed to coat mild steel in the manufacture of tin plate. Its resistance to corrosion even at temperatures up to 100° C. renders it a valuable metal for coating culinary vessels. The tin coating on tin plate is exceedingly thin (from 1 to 4×10^{-4} in.), and the chief application of microscopy in connection with tin plate (apart from the examination of the underlying metal) is in the study of the surface and of the underlying alloy layer which contains crystals of FeSn_2 . This layer may be revealed by taper-sectioning,* or electrolytic detinning or progressive detinning in a boiling sodium plumbite solution, made by adding a solution of lead acetate to one of sodium hydroxide.† Minute pores in the tin coating constitute centres at which corrosion of the underlying metal can begin and from which it will spread, and a macroscopic test to detect porosity has useful applications.‡ The extent and situation of the defects having been established, further microscopical investigation, including examination of the underlying metal at the site of the defect, may assist in determining the cause of the porosity.

Tin-Lead Alloys

Tin and lead form a series of alloys which shows a eutectic containing 38 per cent. of lead and melting at 183° C. (Fig. 24). Tin retains very little lead in solid solution at room temperatures, and the groundmass of the tin-rich alloys consists of almost pure tin. The principal tin-lead alloys of industrial importance are:

1. Pewter, containing upwards of 85 per cent. of tin, and thus consisting of tin and eutectic. There is a danger of lead-poisoning in the use of pewter vessels containing more than 18 per cent. of lead, i.e. more than 50 per cent. eutectic. Unalloyed tin is sometimes used in place of pewter. It is whiter in colour, and absence of lead renders it quite safe for domestic purposes. *Tin-antimony alloys have also replaced pewter.

* J. E. Davies and W. E. Hoare, *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1951 (2), vol. 168, p. 134.

† A. W. Hothersall and W. N. Bradshaw, *ibid.*, 1936 (1), vol. 133, p. 225.

‡ Two such tests are described and compared in a paper on "The Determination of the Porosity of Tin Coatings on Steel," by D. J. Macnaughtan, S. G. Clarke, and J. C. Prytherch, *ibid.*, 1932 (1), vol. 125, p. 159.

ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN AND LEAD

2. Solders. Tinman's solder, containing about two parts of tin and one part of lead, approximates to the eutectic composition (Pl. 18D). Common solder contains equal parts of the two metals (Pl. 71E). The addition of $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 per cent. of antimony, replacing an equal amount of lead, lowers the melting point. Plumber's solder, containing about two parts of lead and one part of tin, has a range of solidification from 252° C., where lead first begins to separate, to 183° C., the freezing point of the eutectic. During this range of temperature in which lead is separating out, the alloy is in a pasty state, and this condition is utilized by the plumber for "wiping the joint."

The primary crystals in alloys containing more than 38 per cent. of lead, and the lead-rich constituent of the eutectic are not pure lead, but contain tin in solid solution. Lead dissolves 19.5 per cent. of tin at 183° C. below which temperature the tin content of the saturated solid solution diminishes to about 2 per cent. at 25° C.

Tin-Antimony Alloys

The binary alloys are not usually employed, but form the basis of more complex alloys, such as Britannia metal and the bearing metals.

Britannia metal is a ternary alloy of antimony, copper and tin having a range of different compositions. English Britannia metal contains 90 to 94 per cent. of tin with 4.5 to 9 per cent. of antimony and 1.5 to 0.5 per cent. of copper, the high-antimony low-copper variety being used for castings. In the cheaper alloys (used for castings only) zinc replaces some of the tin. The properties may be considerably affected by heat treatment, such as quenching from 200° C. and ageing.

In the absence of copper the structure consists of the γ solid solution of antimony in tin. The binary alloys of antimony and tin form a series of three solid solutions, that richest in antimony being usually referred to as α and that richest in tin as γ . If the antimony exceeds about 9 per cent., cubic crystals of the β' constituent (approximately SbSn), which may be seen in Pl. 72F, are present. The modification in structure introduced by the presence of copper is not definitely known. Britannia metal in the cast condition shows small bright-etching needles or globules (possibly the copper-tin η solution) embedded in a tin-rich groundmass containing the antimony-tin γ solution. In the absence of antimony the copper-tin η solution forms with tin a eutectic containing only

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

1 per cent. of copper; and the groundmass in Britannia metal may possibly be a eutectic of analogous composition.

Lead and Lead Alloys

The impurities present in soft lead, such as is commonly used for sheet, pipes, etc., rarely exceed 0.03 per cent. in total amount. The cast material usually has a large grain size (Pl. 74c) and if cold-worked will recrystallize at atmospheric temperature. The metal is extremely weak, it may suffer deformation or creep under its own weight and is liable to intercrystalline failure under vibratory stresses on account of its very low fatigue limit. Very small additions of metals which were at one time regarded as undesirable impurities have a beneficial effect on lead for many purposes, on account of the increased strength which they impart to the metal. Thus, 0.5 per cent. of cadmium raises the fatigue limit to three times that of pure lead, and proportionately greater increases can be obtained by the use of ternary alloys containing about 98 per cent. of lead and consisting of lead, cadmium and tin or lead, tin and antimony. These elements form eutectics with lead, but the alloys used are generally within the limit of solid solubility at the eutectic temperature, and after casting in chill moulds, or quenching the reheated alloy, age-hardening effects of varying intensity are produced. When greater pliability of the cable is essential, the lead content is raised to over 99 per cent., tin is limited to 0.45 per cent. and antimony or cadmium to 0.25 and 0.18 per cent. respectively.

Lead-Antimony Alloys

The solubility of antimony in lead decreases from 2.45 per cent. at 247° C. to 0.25 per cent. at 20° C. The solid solution of antimony in lead forms a eutectic with antimony (which contains some lead in solid solution) having an antimony content of 12.5 per cent. and a melting point of 247° C. The macrostructure of the solid solution with 1 per cent. antimony is shown in Pl. 73D. The 2 per cent. antimony alloy as cast shows a structure of solid solution partly surrounded by eutectic (Pl. 71F): it becomes homogeneous after annealing at 240° C. and quenching in water.

The 9 per cent. alloy consists of dendrites of the lead solid solution and eutectic in the ratio of about 1 : 2 (Pl. 72A). Alloys containing from 5 to 12 per cent. of antimony are used for accumulator grids, and those with about 15 per cent. of antimony for bearing metals.

ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN AND LEAD

Linotype metal (approximately 86 : 11 : 3 lead-antimony-tin) has a low casting temperature and short freezing range. It may be used in conditions involving a high speed of casting and rapid solidification. Stereo metal (approximately 76 : 16 : 8 lead-antimony-tin) is harder and more resistant to wear, with a longer freezing range.

Lead-tin-antimony solders contain 4 to 8 per cent. of antimony and 5 to 12 per cent. of tin. They are used on ferrous metals, but should not be used in joints which may be subjected to shock in service.

Lead-Calcium Alloys

The alloy containing 3 per cent. of calcium has had a limited use as a bearing metal. It contains crystals of Pb_3Ca in a ground-mass of solid solution of calcium in lead (Pl. 72B). This solid solution may be obtained in the supersaturated condition by quenching, and the quenched alloys undergo age-hardening.

Bearing Metals

Most bearing metals have a distinctive appearance under the microscope and consist of a matrix able to maintain a continuous oil film and to adjust itself to local pressure caused by grit or lack of perfect alignment; whilst embedded in it are hard particles which improve the general compressive strength of the bearing without destroying its local plasticity. The most desirable character of the plastic matrix differs according to the load on the bearings and the working conditions. For example, for bearings which have to work under heavy loads, bronzes containing 10 to 15 per cent. of tin and phosphor-bronzes are frequently used. Such bronzes in the slowly cooled condition contain particles of the δ constituent (and in the case of phosphor-bronze particles of Cu_3P in addition) embedded in a matrix of the α solid solution (Pl. 59D).

For bearings working under lighter loads, white metals are used. Typical white metals are the tin-antimony-copper alloys (Babbitt metals). Such an alloy used by the Navy contains from 2 to 7 (say $4\frac{1}{2}$) per cent. of copper, 8 to 9 per cent. of antimony, and the remainder tin. Tin containing upwards of 1 per cent. of copper shows needle-shaped crystallites of the copper-tin η solution (Pl. 72c). Alloys consisting principally of tin but containing upwards of 9 per cent. of antimony, show hard cubic particles of the β' tin-antimony constituent embedded in a matrix of the γ solid solution

of antimony in tin. The addition of copper reduces the antimony content at which the β' constituent appears and results in a hardening of the alloy due to the separation of a copper-tin constituent (the η solution) in the form of needles or star-like crystallites (Pl. 72D, E). These two constituents, the cubes containing antimony and the stars copper, are often referred to as SbSn and CuSn respectively, but they actually contain more tin than these compounds.

A tin-zinc alloy containing 30 per cent. of zinc with 1 to 2 per cent. of antimony and copper is used for underwater bearings. This alloy shows particles of zinc embedded in the tin-zinc eutectic which contains 8 per cent. of zinc.

In some bearing metals the matrix consists principally of lead. Lead-antimony alloys show a eutectic at 12.5 per cent. of antimony. With more than this amount the alloy consists of hard crystallites of antimony in a plastic matrix of eutectic. The addition of tin as in Magnolia metal (lead 80, antimony 14, tin 6) further increases the hardness of these alloys, since the tin combines with some of the antimony giving the cubic crystals already described. Some tin passes into the eutectic in solution in antimony (Pl. 72F).

The casting temperature and rate of cooling have an important effect on the size and distribution of the hard particles. If the alloy is cast in chill, the particles are small, but uniformly distributed: if it solidifies too slowly, they are large and tend to float to the top. Moulds are generally heated to about 100° C. and the alloy poured at a temperature just above the melting point.

The amount of the hardening elements, copper and antimony, which are added is limited by the fact that, when the hard particles of the alloy increase in quantity to such an extent as to come in actual contact instead of being merely embedded in the matrix, the alloy becomes brittle.

Practical Notes

Polishing

The precautions adopted for very soft metals must usually be observed. Great care is necessary to avoid the production of a flowed layer in tin and lead alloys during the preparation of the specimen. For cutting, a sharp well-lubricated hack-saw must be used. Any filing required must be done with a fine file and at a light pressure. Emery papers should be flooded with paraffin

ALLOYS OF ZINC, TIN AND LEAD

when necessary to reduce friction. After the specimen has been taken down to an old piece of 00 paper it will be ready for final polishing, which is best done by hand with liquid metal polish on selvyt stretched on a board. If the liquid is deficient in lubricating properties a few drops of paraffin may be added. The cloth should be kept very moist. The film of paraffin left on the surface may be removed by rubbing on selvyt moistened with benzene or acetone, or preferably by swabbing lightly with clean paraffin and washing first under a very strong jet of water, and then with acetone. The specimen is then given a very light polish by hand on selvyt with magnesia and water. Grinding and polishing must be sufficient to remove the flowed or recrystallized layer, and to aid in this the specimen may be etched and lightly repolished several times before the final etching.

Electropolishing of zinc may be carried out in a solution containing 185 parts of orthophosphoric acid and 315 parts of ethyl alcohol at a current density of 2 amp. per sq. decimetre and a voltage of 2.5 volts. With a horizontal cathode of nickel or stainless steel, the process takes about thirty minutes. Electrolytic polishing of tin and lead has been carried out in perchloric acid-acetic anhydride solution, but the results are uncertain.

Macro-examination of Lead Alloys

Sections are prepared in the manner indicated above, with the object of producing a surface reasonably free from scratches and with as shallow a recrystallized surface layer as possible. This layer is removed by prolonged etching. Nitric acid in water, or nitric acid and ammonium molybdate in water, may be used for preliminary etching. The surface should be swabbed continually with selvyt or cotton-wool, moistened with the solution, or pitting will result. If the alloy contains much antimony, an adherent layer presumably of an antimony oxide is formed and must be removed by rubbing. For this reason macrosections of lead-antimony alloys are not so readily prepared as those of other common alloys of lead. When the structure has begun to emerge, the surface may be finally etched with ammonium molybdate and citric acid which gives a much brighter appearance though its action is slow. The surface should then be washed with water followed by acetone and allowed to dry in an inclined position (Pl. 73D and 74C).

Etching

The following reagents are suitable.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

Zinc and Zinc Alloys

Hydrochloric acid: 1 per cent. solution of concentrated acid (sp. gr. 1.19) in alcohol.

Nitric acid: 1 per cent. solution of concentrated acid (sp. gr. 1.42) in alcohol.

Chromic acid: 6 gm. chromic acid dissolved in 94 gm. concentrated nitric acid and a few drops added to 50 c.c. of water (Timoféef's reagent).

Sodium hydroxide: 10 per cent. solution in water.

Tin and Tin Alloys

Hydrochloric acid: 5 per cent. in alcohol.

Acetic acid (as below) for alloys with lead.

Lead and Lead Alloys

Nitric acid: 5 per cent. in alcohol.

Acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide: glacial acetic acid to which is added hydrogen peroxide in amounts up to 3 per cent. The smaller the amount of hydrogen peroxide the less the attack on grain surfaces (revealing segregation, twinning, etc.) and the greater, relatively, the attack on the grain boundaries.

Acetic and nitric acids in glycerol: glycerol four parts, glacial acetic acid one part, concentrated nitric acid one part. The nitric acid is added immediately before use and the solution should be heated to a temperature of about 80° C. (Vilella and Beregekoff's reagent).

Bearing Metals (White Metals)

Nitric acid: 5 per cent. in alcohol for alloys rich in lead.

Hydrochloric acid: 5 per cent. in alcohol for alloys rich in tin.

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES IN METALLURGICAL MICROSCOPY

ALONG with the development of the electron microscope there have been great advances in the use of the optical microscope in recent years, and a number of specialized techniques have been introduced. Some of these are described in this chapter, but the space devoted to them is necessarily limited and further information must be sought in the references given.*

The Reflecting Microscope

The optical system of the reflecting microscope consists entirely of mirrors. Reflecting objectives have a relatively long working distance and are thus suitable for high-temperature microscopy in which the specimen may be viewed by incident light or by its own radiation. Owing to the absence of lenses, the reflecting objectives are free from chromatic aberration (though a slight amount may be introduced by the quartz window of a heating chamber) and may therefore be used with light of any wave-length without affecting the focus. They, however, show some spherical aberration which may be eliminated by making the concave mirror in the form of an ellipsoid, though this makes the equipment more expensive.

A typical objective consists of two spherical mirrors, the larger one concave and provided with a central aperture, and the smaller one convex. The vertical distance between the mirrors is corrected to suit the tube length and the thickness of the glass or quartz window (if any) covering the specimen. Exact centring of the front convex mirror is essential and means of adjustment are provided. The construction of a low-power 13-mm. reflecting objective is shown in Fig. 49. This is an objective of 0.28 N.A. with a primary magnification of 15 and a working distance of 24 mm. Objectives of greater resolving power (N.A. 0.65) give primary

* For a general treatment of the subject, see S. Tolansky: "Specialized Microscopical Techniques in Metallurgy," *Institute of Metals Monograph and Report Series*, No. 13, p. 1; E. C. W. Perryman: "Recent Developments in Metallography," *Metal Industry*, 1951, vol. 79, pp. 23, 51, 71, 111 and 131; and B. W. Mott: "Metallurgical Aspects of Microscopy," *Research*, 1955, vol. 8, p. 307.

magnifications of 52 and 74 but the working distances are reduced to 3.5 mm. and 2.5 mm. respectively.

Increased working distance of standard 8-mm. or 4-mm. objective can be obtained by means of an attachment which consists of an aluminized spherical concave mirror placed at a position where the object is at the centre of curvature giving unit magnification. At a mid-way position between the mirror and the specimen, a semi-aluminized plane mirror reflects the image into the focal plane of the objective. In the Newton long-working-distance objective, supplied by Messrs. Beck, the working distance is increased to 12.8 mm. The numerical aperture is 0.574 and useful magnification up to 500 can be obtained.

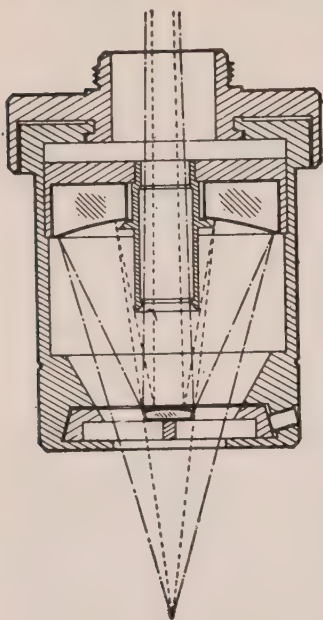


FIG. 49. Low-power Reflecting Objective. (Beck.)

of photomicrographs taken with the reflecting microscope are shown in Pl. 78c to f.

The reflecting microscope has been used to follow the course of the formation of oxide films and other surface effects, and to study recrystallization and high temperature phase changes, e.g. the alpha-gamma transformation in iron and steel. Examples

Polarized Light Microscopy

For the examination of metallic materials, the specimen, illuminated by plane polarized light, is viewed through a microscope, the tube of which is fitted with an analyser. Plates of the synthetic material, Polaroid, are now generally used in place of Nicol prisms of calcite formerly employed.

If plane polarized light falls on an isotropic surface (i.e. one having identical properties in all directions), it is reflected as plane polarized light and can be completely extinguished by rotating the analyser. If, however, the surface is not isotropic, the reflected light will be elliptically polarized, i.e. will have a component of its plane of polarization normal to that of the incident light, and will not be completely extinguished by the analyser. The vertical

illuminator itself has a polarizing effect, so the plane of polarization of the incident light must be parallel or perpendicular to the plane of incidence of the light on the reflector. The adjustment can be made by removing the analyser and viewing an isotropic surface, for example, of glass. The brightness of the reflected light will vary as the polarizer is rotated. The polarizer is set at the position giving maximum brightness. The analyser is then replaced, and when turned should reach a position giving almost complete darkness. When the analyser is set in the "crossed" position (i.e. so that the light reflected from an isotropic surface is extinguished) then by rotation of the specimen under examination, periodic changes of brightness (four maxima per revolution) will be observed in non-isotropic regions, which may thus be distinguished from isotropic regions which remain dark.

The ordinary metallurgical microscope can readily be adapted for use with polarized light. A disc of polaroid, serving as the polarizer, can be placed between the source of light and the vertical illuminator, and another disc attached to the bottom of the eyepiece which then serves as the analyser. A rotating stage or super-stage attachment is also almost essential. Polarizing vertical illuminators and eyepiece analysers for fitting to any microscope are available commercially, and in all modern metallographs facilities are provided for examination of specimens by polarized light.

Specimens for examination by polarized light should preferably be prepared by electrolytic polishing. False appearances due to scratches or to a distorted surface layer must be guarded against if mechanical polishing is employed. The boundaries of constituents which stand out in relief often give a false impression of anisotropy. The specimen should first be examined under plane polarized light, without the use of an analyser. Usually the colour and intensity of illumination of the specimen, viewed under plane polarized light, show no change as the specimen is rotated, but in the case of some non-metallic inclusions a change of colour which assists in their identification is observed. Such constituents, which reflect light of different wave-lengths as their crystal orientation varies in relation to the plane of polarization, are said to show reflection pleochromism. The analyser is then inserted in the "crossed" position, and the specimen rotated. Isotropic constituents remain dark, whilst non-isotropic constituents pass through four positions of extinction with four intermediate positions of maximum brightness. Extinction may occur at different angles of rotation for different colours, and changes in brightness

may be very small. To increase the sensitivity, a "sensitive tint plate," usually of quartz, is placed between the polarizer and the analyser. The quartz plate rotates the plane of polarization of the light by different amounts for different colours. Thus, when white light is used, the analyser extinguishes only one colour at a time, and the complementary colour is seen. The plate is cut so that the analyser in the "crossed" position extinguishes the middle of the spectrum (yellow-green) and the colour seen is mauve (red-blue). A slight rotating of the plane of polarization is readily detected by a change in the colour observed. Sheets of cellophane, set so that their direction of rolling is at 45° to the optical axis of the polarizer and analyser, may be used as a substitute for the quartz plate. The thickness is adjusted by increasing the number of sheets until an isotropic surface, viewed with the analyser in the "crossed" position, appears mauve.

Constituents which crystallize in the cubic system are isotropic and are readily distinguished from those of other crystal structures. The grain size and microstructure of anisotropic metals such as zinc and beryllium are revealed in unetched specimens, and the method is specially useful in identifying the intermediate phases of an alloy system. The structure of isotropic constituents may also be revealed by deep etching, as etching pits in the surface have a polarizing effect, as also have the lamellæ in pearlite and other eutectoid or eutectic structures. Polarized light in conjunction with deep etching has been used to study preferred orientation in copper-nickel alloys. It has had considerable use in the study of protective oxide coatings, but its most important application in metallurgy is probably to the identification, and elucidation of the structure of non-metallic inclusions in steel, cast iron and copper alloys, which show characteristic colours or colour sequences when the stage is rotated. Tables which will assist in their identification are available.*

Examples of structures photographed under polarized light are shown in Pl. 75A, B. Only in special circumstances will the use of polarized light form part of the routine examination of the structure of commercial materials, but it will undoubtedly find increasing application in metallography. In following up any line of investigation, the reader will find up-to-date information and references in "Polarized Light in Metallography," by G. K. T. Conn and F. J. Bradshaw (London, Butterworth's Scientific Publications, 1952).

* E.g. in *Metals Handbook* (American Institute for Metals), 1948, p. 448.

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

Phase-Contrast Microscopy

Contrast in conventional microscopy depends on variations either in colour or in intensity of the light reflected from the specimen. Owing to surface irregularities or undulations, a difference of phase of the reflected light waves may be present while the image remains uniformly bright. The phase-contrast system changes the invisible variations of phase in the wave front into

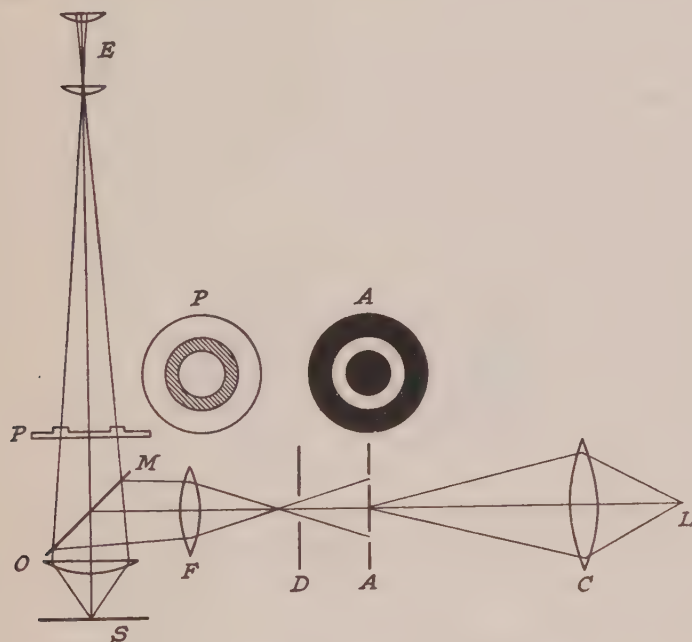


FIG. 50. Arrangement for Phase-Contrast Microscopy.

proportional variations of intensity so that they can be seen and photographed.

A diagram of the phase-contrast optical system as applied to the metallurgical microscope is shown in Fig. 50. An annulus *A*, of which a plan view is also shown in the diagram, is placed so that its image formed by the field lens *F* is, after reflection at the surface of the specimen, in the back focal plane of the objective. The phase plate *P* is also placed in the back focal plane in the same position as the image of the annulus *A*. The phase plate has an annular ring of greater or lesser thickness than the remainder. Thus, there will be a difference in phase between light passing through the ring and that passing through the rest of the plate. This ring is called the phase ring and is the same size as the image

of the annulus A. When the image of the annulus is superimposed on the phase ring, all the hollow cone of light reflected directly from the surface of the specimen passes through the phase ring and so has its phase changed. The light diffracted from the hollow cone passes through areas of the phase plate other than the annular ring and will not suffer this phase change although it will assist in forming the image. The phase change normally used is a retardation of 90° or a quarter of a wave-length. In this case (positive phase-contrast) depressions on the surface of the specimen look darker and elevations brighter than the background. Negative phase contrast is given by causing the phase ring to advance the phase of the light by a quarter of a wave-length. In addition to altering the phase of the directly reflected light the phase ring also absorbs a considerable amount of it. This is necessary because the contrast is improved as the intensity of the directly reflected beam is reduced. The absorption generally used is 80 per cent., this being the optimum value for contrast and definition of the image.

In the optical system shown in Fig. 50 the back focal plane of the objective is shown well separated from the lens. In practice, there is rarely room for the reflector between the back focal plane and the back surface of the objective, and the phase plate in the position shown in the diagram is further from the lens than the back focal plane. This does not seriously impair the results provided that the annulus is moved so that its image still falls on the phase plate. If the phase plate is put between the reflector and the objective there is a risk of back reflection which may seriously affect contrast.

In examining a specimen under phase contrast illumination the following procedure should be adopted. The specimen is first set at right angles to the optical axis of the microscope. A normal levelling press will suffice for this but the accurate levelling of the specimen is more important for phase-contrast than for normal microscopy. The specimen is then focused, the iris (which is focused on the specimen) is closed down, and the reflector is adjusted to bring the spot of light to the centre of the field of view. The iris is then opened so that the whole field is illuminated. It is next necessary to superimpose the image of the annulus on the phase ring. This may be done by removing the eyepiece and inserting an auxiliary microscope which is focused on the phase plate. Alternatively, a Bertrand lens may be inserted between the phase plate and the eyepiece. This, in conjunction with the eyepiece, acts as a microscope which can then be focused on the phase

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

plate. Fig. 51 (a) shows how the field should look. The annulus is then moved by means of traversing screws so that its image is superimposed on the phase ring as shown in Fig. 51 (b). When the eyepiece is replaced the phase-contrast image of the specimen will be seen. A slight adjustment of the position of the annulus may be needed on traversing a fairly large area owing to the curvature which most polished metal specimens exhibit.

In order that a good image of the annulus shall be formed on the phase ring, the flat surface of the specimen must be specularly reflecting. A polished metal surface has this property, but when it is etched its reflectivity diminishes and it becomes less suitable for phase-contrast study. A light etching as employed for high-power oil-immersion examination is sufficient for phase-contrast work. Electropolishing affords an alternative way of producing a suitable surface.

The minimum step detectable visually with phase-contrast has



FIG. 51. Diagram illustrating Superimposition of the Annulus on the Phase Ring.

been stated to be about $50 \text{ \AA}$., and above this the change in intensity increases with the height of step. When, however, the height exceeds a quarter of a wave-length (about $1300 \text{ \AA}$.) a reversal of contrast occurs so that an elevation greater than this appears dark. Information as to the direction of change of level can only be obtained for surfaces within the contrast range; for this reason caution must be exercised in the interpretation of a single phase-contrast micrograph. When both positive and negative phase-contrast are available, the change from one to the other should result in the complete reversal of the contrast of the whole structure if it is all within the contrast range. Any part whose contrast does not reverse may be taken to be outside the range, and no precise information may be obtained as to the direction of the change in level. If this is of interest an interferometric method must be used. The lateral resolution of the phase-contrast system is as good as that in normal microscopy.

Phase-contrast microscopy has proved to be of value in the

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

study of grain boundary and precipitation phenomena and in deformation processes. Twinning and slip bands can be detected and assessed down to very small step heights. Creep and fatigue both produce suitable surface deformation, and phase contrast has been used in a qualitative examination of these effects on various metals.* Phase contrast micrographs are shown in Pl. 75C, D, 77 and 78B.

Light Profile and Interference Microscopy

Phase contrast reveals differences in surface level, but the effects are only qualitative and it is often difficult to decide whether a particular feature is an elevation or a depression. In order to study minute irregularities in the surface more precisely, recourse may be had to light profile or interferometry methods.

Light Profile

The effect is obtained by projecting on to the bright image of the surface of the specimen the image of a fine wire placed in front of the field iris, using a metal tongue reflector in place of the usual glass slip. The dark line on the bright field gives a clear indication of the changes in level of the surface (Pl. 78G). A more comprehensive survey of the field of view is obtained by the use of a graticule of parallel lines (multiple profile). The method is of value in studying height and depth of slip bands, twinning bands and topographical features of an etched surface. The sensitivity is better than half a wave-length (i.e. 0.25μ) in the up and down direction.

Interferometry

Interference methods provide the most sensitive way of revealing, and the most accurate means of measuring, surface irregularities. They comprise two-beam and multiple-beam interferometry. In the two-beam interference method, a beam of monochromatic light is split into two equal beams at right angles (Fig. 52). One beam passes through the objective to the surface under examination, where it is reflected, taking the path SBOMOB, and the other passes on to be reflected from a metallized reference plate, taking the path SBO'PO'BE. This is the principle of the Linnik interferometer. A simple adapter, fitted to a metallurgical microscope, will convert it into an inter-

* References to metallographic applications of phase contrast include F. W. Cuckow: "The Phase-Contrast Incident-Light Microscope," *Journal of the Iron and Steel Institute*, 1949 (1), vol. 161, p. 1; and D. McLean: "Phase Contrast Microscopy in the Study of Metal Surfaces," *Metal Treatment*, 1951, vol. 18, p. 51.

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES

ferometer of this type. The sensitivity of this method is better than one-twentieth of a wave-length in depth and one wave-length in extension.

A simple technique which achieves a similar result is described by Professor Tolansky.* A small drop of a solution of Canada balsam in a suitable solvent is placed on the surface to be studied.

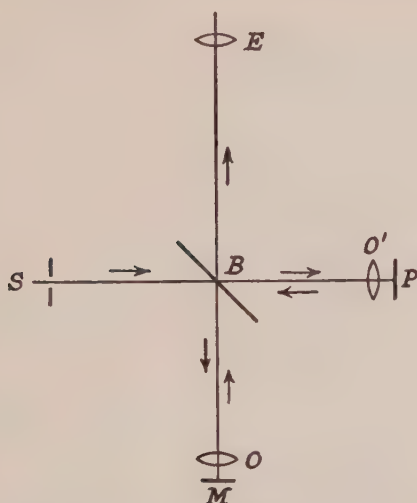


FIG. 52. Arrangement for Two-Beam Interferometry.

When the balsam dries, it leaves on the surface a thin film which produces extremely good fringes and thereby enables the structural features to be contoured.

In multiple-beam interferometry, the surface of the specimen (which must exhibit a certain minimum reflectivity, or else be coated with a thin film of evaporated silver) is matched against a reference surface, consisting of a flat, well polished and silvered sheet of glass. If the specimen and the optical flat are held very close to one another and are illuminated with a parallel beam of monochromatic light, extremely sharp interference fringes are produced. By this means minute surface irregularities may be observed, the method being sensitive to depth changes of $\frac{1}{250}$ of a wave-length.

This brief indication of special techniques in optical microscopy may serve as an introduction to the more detailed description of the methods to be found in sources already referred to and

* "Properties of Metallic Surfaces," *Institute of Metals Monograph and Report Series*, No. 13, p. 298.

PRACTICAL MICROSCOPICAL METALLOGRAPHY

in the special pamphlets and monographs issued by the principal makers of metallurgical microscopes, among which special mention may be made of "Microscope Design and Construction," by B. O. Payne (published by Cooke, Troughton and Simms Ltd.), which contains many references to original papers.

INDEX OF PHOTOMICROGRAPHS

(References are to PLATE numbers)

Plates 1 - 6 follow page 16

"	7 - 9	"	"	40
"	10 - 13	"	"	48
"	14 - 17	"	"	64
"	18 - 24	"	"	80
"	25 - 31	"	"	96

A

Alumina in steel, 45
Aluminium, 66, 75
— alloys, 66, 67, 68
— brass, 56, 61
Armco iron, 1
Austenite, 28, 36, 41, 78

B

Bainite, 32, 33 (see also *Troostite* and *Troosto-martensite*)
Bearing metals, 72
Brass, 11, 56, 57, 58, 61
— inclusions in, 57, 58
— season cracking of, 57
Bronze, 59

C

Carbide of iron, see *Cementite*
— coalesced, 23, 26, 31
Case-hardened steel, 31
Cast iron, 52, 53, 54
— see *Pig iron* and *Malleable cast iron*
Cemented carbides, 40
Cementite, 22, 25, 31, etc.
— etched with sodium picrate, 22, 23
— globular, 23, 26
Chromium steels, 11, 35, 41
— -nickel steels, 41, 42
— -vanadium steels, 35, 39
Cold-worked copper alloys, 57, 60
— steel, 26, 35, 42
Condenser tube alloys, 61
Copper 17, 55, 56
— bismuth in, 55
— oxide in, 55, 56
— -aluminium alloys, 60
— — -nickel alloys, 18, 59
— -lead alloys, 55
— -magnesium alloys, 19
— -nickel alloys, 18, 61
— -silicon alloys, 59
— -tin alloys, 59
— -zinc alloys, 11, 56, 57, 58, 61
Cracks in brass, 57, 61
— in copper, 56

Plates 32 - 38 follow page 112

"	39 - 49	"	"	128
"	50 - 56	"	"	144
"	57 - 61	"	"	160
"	62 - 68	"	"	176
"	69 - 78	"	"	192

Cracks in steel, 42, 44, 48, 49, 50
Cupric reagents, etching with, 43, 46, 47, 48

D

Decarburization, 31, 46, 54
Deformation by cold work, 26, 35, 42, 57, 60
— by forced polish, 1
— by machining, 1
Dendritic structure, 18, 42, 43, 47, 54, 55, 59, 63
Duralumin, 67, 68

F

Ferrite 1, 17, 20, etc.
— in steel, 21, 24, etc.
— undissolved after heat-treatment, 30, 31, 34

G

Ghosts, 13, 47
Graphite in cast iron, 52, 53
— in nickel, 64
— in pig iron, 50
— in steel, 22
— on steel surface, 78

H

Hard-metal tools, 40
"Heavy alloy," 40
High-permeability nickel alloy, 65
High-speed tool steel, 39

I

Inclusions in brass, 57, 58
— in steel, 45, 49
"Inconel," 64
Iron, ingot, 1
— cast (and pig), 50, 51, 52, 53, 54
— malleable cast, 53, 54
— wrought, 20
Isothermal transformation of steel, 32, 33

INDEX OF PHOTOMICROGRAPHS

L

- Lead, 17, 74
- alloys, 71, 72
- Local hardening, 31

M

- Macrostructure of copper alloys, 62, 63
- of lead alloys, 73, 74
- of steel, 16, 43, 44, 45
- Magnesium, 69
- alloys, 19, 67, 69, 70
- Malleable cast iron, 53, 54
- Manganese steels, 27, 36
- molybdenum steels, 36
- sulphide, 45, 47
- Martensite, 28, 29, 30, etc.
- Martensitic structure in copper-aluminium alloy, 60
- Mass, effect of, in heat-treatment, 36, 37, 38
- Molybdenum, 75
- Monel metal, 18

N

- Neumann bands, 20
- Nickel, 17, 64
- alloys, 64, 65
- chromium steels, 35, 37, 38, 43, 44, 47, 49
- — —, austenitic, 41, 42
- — — molybdenum steels, 35, 38, 39
- steels, 11, 28, 34, 37, 38
- "Ni-hard," 52
- "Nimonic 80," 64
- "Ni-resist," 52

P

- Pearlite, granular, 23, 26, etc.
- lamellar, 10, 11, 22, 23, etc.
- sorbitic, 9, 28, 29, etc.
- Phosphide eutectic, 48, 51
- Pig iron, 50, 51
- Powder metallurgy products, 40, 55, 65

R

- Refining of grain size of brass, 57
- — — of steel, 17, 24, 30, 34
- Rokes, 46

S

- Scratches, elimination of, 1
- Slag in steel, 45
- in wrought iron, 20
- Sodium picrate, etching with, 22, 23
- Sorbite, 12, 29, 30, 34, etc.
- Sorbitic pearlite, 9, 28, 29, etc.
- Spheroidal graphite, 52, 64
- Stainless steels, 41, 42
- Steel, alloy, see *Chromium*, *Nickel*, etc.
- castings, 25
- effect of carbon, 21, 22
- — — of heat-treatment, 30, 34
- — — of manganese, 22, 27
- forgings, hardened and tempered, 37, 38, 39
- ingots, 14, 16, 43
- plates, 26, 27
- surface hardened, 31
- wire, 26
- Stellite, 41
- Sulphide inclusions, 45, 47, 48

T

- Temper hardening, 18
- Tin alloys, 18, 71, 72
- Tool steel, 39
- Troostite, 28, 29, 30, etc.
- Troostite-martensite, 28, 34, 35, etc.
- Tungsten base alloys, 40
- carbide, 40
- steels, 28, 39
- Twinning in austenite, 28
- in copper and copper alloys, 17, 56, 57, etc.

W

- Weld decay, 42
- Widmanstätten structure, 24
- Wire, cold-drawn steel, 26, 35
- Wrought iron, 20

Z

- Zinc, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77
- alloys, 71, 73

SUBJECT INDEX

A

Achromatic objectives, 27, 48
 Admiralty brass, 166
 — gun metal, 168
 Ageing, 77, 184, 187, 193, 199, 201
 Allotriomorphic crystals, 64
 Allotropy, 67
 Alloy cast iron, 148
 — steels, 109
 Alloys, 68
 Alumina, for polishing, 8
 — in steels, 131
 Aluminium alloys, 182
 — brasses, 166, 173
 — copper alloys, 183, 187
 — magnesium alloys, 185, 186
 — manganese alloys, 186
 — nickel alloys, 76, 184, 188
 — silicon alloys, 184
 — zinc alloys, 185
 American washed iron, 144
 Annealing, 66, 88, 146, 163
 — low-temperature, 94, 164
 Antimony in copper, effect of, 154
 Aperture control, 24, 34
 Apochromatic objectives, 27, 48
 Arsenic in copper, effect of, 153
 Austenite, 199, 110

B

Babbitt metal, 201
 Bainite, 101, 111, 112,
 Bakelite mounting, 10, 124
 Banding, phosphorus, in steel, 94, 134
 Bearing metals, 169, 201
 Bell metal, 169
 Binocular microscope, 27, 127
 Bismuth in copper, effect of, 154
 Blackheart malleable cast iron, 146
 Brasses, 159
 Brazing solder, 165
 Britannia metal, 199
 Bronzes, 166
 Buffing, 11
 Burnt brass, 164
 — iron, 84
 — steel, 135, 141

C

Carbide, coalesced, 90, 104
 Carbides, cemented, 121

Carbon arc lamp, 35
 Case-hardening, 106, 113
 Cast iron, 144
 Cemented carbides, 121
 Cementite, 1, 87, 90, 105
 Chill-castings, 70, 144
 Chromium cast irons, 148
 — steels, 114, 121, 123
 — nickel steels, 122, 123
 Ciné lens, 54
 Cloth, polishing, 9
 Coinage bronze, 167
 Cold-working, of steel, 93
 — brass, 163
 Colour screens, 35, 63
 Constitutional diagrams, 2:—
 Aluminium-copper, 183
 — magnesium silicide, 183
 — silicon, 184
 — zinc, 186
 Copper-aluminium, 171
 — arsenic, 153
 — cuprous oxide, 151
 — magnesium, 74, 75
 — nickel, 69
 — silicon, 170
 — tin, 168
 — zinc, 160
 Iron-carbon, 78, 79, 87, 143
 — chromium, 80
 Lead-tin, 71
 Copper, additions to, 153, 156
 — "gassing" of, 153
 — impurities in, 151
 — aluminium alloys, 171
 — lead alloys, 155
 — magnesium alloys, 73
 — nickel alloys, 69, 172
 — silicon alloys, 155, 170
 — tin alloys, 166
 — zinc alloys, 158
 Corrosion resisting steels, 121
 Cracking of aluminium alloys, 188
 — of copper, 153
 — of copper alloys, 164, 174, 176
 — of nickel alloys, 180
 — of steel, 105, 107, 122, 136
 — of zinc alloys, 197
 Critical rate of cooling, 119
 — illumination, 24
 — temperatures, 67, 110
 Crystal structure of pure metals, 64
 Curvature of field, 27, 28, 47
 Cutting of specimens, 5

SUBJECT INDEX

D

Decarburization of steel, 131, 133
Decomposition of cementite, 90, 113, 145,
146
Dendritic growth, 65, 70
Diamantine, 8
Diamond abrasive, 12, 124
Dispersion hardening, 77
Duralumin, 77, 187

E

Edges, protection of, 18
Electrolytic copper, 152
— etching, 19, 125, 157, 176, 177, 180
— polishing, 13, 124, 157, 176, 180, 190,
195, 203
Electron microscope, 51
Emery paper, 7
Equilibrium diagrams, *see Constitutional diagrams.*

Etching, 15

— for macro-examination:—

aluminium alloys, 189
copper alloys, 175
iron and steel, 137
lead 203

— for micro-examination:—

aluminium alloys, 191
copper alloys, 157, 176
iron and steel, 84, 96, 107, 125, 140, 150
lead, tin, zinc, etc., 204
magnesium alloys, 195
nickel alloys, 180

— pits, 85

Etching reagents:—

Daevs's, 126
Heyn's, 138
Hume-Rothery's, 189
Humphrey's, 138
Kourbatoff's, 96
McLean and Northcott's, 126
Matwieff's, 150
Murakami's, 126
Rosenhain and Haughton's, 140
Stead's, 140
Timoféef's, 204
Tucker's, 189
Vilella's, 125
Vilella and Beregekoff's, 204

Eutectic, 70

Eutectoid, 87

Exposure, duration of, 45, 62

Extrusion, 174

Eyepiece—*see Ocular.*

F

Ferrite, 1, 66

— undissolved in treatment, 103, 106

Fibre, 82, 129, 132

Field, curvature of, 27, 28, 47

Field lens, 33

Forgings, heat treatment of, 103, 119

Free cutting steel, 132

Fusible alloy, 17, 124

G

Gassing of copper, 153

Ghosts, 133

Gilding metal, 162

Glare, 25, 27

Glass slip illuminator, 23, 49

Globular cementite, 90

Grain, crystal, 64

— size, 81, 84, 88, 92, 96, 163

Granular pearlite, 90

Graphite, 90, 113, 142, 144, 146, 178

Green rot, 180

Grinding, 6, 11, 124

Gun-metal, 168

H

Hardened steels, 98

Hardening, local, 105

Hard metal tools, 121

Heat resisting steels, 123

Heat-tinting, 20, 126, 134, 150, 169, 177

— treatment, 4

— aluminium alloys, 184, 187

— cast iron, 146, 149

— copper alloys, 163, 169, 170,
172, 173

— nickel alloys, 179

— steels, 88, 94, 98, 103, 104, 119,
121, 122

High-speed tool steels, 120

High-tensile structural steel, 95

Hot-working, 93, 162

Hume-Rothery rule, 72

I

Illuminants, 34, 50

Illumination, critical, 24

— in macrography, 54, 59

— in micrography, 21, 30

— at low powers, 54

— oblique, 21, 59

— vertical, 22, 53, 61

Illuminator plates, 49

Illuminators, 23, 26

Inclusions, 130, 141, 162

Inconel, 179

Ingot pattern, 130

Ingots, brass, 162, 175

— steel, 129

Ink printing, 138, 189

Inter crystalline cracking, 122, 154, 164,
173, 180, 188, 197

Interference microscopy, 212

Intermediate phases, 71

SUBJECT INDEX

Intermetallic compounds, 73, 76
 Internal stress in brass, 164, 175
 Invar, 114
 Iron, allotropy, 67
 — carbide, 87, 90
 — cast, 144
 — in aluminium, effect of, 182
 — in brass, effect of, 165
 — in zinc, effect of, 196
 — pig, 142
 — sulphide, 131
 — wrought, 82
 Isothermal transformation of steel, 110

L

Lead, 66, 200
 Lead-antimony alloys, 200
 — calcium alloys, 201
 — tin alloys, 71, 199
 — effect of in bronze, 169
 — — — in copper, 155
 — — — in nickel silver, 174
 — — — in steel, 133, 137
 — — — in zinc, 196
 Ledeburite, 144
 Levelling devices, 16
 Light profile microscopy, 212
 Light source, for visual work, 25
 — — — for macrography, 58
 — — — for micrography, 34
 Liquidus, 3
 Local hardening, 105, 108
 Longitudinal structures of rolled metals,
 83, 94, 132, 165, 172
 Low-power micrography, 52

M

Machines, polishing, 8
 McQuaid-Ehn test, 93, 96
 Macroexamination of aluminium alloys,
 188
 — — — of copper alloys, 174
 — — — of lead alloys, 203
 — — — of magnesium alloys, 194
 — — — of steel, 136
 Macrostructures, photography of, 57
 Magnesia, 9
 Magnesium alloys, 73, 192
 — silicide, 183, 187
 Magnification, 29, 44, 52
 Magnolia metal, 202
 Malleable cast iron, 146
 Manganese, in brass, effect of, 165
 — in carbon steels, effect of, 89, 95
 — in pig iron and cast iron, effect of, 143,
 145
 — silicate, 131
 — steels, 114
 — sulphide, 131, 132
 Martensite, 1, 101, 102

Mass effect, 103, 119
 Mechanical properties of brass, 161
 — — — of cast iron, 147
 — — — of copper, 156
 — — — of steels, 91, 92, 106, 129
 — — — of wrought iron, 83
 See also *captions of Plates* 21, 24, 25,
 27, 36 (carbon steels), 37, 38, 39, 41
 (alloy steels), 52 (cast iron), 60 (copper
 —aluminium alloys), 68 (aluminium
 alloys), 69, 70 (magnesium alloys).
 Mercurous nitrate test, 175
 Mercury vapour lamp, 35
 Metallographs, 36
 Microscope design, 26
 Microtome, 13
 Molybdenum steels, 117
 Monel metal, 70, 178
 Mounting of specimens, 10, 16
 Mumetal, 179
 Muntz metal, 164

N

Naval brass, 166
 Nickel, 66, 178
 — aluminium alloys, 76
 — chromium alloys, 179
 — steels, 115
 — copper alloys, 69, 178
 — iron alloys, 178
 — in cast iron, effect of, 148
 — steels, 113
 Nimonic alloys, 124, 179
 Normalizing, 88

O

Objectives, 27, 50
 — dark ground, 22
 — for low power, 53, 56
 — for macrography, 58
 — reflecting, 205
 — testing of, 47, 58
 Oblique illumination, 21, 56, 59
 Oculars, 29, 41
 — dust on, 43
 — projection, 41
 Opaque illuminator, 22
 Order-disorder transformation, 160
 Overpoled copper, 152
 Oxygen in copper, 152

P

Patenting, 94
 Pearlite, 1, 89
 Peritectic, 78
 Permalloy, 179
 Pewter, 198

SUBJECT INDEX

Phase, 3
 Phase-contrast microscopy, 209
 Phosphide eutectic, 134, 145
 Phosphor-bronze, 169
 Phosphorus in cast iron, effect of, 143
 — in copper, effect of, 155
 — in wrought iron, effect of, 83
 — segregation in steel, 134
 Photographic materials, 46, 63
 — procedure, 45, 62
 Photomicrography, difficulties in, 32
 — apparatus for, 34, 36-42
 — testing of equipment for, 42
 Pig iron, 142
 Piping, 131, 134, 162
 Pointolite, 34
 Polarized light microscopy, 206
 Polish attack, 19, 91, 158, 176
 Polishing, 7, 124, 149, 157, 180, 189, 194, 202
 — in relief, 15, 19
 Precipitation hardening, 77, 184, 187, See *Ageing and Temper Hardening*
 Prism illuminator, 23
 Projection ocular, 41

Q

Quenching, non-ferrous alloys, 76, 169, 172, 173, 178, 180, 184, 187, 193, 200, 201
 — steel, 99, 114, 122

R

" R.R. " alloys, 187
 Réaumur malleable cast iron, 147
 Recrystallization of copper alloys, 156, 163
 — of iron, 68, 81
 Reflecting objective, 205
 Rokes, 133
 Rouge, 11

S

Sampling, 5, 127
 Seams, 133
 Season cracking, 164, 174, 176
 Silicon in pig iron and cast iron, effect of, 141, 144
 — steels, 81, 95, 125
 — in wrought iron, effect of, 83
 Slag in steel, 131
 — in wrought iron, 82
 Solders, 165, 199
 Solidification, 65, 69, 129, 162
 Solid solution, 68
 Solidus, 3
 Sorbite, 1, 102
 Sorbitic pearlite, 89, 102
 Space lattice, 64

Specimens, for macro-examination, 127, 136, 174
 — for micro-examinations, 6
 Stainless steel, 121
 Steel castings, 92
 — plates, 95
 Strain-hardening, 94
 Strip, mounting of, 17
 Sulphur in iron and steel, effect of, 83, 131, 132, 143
 Sulphur printing, 128, 136
 Superlattice, 160
 Supersaturated solid solutions, 76
 Surface-hardening, 105
 Swedish iron, 82

T

Taper sectioning, 18
 Temper colours, 103
 — hardening, 77, 121, 157, 171, 174, 179
 Tempering steel, 98, 102
 Thermal etching, 20
 Thin sections, mounting, 17
 Time-temperature-transformation (T.T.T.) curves, 111, 112
 Tin alloys, 197
 — in brass, 166
 — —magnesium alloys, 75
 — plate, 198
 Tool steels, 105, 120
 Tough pitch copper, 152
 Troostite, 101, 102
 Tube length, 28, 34, 48
 Tungsten carbide, 121, 126
 — steel, 120
 Twinning, 66, 99, 152, 163, 168

U

Ultra-violet light, 51
 Underpoled copper, 151
 Unit cell, 64

V

Vanadium steels, 118
 Vertical illumination, 22, 53, 61
 — illuminators, 23, 25
 Vickers Projection microscope, 39

W

Weld decay, 122
 White cast iron, 142, 144, 146
 — metals, 201
 Widmanstätten structure, 92
 Wiped joint, 199
 Wire, mounting of, 17
 — steel, 94

SUBJECT INDEX

Wood's metal, 17, 124
Wrought iron, 82

X

Xenon arc lamp, 35
X-ray analysis, 64, 67

Y

"Y"-alloy, 187, 188

Z

Zephiran chloride reagent, 126
Zinc alloys, 196
—— alloy die castings, 197

SCIENCE PAPERBACKS

The general aim of the series is to offer students new and established books at prices they can afford. Titles are drawn from all branches of science and technology.

A list of titles in this series is given inside the book.

Science Paperbacks are published by Chapman & Hall Ltd, Methuen & Co Ltd, and E. & F. N. Spon Ltd, all members of **Associated Book Publishers Ltd**, 11 New Fetter Lane, London, EC4

SOME OTHER BOOKS

Chapman & Hall

Metallurgy of Aluminium Alloys
M. van Lancker

The Physical Chemistry of Metallurgical Processes
G. R. Bashforth and A. K. Biswas

The Manufacture of Iron and Steel
Volume 1 Iron Production Volume 2 Steel Production
Volume 3 Steelworks Fuels, Furnaces, Refractories and
Instruments Volume 4 The Mechanical Treatment of Steel
G. R. Bashforth

Methuen

X-Ray Crystallography
R. W. James

Elasticity, Fracture and Flow
J. Jaeger

Spon

The Chemistry of Hydrometallurgical Processes
A. R. Burkin

Hydrogen Compounds of the Metallic Elements
K. M. MacKay

The Electron Microscope
M. E. Haine and T. Mulvey

This volume **35s net** in U.K. only